1997-2003



THE CONTRACTOR

SERVICE MANUAL

1997-2003 VT1100C SHADOW SPIRIT

1998-2001 VT1100T SHADOW 1100 A.C.E. TOURER

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This service manual describes the service procedures for the VT1100C and VT1100T.

Follow the Maintenance Schedule (Section 3) recommendations to ensure that the vehicle is in peak operating condition and the emission levels are within the standards set by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and California Air Resources Board.

Performing the first scheduled maintenance is very important. It compensates for the initial wear that occurs during the break-in period.

Sections 1 and 3 apply to the whole motorcycle. Section 2 illustrates procedures for removal/installation of components that may be required to perform service described in the following sections. Sections 4 through 19 describe parts of the motorcycle, grouped according to location.

Find the section you want on this page, then turn to the table of contents on the first page of the section.

Most sections have an assembly or system illustration, service information and troubleshooting for the section.

The subsequent pages give detailed procedures.

If you do not know the source of the trouble, go to section 21, Troubleshooting.

ALL INFORMATION, ILLUSTRATIONS, DIRECTIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS INCLUDED IN THIS PUBLICATION ARE BASED ON THE LATEST PRODUCT INFORMATION AVAILABLE AT THE TIME OF APPROVAL FOR PRINTING. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. RESERVES THE RIGHT TO MAKE CHANGES AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE AND WITHOUT INCURRING ANY OBLIGATION WHATSOEVER. NO PART OF THIS PUBLICATION MAY BE REPRODUCED WITHOUT WRITTEN PERMISSION. THIS MANUAL IS WRITTEN FOR PERSONS WHO HAVE ACQUIRED BASIC KNOWLEDGE OF MAINTENANCE ON HONDAMOTORCYCLES, MOTOR SCOOTERS OR ATVS.

Honda Motor Co., Ltd. SERVICE PUBLICATION OFFICE

CONTENTS

	GENERAL INFORMATION			
	FRAME/BODY PANELS/EXHAUST SYSTEM	2		
	MAINTENANCE	3		
	LUBRICATION SYSTEM	4		
7	FUEL SYSTEM	5		
ENGINE AND DRIVE TRAIN	COOLING SYSTEM	6		
SIVE	ENGINE REMOVAL/INSTALLATION	7		
ND DI	CYLINDER HEAD/VALVE	8		
VE A	CYLINDER/PISTON	9		
NGIL	CLUTCH/GEARSHIFT LINKAGE	10		
ш	CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION	11		
	FINAL DRIVE	12		
S	FRONT WHEEL/SUSPENSION/ STEERING	13		
CHASSIS	REAR WHEEL/BRAKE/SUSPENSION	14		
ت	HYDRAULIC DISC BRAKE	15		
	CHARGING SYSTEM/ALTERNATOR	16		
CAL	IGNITION SYSTEM	17		
CTRICAI	ELECTRIC STARTER/STARTER CLUTCH	18		
ELEC	LIGHTS/METERS/SWITCHES	19		
	WIRING DIAGRAM	20		
	TROUBLESHOOTING	21		
	INDEX	22		

SYMBOLS

The symbols used throughout this manual show specific service procedures. If supplementary information is required pertaining to these symbols, it would be explained specifically in the text without the use of the symbols.

CONTRACT	Replace the part(s) with new one(s) before assembly.
7	Use recommended engine oil, unless otherwise specified.
Me DIL	Use molybdenum oil solution (mixture of the engine oil and molybdenum grease in a ratio of 1:1).
GREASE	Use multi-purpose grease (lithium based multi-purpose grease NLGI # 2 or equivalent).
TO (M) OH	Use molybdenum disulfide grease (containing more than 3 % molybdenum disulfide, NLGI # 2 c equivalent). Example: Molykote® BR-2 plus manufactured by Dow Corning, U. S. A.
	Multi-purpose M-2 manufactured by Mitsubishi Oil, Japan
	Use molybdenum disulfide paste (containing more than 40 % molybdenum disulfide, NLGI # 2 c equivalent). Example: Molykote® G-n paste, manufactured by Dow Corning, U. S. A.
MPIH	Honda Moly 60 (U. S. A. only) Rocol ASP manufactured by Rocol Limited, U. K. Rocol Paste manufactured by Sumico Lubricant, Japan
S	Use silicone grease.
LOCK	Apply a locking agent. Use a medium strength locking agent unless otherwise specified.
SEALL	Apply sealant.
PLUD	Use DOT 4 brake fluid. Use the recommended brake fluid unless otherwise specified.
FORK	Use fork or suspension fluid.

GENERAL SAFETY	1-1	LUBRICATION & SEAL POINTS	
SERVICE RULES	1-2	(VT1100T)	1-31
MODEL IDENTIFICATION	1-3	(VT1100C)	1-35
SPECIFICATIONS	1-5	CABLE & HARNESS ROUTING	
TORQUE VALUES (VT1100C)	1-17	(VT1100T)	1-52
TORQUE VALUES (VT1100T)	1-21	EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS	1-68
TOOLS	1-25	EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION LABELS	1-70
LUBRICATION & SEAL POINTS (VT1100C)	1-27		

GENERAL SAFETY

CARBON MONOXIDE

If the engine must be running to do some work, make sure the area is well ventilated. Never run the engine in an enclosed area.

AWARNING

The exhaust contains poisonous carbon monoxide gas that can cause loss of consciousness and may lead to death.

Run the engine in an open area or with an exhaust evacuation system in an enclosed area.

GASOLINE

Work in a well ventilated area. Keep cigarettes, flames or sparks away from the work area or where gasoline is stored.

▲WARNING

Gasoline is extremely flammable and is explosive under certain conditions. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

HOT COMPONENTS

AWARNING

Engine and exhaust system parts become very hot and remain hot for some time after the engine is run. Wear insulated gloves or wait until the engine and exhaust system have cooled before handling these parts.

USED ENGINE/TRANSMISSION OIL

AWARNING

Used engine oil may cause skin cancer if repeatedly left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods. Although this is unlikely unless you handle used oil on a daily basis, it is still advisable to thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water as soon as possible after handling used oil. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

BRAKE DUST

Never use an air hose or dry brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner or alternate method approved by OSHA, designed to minimize the hazard caused by airborne asbestos fibers.

AWARNING

Inhaled asbestos fibers have been found to cause respiratory disease and cancer.

BRAKE FLUID

CAUTION:

Spilling fluid on painted, plastic or rubber parts will damage them. Place a clean shop towel over these parts whenever the system is serviced. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

COOLANT

Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant is combustible and its flame is not visible. If the ethylene glycol does ignite, you will not see any flame, but you can be burned.

AWARNING

- Avoid spilling engine coolant on the exhaust system or engine parts. They may be hot enough to cause the coolant to ignite and burn without a visible flame.
- Coolant (ethylene glycol) can cause some skin irritation and is poisonous if swallowed. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.
- Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot.
 The coolant is under pressure and could scald you.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the cooling fan, as it starts automatically.

CAUTION:

Using coolant with silicate corrosion inhibitors may cause premature wear of water pump seals or blockage of radiator passages. Using tap water may cause engine damage.

BATTERY HYDROGEN GAS & ELECTROLYTE

AWARNING

- The battery gives off explosive gases; keep sparks, flames and cigarettes away. Provide adequate ventilation when charging.
- The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte). Contact with skin or eyes may cause severe burns. Wear protective clothing and a face shield.
 - If electrolyte gets on your skin, flush with water.
- If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush with water for at least 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.
- · Electrolyte is poisonous.
- If swallowed, drink large quantities of water or milk and follow with milk of magnesia or vegetable oil and call a physician. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

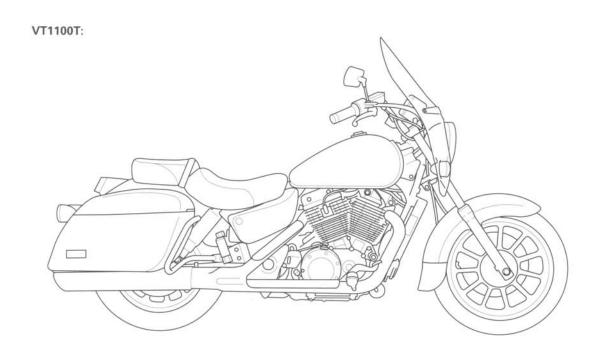
SERVICE RULES

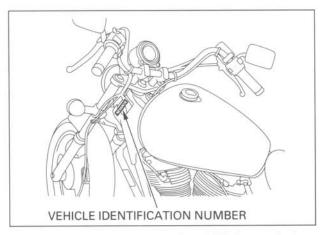
- 1. Use genuine Honda or Honda-recommended parts and lubricants or their equivalents. Parts that don't meet Honda's design specifications may cause damage to the motorcycle.
- 2. Use the special tools designed for this product to avoid damage and incorrect assembly.
- 3. Use only metric tools when servicing the motorcycle. Metric bolts, nuts and screws are not interchangeable with English fasteners.
- 4. Install new gaskets, O-rings, cotter pins, and lock plates when reassembling.
- 5. When tightening bolts or nuts, begin with the larger diameter or inner bolt first. Tighten to the specified torque diagonally in incremental steps unless a particular sequence is specified.
- 6. Clean parts in cleaning solvent upon disassembly. Lubricate any sliding surfaces before reassembly.
- 7. After reassembly, check all parts for proper installation and operation.
- 8. Route all electrical wires as shown on pages 1-35 through 1-67, Cable & Harness routing.

MODEL IDENTIFICATION

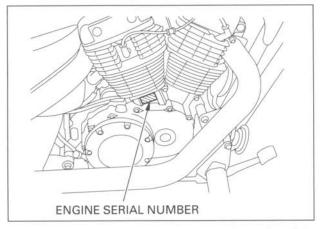
VT1100C:



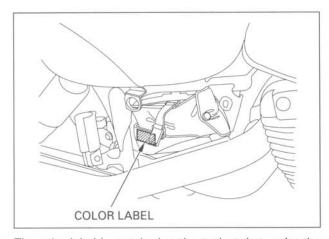




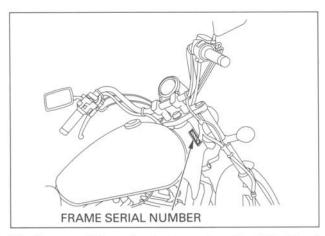
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is attached on the left side of the steering head.



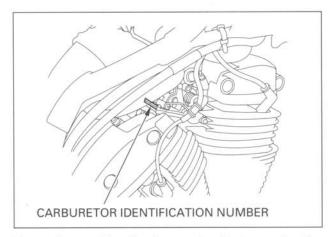
The engine serial number is stamped on the right crankcase below the rear cylinder.



The color label is attached to the tool pocket under the right side cover.



The frame serial number is stamped on the right side of the steering head.



The carburetor identification number is stamped on the carburetor body intake side.

SPECIFICATIONS

	ITEM	SPECIFICATIONS
DIMENSIONS	Overall length	2,380 mm (93.7 in)
	Overall width	880 mm (34.6 in)
	Overall height	1,220 mm (48.0 in)
	Wheelbase	1,650 mm (65.0 in)
	Seat height	730 mm (28.7 in)
	Ground clearance	140 mm (5.5 in)
	Dry weight (49 state/Canada type)	251 kg (553 lbs)
	(California type)	252 kg (556 lbs)
	Curb weight (49 state/Canada type)	270 kg (595 lbs)
	(California type)	271 kg (597 lbs)
	Maximum weight capacity	27 1 kg (557 lbs)
	(49 state/California type)	164 kg (362 lbs)
	(Canada type)	168 kg (370 lbs)
FRAME	Frame type	Double cradle
TIMIL	Front suspension	Telescopic fork
	Front wheel travel	135 mm (5.3 in)
	Rear suspension	
	Rear wheel travel	Swingarm
	Front tire size	100 mm (3.9 in)
	Rear tire size	110/90 — 19 62H
	Tire brand (Dunlop) Front/Rear	170/80 – 15 M/C 77H
	Front brake	F24 / K555
	Rear brake	Hydraulic single disc
		Mechanical leading/trailing shoe
	Caster angle	32°40′
	Trail length	152 mm (6.0 in)
	Fuel tank capacity	15.8 å (4.17 US gal , 3.48 Imp gal)
NGINE	Fuel tank reserve capacity	2.2 & (0.58 US gal , 0.48 Imp gal)
ENGINE	Cylinder arrangement Bore and stroke	2 cylinder 45° V transverse
	프로마 (1971) (T.) : 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.	87.5 × 91.4 mm (3.44 × 3.60 in)
	Displacement	1,099 cm ³ (67.0 cu-in)
	Compression ratio	8.0 : 1
	Valve train	Silent multi-link chain driven OHC with rocker arms
	Intake valve opens at 1mm lift	Front: 5° BTDC Rear: 2° BTDC
	Intake valve closes at 1mm lift	30° ABDC 33° ABDC
	Exhaust valve opens at 1mm lift	30° BBDC 37° BBDC
	Exhaust valve closes at 1mm lift	5° ATDC —2° ATDC
	Lubrication system	Forced pressure and wet sump
	Oil pump type	Trochoid
	Cooling system	Liquid cooled
	Air filtration	Viscous paper element
	Engine weight	96 kg (212 lbs)
	Firing order	Front-495°-Rear-225°-Front-
	Cylinder number	Front: #2, Rear: #1

GENERAL: VT1100C (cont'd)		SPECIFICATIONS	
CARBURETOR	Carburetor type	Constant Venturi 36 mm (1.4 in)	
	Throttle bore		
DRIVE TRAIN	Clutch system	Multi-plate, wet	
	Clutch operation system	Cable operating	
	Transmission	5 speeds	
	Primary reduction	1.692 (66/39)	
	Secondary reduction	0.806 (29/36)	
	Third reduction (Output drive reduction)	1.059 (18/17)	
	Final reduction	3.091 (34/11)	
	Gear ratio 1st	2.375 (38/16)	
	Gear ratio 2nd	1.391 (32/23)	
	Gear ratio 3rd	1.037 (28/27)	
	Gear ratio 4th	0.888 (32/36)	
	Gear ratio 5th	0.766 (23/30)	
	Gearshift pattern	Left foot operated return system 1-N-2-3-4-5	
ELECTRICAL	Ignition system	Full transistorized ignition	
	Starting system	Electric starter motor	
	Charging system	Triple phase output alternator	
	Regulator/rectifier	SCR shorted/triple phase full-wave rectification	
	Lighting system	Battery	

GENERAL: VT1100T		SPECIFICATIONS	
DIMENSIONS	Overall length	2,480 mm (97.6 in)	
31111211010110	Overall width	965 mm (38.0 in)	
	Overall height	1,430 mm (56.3 in)	
	Wheelbase	1,655 mm (65.2 in)	
	Seat height	730 mm (28.7 in)	
	Ground clearance	150 mm (5.9 in)	
	Dry weight (49 state/Canada type)	284 kg (626 lbs)	
	(California type)	285 kg (628 lbs)	
	Curb weight (49 state/Canada type)	296 kg (653 lbs)	
	(California type)	297 kg (655 lbs)	
	Maximum weight capacity		
	(49 state/California type)	173 kg (381 lbs)	
	(Canada type)	177 kg (390 lbs)	
FRAME	Frame type	Double cradle	
10.10.00.10. 00. 0	Front suspension	Telescopic fork	
	Front wheel travel	124 mm (4.9 in)	
	Rear suspension	Swingarm	
	Rear wheel travel	100 mm (3.9 in)	
	Front tire size	130/80R18 66H	
	Rear tire size	170/70R16 75H	
	Tire brand (Dunlop) Front/Rear	D206F/D206A	
	Front brake	Hydraulic single disc	
	Rear brake	Hydraulic single disc	
	Caster angle	32°15′	
	Trail length	149 mm (5.9 in)	
	Fuel tank capacity	15.8 l (4.17 US gal , 3.48 Imp gal)	
	Fuel tank reserve capacity	2.2 l (0.58 US gal , 0.48 Imp gal)	
ENGINE	Cylinder arrangement	2 cylinder 45° V transverse	
	Bore and stroke	87.5 × 91.4 mm (3.44 × 3.60 in)	
	Displacement	1,099 cm ³ (67.0 cu-in)	
	Compression ratio	8.0:1	
	Valve train	Silent multi-link chain driven OHC with rocker arms	
	Intake valve opens at 1mm lift	Front: 5° BTDC Rear: 2° BTDC	
	Intake valve closes at 1mm lift	30° ABDC 33° ABDC	
	Exhaust valve opens at 1mm lift	30° BBDC 37° BBDC	
	Exhaust valve closes at 1mm lift	5° ATDC −2° ATDC	
	Lubrication system	Forced pressure and wet sump	
	Oil pump type	Trochoid	
	Cooling system	Liquid cooled	
	Air filtration	Viscous paper element	
	Engine weight	96 kg (212 lbs)	
	Firing order	Front - 495° - Rear - 225° - Front -	
	Cylinder number	Front: #2, Rear: #1	

GENERAL: VT1100T (cont'd)		SPECIFICATIONS	
CARBURETOR	Carburetor type	Constant Venturi	
	Throttle bore	36 mm (1.4 in)	
DRIVE TRAIN	Clutch system	Multi-plate, wet	
	Clutch operation system	Cable operating	
	Transmission	5 speeds	
	Primary reduction	1.692 (66/39)	
	Secondary reduction	0.939 (31/33)	
	Third reduction (Output drive reduction)	1.059 (18/17)	
	Final reduction	3.091 (34/11)	
	Gear ratio 1st	2.375 (38/16)	
	Gear ratio 2nd	1.391 (32/23)	
	Gear ratio 3rd	1.037 (28/27)	
	Gear ratio 4th	0.888 (32/36)	
	Gear ratio 5th	0.766 (23/30)	
	Gearshift pattern	Left foot operated return system 1-N-2-3-4-5	
ELECTRICAL	Ignition system	Full transistorized ignition	
	Starting system	Electric starter motor	
	Charging system	Triple phase output alternator	
	Regulator/rectifier	SCR shorted/triple phase full-wave rectification	
	Lighting system	Battery	

	mm	

LUBRICATION S	SYSTEM	Offic. Hilli		
ITEM		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
Engine oil capacity	at draining	2.9 l (3.1 US qt , 2.6 Imp qt)		
	at disassembly	3.8 l (4.0 US qt , 3.3 Imp qt)		
	at filter change	3.1 l (3.3 US qt , 2.7 Imp qt)		
Recommended engine oil		HONDA GN4 or HP4 4-stroke oil or equivalent motor oil API service classification: SF or SG Viscosity: SAE 10W-40		
Oil pressure at oil pressure switch (80 °C/176 °F)		441 kPa (4.5 kgf/cm² , 64 psi) at 5,000 rpm		
Oil pump rotor	tip clearance	0.15 (0.006)	0.20 (0.008)	
HALF MATERIAL STATE OF THE STAT	body clearance	0.15-0.22 (0.006-0.009)	0.35 (0.014)	
	end clearance	0.02-0.07 (0.001-0.003)	0.10 (0.004)	

FUEL SYSTEM: VT		SPECIFICATIONS
Carburetor identification	49 state/Canada type	VDKHA
number	California type	VDKGA
Main jet		# 178
Slow jet		# 42
Pilot screw	initial/final opening	See page 5-19
	high altitude adjustment	See page 5-20
Float level		9.2 mm (0.36 in)
Idle speed		1,000 ± 100 rpm
Carburetor vacuum difference		Within 40 mm Hg (1.6 in Hg)
ATTACHED AND THE CONTROL OF THE CONT		base carburetor: No.1 (rear)
Throttle grip free play		2-6 mm (1/8-1/4 in)
Starting enrichment (SE) valve distance		10.0 – 11.0 mm (0.39 – 0.43 in)

FUEL SYSTEM: VT		SPECIFICATIONS
Carburetor identification	49 state/Canada type	VDKFA
number	California type	VDKGA
Main jet	Front	# 175
5 AND CONTROL OF THE TOTAL	Rear	# 180
Slow jet		# 42
Pilot screw	initial/final opening	See page 5-19
	high altitude adjustment	See page 5-20
Float level		9.2 mm (0.36 in)
Idle speed		1,000 \pm 100 rpm
Carburetor vacuum differen	nce	Within 40 mm Hg (1.6 in Hg)
		base carburetor: No.1 (rear)
Throttle grip free play		2-6 mm (1/8-1/4 in)
Starting enrichment (SE) valve distance		10.0 – 11.0 mm (0.39 – 0.43 in)

COOLING SYSTEM		SPECIFICATIONS
Coolant capacity	radiator and engine	2.0 g (2.1 US qt , 1.8 lmp qt)
	reserve tank	0.39 l (0.41 US qt , 0.34 Imp qt)
Radiator cap relief pressure		108-137 kPa (16-20 psi)
Thermostat	begins to open	80-84 °C (176-183 °F)
	fully open	95 °C (203 °F)
	valve lift	8 mm (0.3 in) minimum
Recommended antifreeze		Pro Honda HP coolant or an equivalent high quality ethylene glycol antifreeze containing silicate-free corrosion inhibitors

CYLINDER	HEAD/VALV	F			Unit: mm
0.11.101.	ITEM	_		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Cylinder compression				1,275 \pm 196 kPa (13.0 \pm 2.0 kgf/cm², 185 \pm 28 psi) $-$ 300 rpm	
Cylinder head	Warpage				0.05 (0.002)
Camshaft	Cam lobe height		IN	38.021 - 38.181 (1.4969 - 1.5032)	37.99 (1.496)
			EX	38.027 - 38.187 (1.4971 - 1.5034)	38.00 (1.496)
	Runout				0.05 (0.002)
	Oil clearance		A/B	0.050 - 0.111 (0.0020 - 0.0044)	0.130 (0.0051)
			С	0.065-0.126 (0.0026-0.0050)	0.145 (0.0057)
	Journal O. D.		A/B	23.949 - 23.970 (0.9429 - 0.9437)	23.92 (0.942)
	111411111111111111111111111111111111111		C	23.934 - 23.955 (0.9423 - 0.9431)	23.90 (0.941)
Rocker arm	Rocker arm I. [).	IN/EX	13.750 - 13.768 (0.5413 - 0.5420)	13.778 (0.5424)
and tappet	Rocker arm sh	aft O. D.	IN/EX	13.716 - 13.734 (0.5400 - 0.5407)	13.706 (0.5396)
	Rocker arm-to- arm shaft clea		IN/EX	0.016-0.052 (0.0006-0.0020)	0.072 (0.0028)
	Tappet adjuster assist spring free length		ring	18.57 (0.731)	17.80 (0.701)
	Tappet adjuster compression stroke with kerosene		sion	<u> </u>	0.2 (0.01)
Valve and Valve clearance		e		Hydraulic adjusting	
alve guide	Valve stem O. D.		IN	6.575-6.590 (0.2589-0.2594)	6.57 (0.259)
750			EX	6.555 - 6.570 (0.2581 - 0.2587)	6.54 (0.257)
	Valve guide I. I	D.	IN	6.600 - 6.615 (0.2598 - 0.2604)	6.635 (0.2612)
	-		EX	6.600 - 6.615 (0.2598 - 0.2604)	6.655 (0.2620)
	Stem-to-guide		IN	0.010-0.040 (0.0004-0.0016)	0.08 (0.003)
	clearance		EX	0.030-0.060 (0.0012-0.0024)	0.12 (0.005)
	Valve guide pr	ojection	IN	14.5 (0.57)	
	above cylinder		EX	15.5 (0.61)	
	Valve seat wid		IN/EX	0.90-1.10 (0.035-0.043)	1.50 (0.059)
/alve spring	Free length	Inner	IN/EX	41.37 (1.629)	39.9 (1.57)
	Outer	Outer	IN	45.70 (1.799)	43.90 (1.728)
		EX	43.50 (1.713)	41.80 (1.646)	

1.1	nit.	mm	lin
U	m.	111111	(111)

CYLINDER	ITEM		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Cylinder	I. D.		87.500 - 87.515 (3.4449 - 3.4455)	87.545 (3.4466)
	Out of round			0.05 (0.002)
	Taper			0.05 (0.002)
	Warpage			0.05 (0.002)
Piston,	Piston mark direction	on	"IN" mark toward the intake side	-
piston ring and piston pin	Piston O. D.		87.470 – 87.490 (3.4437 – 3.4445) at 10 (0.4) from the bottom	87.41 (3.441)
	Piston pin hole I. D.		22.002 - 22.008 (0.8662 - 0.8665)	22.018 (0.8668)
	Piston pin O. D.		21.994 - 22.000 (0.8659 - 0.8661)	21.984 (0.8655)
	Connecting rod small end I. D.		22.020 - 22.041 (0.8669 - 0.8678)	22.051 (0.8681)
	Cylinder-to-piston clearance		0.010 - 0.045 (0.0004 - 0.0018)	0.32 (0.013)
	Piston-to-piston pin clearance		0.002 - 0.014 (0.0001 - 0.0006)	0.034 (0.0013)
	Connecting rod-to-	oiston pin	0.020-0.047 (0.0008-0.0019)	0.07 (0.003)
	Piston ring-to-	Тор	0.020 - 0.050 (0.0008 - 0.0020)	0.25 (0.010)
	groove clearance	Second	0.015-0.045 (0.0006-0.0018)	0.20 (0.008)
	Piston ring end	Top/Second	0.20-0.35 (0.008-0.014)	0.50 (0.020)
	gap	Oil (side rail)	0.30-0.90 (0.012-0.035)	1.1 (0.04)
	Piston ring mark direction	Top/second	Marking facing up	

Unit: mm (in)

CLUTCH/CEARCHIET LINIVACE		Offic. Hilli (II	
CLUTCH/GEARSHIFT LINKAGE	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
Clutch lever free play	10-20 (3/8-3/4))	
Clutch spring free length	44.0 (1.73)	42.5 (1.67)	
Clutch disc thickness A/B	3.72-3.88 (0.146-0.153)	3.1 (0.12)	
Clutch plate warpage		0.30 (0.012)	
Clutch outer guide I. D.	27.955-28.012 (1.1006-1.1028)	28.08 (1.106)	
Mainshaft O. D. at clutch outer guide	27.980 - 27.993 (1.1016 - 1.1021)	27.93 (1.100)	

Unit: mm (in) CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION **STANDARD** SERVICE LIMIT Crankshaft/ Connecting rod big end side clearance 0.10 - 0.25 (0.004 - 0.010)0.28 (0.011) connecting rod Crankpin oil clearance 0.038 - 0.062 (0.0015 - 0.0024)0.070 (0.0028) Main journal oil clearance 0.030 - 0.046 (0.0012 - 0.0018)0.060 (0.0024) Crankshaft runout 0.05 (0.002) Transmission Gear I. D. M3, M5, C4 31.000 - 31.025 (1.2205 - 1.2215) 31.035 (1.2218) C1, C2 33.000 - 33.025 (1.2992 - 1.3002) 33.035 (1.3006) Gear bushing O. D. M3, C4 30.970 - 30.995 (1.2193 - 1.2203) 30.94 (1.218) M₅ 30.950 - 30.975 (1.2185 - 1.2195) 30.94 (1.218) C1 32.950 - 32.975 (1.2972 - 1.2982) 32.94 (1.297) C2 32.955-32.980 (1.2974-1.2984) 32.94 (1.297) Gear bushing I. D. M3, C4 28.000 -28.021 (1.1024 – 1.1032) 28.04 (1.104) C2 29.985-30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) 30.03 (1.182) Mainshaft O.D. at M3 27.959 -27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 27.94 (1.100) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) Countershaft O. D. at C2 29.94 (1.179) at C4 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 27.95 (1.100) Gear-to-bushing M3, C4 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022)0.075 (0.0030) clearance M5, C1 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)0.095 (0.0037) C2 0.020-0.070 (0.0008-0.0028) 0.090 (0.0035) Gear bushing-to-M3 0.020-0.062 (0.0008-0.0024) 0.082 (0.0032) shaft clearance C2 0.005 - 0.056 (0.0002 - 0.0022)0.076 (0.0030) C4 0.020 - 0.054 (0.0008 - 0.0021)0.074 (0.0029) Shift fork/ Fork claw L.,*1C.,*1R. 5.93 - 6.00 (0.233 - 0.236) 5.83 (0.230) shaft/drum thickness *2C.,*2R. 6.43 - 6.50 (0.253 - 0.256) 6.33 (0.249) Fork I. D. 14.000 - 14.021 (0.5512 - 0.5520) 14.04 (0.553) Shaft O.D. 13.966 - 13.984 (0.5498 - 0.5506) 13.956 (0.5494) Drum O. D. at left end 13.966 - 13.984 (0.5498 - 0.5506) 13.956 (0.5494) Drum journal (L. crankcase) 14.000 - 14.018 (0.5512 - 0.5519) 14.028 (0.5523)

^{*1:} After '00 VT1100C, *2: VT1100T and '97 - '00 VT1100C

CHANK	SHAFT/TRANSMISSION (d	ont u	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Output	Output gear I. D.		25.000 - 25.021 (0.9843 - 0.9851)	25.031 (0.9855)
drive	Output gear bushing	O. D.	24.959-24.980 (0.9826-0.9835)	24.949 (0.9822)
train	그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그		22.020 - 22.041 (0.8669 - 0.8678)	22.051 (0.8681)
	Output drive gear shaft O. I	D.	21.979 - 22.000 (0.8653 - 0.8661)	21.969 (0.8649)
	Gear-to-bushing clearance		0.020-0.062 (0.0008-0.0024)	0.082 (0.0032)
	Gear bushing-to-shaft clearance		0.020-0.062 (0.0008-0.0024)	0.082 (0.0032)
Output gear damper spring fr Output drive gear backlash		free length	69.3 (2.73)	68.1 (2.68)
		-	0.08-0.23 (0.003-0.009)	0.40 (0.016)
	Backlash difference between measurements	en		0.10 (0.004)

FINAL DRIVE —	TEM	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Recommended final drive	oil	Hypoid gear oil, SAE #80	<u> </u>
Final drive oil capacity	at disassembly	150 cm ³ (5.1 US oz, 5.3 Imp oz)	ş
	at draining	130 cm ³ (4.4 US oz, 4.6 lmp oz)	\
Final drive gear backlash		0.05-0.15 (0.002-0.006)	0.30 (0.012)
Backlash difference between	en measurements		0.10 (0.004)
Ring gear-to-stop pin clearance		0.30-0.60 (0.012-0.024)	-
Final drive gear assembly		0.2-0.4 N·m (2-4 kgf·cm, 1.7-3.5 lbf·in)	

FRONT WHEEL (CHERE	NICION/CTEEDING. VT4400C	Unit: mm		
	NSION/STEERING: VT1100C - ITEM	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
Minimum tire tread depth			1.5 (0.06)	
Cold tire pressure	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs) load	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)		
	Up to maximum weight capacity	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm² , 33 psi)		
Axle runout			0.20 (0.008)	
Front wheel rim runout	Radial		2.0 (0.08)	
	Axial		2.0 (0.08)	
Wheel balance weight			60 g (2.1 oz) max.	
Fork spring free length		459.4 (18.09)	450.2 (17.72)	
Fork tube runout		-	0.20 (0.008)	
Recommended fork fluid		Pro Honda Suspension Fluid SS-8	:	
Fork fluid level		173 (6.8)		
Fork fluid capacity		449 cm ³ (15.2 US oz, 15.8 lmp oz)	77	
Steering bearing preload		0.9-1.3 kg (2.0-2.9 lbs)	(i====================================	

	NSION/STEERING: VT1100T -	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Minimum tire tread depth			1.5 (0.06)
Cold tire pressure	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs) load	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm², 33 psi)	
er vertroer i di tri tri tri e i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	Up to maximum weight capacity	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm² , 33 psi)	:
Axle runout			0.20 (0.008)
Front wheel rim runout	Radial	-	2.0 (0.08)
	Axial		2.0 (0.08)
Wheel balance weight	400.00000000000000000000000000000000000		60 g (2.1 oz) max
Fork spring free length		475.9 (18.74)	466.4 (18.36)
Fork tube runout			0.20 (0.008)
Recommended fork fluid		Pro Honda Suspension Fluid SS-8	
Fork fluid level		140 (5.5)	
Fork fluid capacity		497 cm3 (16.8 US oz, 17.5 lmp oz)	
Steering bearing preload		0.9-1.3 kg (2.0-2.9 lbs)	

- REAR WHEEL /RRAKE	/SUSPENSION: VT1100C -	Unit: mm (i		
REAR WHEEL/BRAKE/SUSPENSION: VT1100C ITEM Minimum tire tread depth		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
			2.0 (0.08)	
Cold tire pressure	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs) load	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)		
	Up to maximum weight capacity	280 kPa (2.80 kgf/cm² , 41 psi)	-	
Axle runout			0.20 (0.008)	
Rear wheel rim runout	Radial		2.0 (0.08)	
	Axial		2.0 (0.08)	
Wheel balance weight			70 g (2.5 oz) max.	
Shock absorber spring adjuster standard position		Position "2"		
Rear brake pedal free play		20-30 (3/4-1-1/4)	-	
Brake drum I. D.		180.0 (7.09)	181 (7.1)	
Brake lining thickness		5.0 (0.20)	2.0 (0.08)	

REAR WHEEL/BRAKE/SUSPENSION: VT1100T		Unit: mn		
ITEM Minimum tire tread depth		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
			2.0 (0.08)	
Cold tire pressure	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs) load	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)		
*	Up to maximum weight capacity	250 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm² , 36 psi)		
Axle runout			0.20 (0.008)	
Rear wheel rim runout	Radial		2.0 (0.08)	
	Axial	-	2.0 (0.08)	
Wheel balance weight			70 g (2.5 oz) max.	
Shock absorber spring ac	djuster standard position	Position "2"		

HYDRAULIC DIS	C BRAKE -		Unit: mm (
Specified brake fluid		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
		DOT 4 Brake Fluid	
Brake disc thickness		5.8-6.2 (0.23-0.24)	5.0 (0.20)
Brake disc runout			0.30 (0.012)
Master cylinder I. D.		12.700 - 12.743 (0.5000 - 0.5017)	12.75 (0.502)
Master piston O. D.		12.657 - 12.684 (0.4983 - 0.4994)	12.64 (0.498)
Caliper cylinder I. D.	Front	27.000 - 27.050 (1.0630 - 1.0650)	27.06 (1.065)
	Rear (VT1100T)	38.180 - 38.230 (1.5031 - 1.5051)	38.24 (1.506)
Caliper piston O. D.	Front	26.935 - 26.968 (1.0604 - 1.0617)	26.91 (1.059)
	Rear (VT1100T)	38.115 - 38.148 (1.5006 - 1.5019)	38.09 (1.500)

CHARGING SYSTEM/ALTERNATOR: VT1100T a			SPECIFICATIONS
Alternator charging coil resistance (at 20 °C/68 °F)			0.3−0.5 Ω
Battery capa	capacity		12V-16AH
	current leakage		1 mA max.
Specific gravity	Specific gravity	Fully charged	1.270 — 1.290
		Needs charging	Below 1.260
	Charging current		1.6 A max.

	ITEM		SPECIFICATIONS	
Alternator	charging coil resistance	(at 20 °C/68 °F)	0.3−0.5 Ω	
Battery	capacity		12V-12AH	
	current leakage		0.1 mA max.	
	Specific gravity	Fully charged	13.0 – 13.2 V	
		Needs charging	Below 12.3 V	
	Charging current	Normal	1.4 A/5 – 10 h	
	5556 955	Quick	6.0 A/1.0 h	

IGNITION SYSTEM ITEM		SPECIFICATIONS
Spark plug	Standard	DPR7EA-9 (NGK) X22EPR-U9 (DENSO)
	For cold climate/below 5 °C/41 °F	DPR6EA – 9 (NGK) X20EPR – U9 (DENSO)
	For extended high speed riding	DPR8EA – 9 (NGK) X24EPR – U9 (DENSO)
Spark plug gap		0.80 – 0.90 mm (0.031 – 0.035 in)
	nary peak voltage	100 V minimum
Ignition pulse ge	enerator peak voltage	0.7 V minimum
Ignition timing '	'F'' mark	12°BTDC at idle

- ELECTRIC STARTER/STARTER CLUTCH -		Unit: mm (ir
ITEM	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Starter driven gear O. D.	57.749-57.768 (2.2736-2.2743)	57.639 (2.2692)
Starter clutch housing I. D.	74.414 - 74.440 (2.9297 - 2.9307)	74.50 (2.933)
Starter motor brush length	12.5 - 13.0 (0.49 - 0.51)	6.5 (0.26)
Torque limiter slip torque	16−25 N·m (1.6−2.5 kgf·m , 12−18 lbf·ft)	

LIGHTS/ME	TERS/SWITCHES	SPECIFICATIONS
Fuse	Main	30A
	Sub	10A × 5
Bulb	Headlight (high/low beam)	12V - 60/55W
	Tail/brake light	12V-32/3CP imes 2
	License light (VT1100T only)	12V-4CP
	Front turn signal/running light	$12V-32/3CP \times 2$
	Rear turn signal light	12V-32CP × 2
	Meter light	12V-3W
	High beam indicator	12V – 3.4W
	Turn signal indicator	12V – 3.4W
	Neutral indicator	12V-3.4W
Fuel pump flow ca	apacity (minimum)	800 cm3 (27.1 US oz, 28.2 lmp oz) /minute
Thermosensor	80 °C/176 °F	47 − 57 Ω
resistance	120 °C/248 °F	14−18 Ω
Fan motor	Closed (ON)	98-102 °C (208-216 °F)
switch	Open (OFF)	93-97 °C (199-207 °F)

TORQUE VALUES (VT1100C)

FASTENER TYPE	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	FASTENER TYPE	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)
5 mm hex bolt and nut	5 (0.5, 3.6)	5 mm screw	4 (0.4, 2.9)
6 mm hex bolt and nut	10 (1.0, 7)	6 mm screw	9 (0.9, 6.5)
8 mm hex bolt and nut	22 (2.2, 16)	6 mm flange bolt (8 mm head)	9 (0.9, 6.5)
10 mm hex bolt and nut	34 (3.5, 25)	6 mm flange bolt (10 mm head) and nut	12 (1.2, 9)
12 mm hex bolt and nut	54 (5.5, 40)	8 mm flange bolt and nut	26 (2.7, 20)
		10 mm flange bolt and nut	39 (4.0, 29)

- · Torque specifications listed below are for important fasteners.
- · Others should be tightened to standard torque values listed above.

Notes:

- 1. Apply sealant to the threads.
- 2. Apply locking agent to the threads.
- 3. Apply molybdenum oil solution to the threads.
- 4. Apply grease to the threads and seating surface.
- 5. Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.
- 6. ALOC bolt. Do not reuse.
- 7. Stake.
- 8. Left hand threads.

ITEM	QTY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Lubrication:				
Oil drain bolt	1	14	29 (3.0 , 22)	
Oil filter cartridge	1	20	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	Note 5
Oil pump driven sprocket bolt	1	6	18 (1.8 , 13)	Note 2
Oil pump mounting bolt	3	6	12 (1.2,9)	,,,,,,
Oil pump assembly bolt		6	13 (1.3,9)	
Oil orifice bolt	2	6	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
Oil pressure switch	1	PT 1/8	12 (1.2,9)	Note 1
Fuel System:	195	3331 34353		1,1010
Carburetor insulator band screw	4	5	2.0 (0.2 , 1.4)	
Cooling System:				
Water pump assembly and coolant drain bolt	2	6	13 (1.3,9)	
Water pump mounting bolt	2	6	12 (1.2 , 9)	
Cylinder Head/Valve:			12 (112 / 0/	
Spark plug	4	12	14 (1.4, 10)	
Spark plug sleeve	2	30	13 (1.3 , 9)	Note 3
Assist shaft cap	6	14	22 (2.2 , 16)	110100
Head cover shroud bolt	8	6	8.8 (0.9 , 6.5)	
Cylinder head cover bolt	10	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
cap nut	4	8	26 (2.7 , 20)	
	8	10	39 (4.0 , 29)	
Rocker arm shaft hole plug	22	6	39 (4.0 , 29)	
Cam sprocket bolt	4	7	18 (1.8 , 13)	Note 2
Cam chain tensioner bolt	4	6	12 (1.2, 9)	

ITEM	QTY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Clutch/Gearshift Linkage:				
Clutch cover bolt	7	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Clutch center lock nut	1	25	98 (10.0 , 72)	Note 5, 7
Clutch lifter plate bolt	5	6	12 (1.2, 9)	14010 0, 7
Clutch cable lock nut	1	8	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
L. crankcase rear cover nut	1	6	12 (1.2, 9)	
Primary drive gear bolt	1	12	98 (10.0 , 72)	Note 5
Shift stopper arm pivot bolt	1	6	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
Crankshaft/Transmission:		(55)	(, . ,	
R. crankcase bolt	5	6	12 (1.2,9)	
	10	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
	1	10	39 (4.0 , 29)	
Output drive gear shaft bolt (R. crankcase)	1	10	49 (5.0 , 36)	Note 2
L. crankcase bolt	1	6	12 (1.2,9)	14000 2
	2	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Connecting rod bearing cap nut	4	10	59 (6.0 , 43)	Note 5
Output gear case mounting bolt	3	8	31 (3.2 , 23)	14010 0
Output drive gear bearing holder bolt	2	8	31 (3.2 , 23)	Note 5
Output driven gear bearing holder bolt	4	8	31 (3.2 , 23)	Note 5
Output drive gear bearing lock nut			(/ /	11010 0
(inner)	1	30	74 (7.5,54)	Note 5, 7
(outer)	1	64	98 (10.0 , 72)	Note 5, 7
Output driven gear bearing lock nut		0.70.0	00 (10.0 / 12/	14010 3, 7
(inner)	1	30	74 (7.5,54)	Note 5, 7
(outer)	1	64	98 (10.0 , 72)	Note 5, 7
R. crankcase bearing setting plate screw	1	6	8.8 (0.9 , 6.5)	Note 2
bolt	4	6	12 (1.2, 9)	Note 2
Charging System/Alternator:	1 60			110102
Flywheel bolt	1	12	137 (14.0 , 101)	Note 5, 8
gnition System:			, (11110), 1017	14010 3, 0
Timing hole cap	1	45	18 (1.8 , 13)	Note 4
Ignition pulse generator wire clamp bolt	1	8	26 (2.7 , 20)	11010 4
(R. crankcase bolt)	- 1		(-1) / -0/	
Electric Starter:				
Starter motor terminal nut	2	6	6.9 (0.7, 5.1)	
Starter motor assembly bolt	3	5	4.9 (0.5 , 3.6)	
Starter clutch housing bolt	6	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	Note 2
Others:			20 (210 / 17)	1002
6 mm flange bolt (8 mm head: Small flange)	-		9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
6 mm flange bolt (8 mm head: Large flange)			12 (1.2 , 9)	

FRAME (VT1100C)	Q'TY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Frame/Body Panels/Exhaust System:				
Back seat nut	3	6	12 (1.2,9)	Note 2
Rear fender bolt	2	10	64 (6.5 , 47)	Note 5
	4	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt	2	14	108 (11.0 , 80)	Note 5
Exhaust pipe joint nut	4	8	25 (2.5 , 18)	
Front muffler mounting bolt	2	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	
Front/rear muffler joint bolt	2	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Muffler and exhaust pipe band bolt	5	8	20 (2.0 , 14)	
Exhaust pipe cover bolt	5	6	8.8 (0.9 , 6.5)	
Fuel tank mounting bolt (front)	1	6	12 (1.2,9)	
(rear)	1	8	26 (2.7 , 20)	
Fuel valve	1	22	34 (3.5 , 25)	
Front footpeg bracket bolt (left)	2	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
(right)	2	10	39 (4.0 , 29)	
Gearshift arm pinch bolt	1	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Side stand pivot bolt	1	10	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
nut	1	10	29 (3.0 , 22)	
Engine Mount:		10	25 (5.0 , 22)	
Front lower engine mounting nut	1	10	27 (2.8 , 20)	Note 5
Front upper engine mounting bolt	4	8	26 (2.7, 20)	Note 5
Rear lower engine mounting nut	1	12	64 (6.5 , 47)	Note 5
Rear upper engine mounting nut	1	10		Note 5
Sub-frame bolt (front)	2	10	52 (5.3 , 38)	Note 5
(rear)	2	10	64 (6.5 , 47)	Note 5
(left)	1	8	39 (4.0 , 29)	
Final Drive:	-1	8	26 (2.7 , 20)	
	1	20	12 (1.2.0)	
Final drive oil filler cap	1	30	12 (1.2 , 9)	
Final drive oil drain bolt	1	8	12 (1.2 , 9)	
Final gear case assembly mounting nut	4	10	64 (6.5 , 47)	
Dust guard plate bolt	1	6	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	2000 00 002
Gear case cover bolt	2	10	47 (4.8 , 35)	Note 2
Dr. i	6	8	25 (2.6 , 19)	
Pinion gear shaft nut	1	16	108 (11.0 , 80)	Note 2
Pinion retainer lock tab bolt	1	6	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
Pinion retainer	1	64	108 (11.0 , 80)	
Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering:			102422 312442	
Handlebar upper holder bolt	4	8	29 (3.0 , 22)	
Front axle bolt	1	14	59 (6.0 , 43)	
Front axle pinch bolt	4	8	22 (2.2 , 16)	VZAN UL ISE
Front brake disc bolt	5	8	42 (4.3 , 31)	Note 6
Front turn signal stopper plate bolt	2	6	8.8 (0.9 , 6.5)	
Upper fork pinch bolt	2	7	11 (1.1 , 8)	
Lower fork pinch bolt	2	10	49 (5.0 , 36)	
Fork cap	2	37	23 (2.3 , 17)	
Fork socket bolt	4	8	20 (2.0 , 14)	Note 2
Steering stem nut	1	24	103 (10.5, 76)	
Steering bearing adjustment nut	1	26	21 (2.1, 15)	(page 13-29

FRAME (VT1100C) [cont'd]	Q'TY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Rear Wheel/Brake/Suspension:				
Rear axle nut	1	18	88 (9.0, 65)	
Rear axle pinch bolt	1	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Rear brake arm pinch bolt	1	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Rear brake pivot arm pinch bolt	1	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Rear brake stopper arm bolt	2	8	22 (2.2, 16)	
Shock absorber upper mounting bolt	2	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
lower mounting bolt (left)	1	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	
(right)	1	10	34 (3.5, 25)	
Swingarm right pivot lock nut	1	30	113 (11.5 , 83)	
Swingarm pivot bolt (left)	1	30	103 (10.5, 76)	
(right)	1	30	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Hydraulic Disc Brake:				
Caliper bleed valve	1	8	5.9 (0.6 , 4.3)	
Pad pin plug	1	10	2.9 (0.3, 2.2)	
Pad pin	1	10	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Brake hose oil bolt	2	10	34 (3.5 , 25)	
Front brake lever pivot bolt	1	6	1.0 (0.1 , 0.7)	
nut	1	6	5.9 (0.6 , 4.3)	
Front master cylinder holder bolt	2	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Front master cylinder reservoir cap screw	2	4	2.0 (0.2 , 1.4)	
Front brake light switch screw	1	4	1.0 (0.1, 0.7)	
Front caliper mounting bolt	2	10	45 (4.6 , 33)	Note 6
Front caliper bracket pin bolt	1	8	13 (1.3 , 9)	Note 2
Front caliper pin bolt	1	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	Note 2
Lights/Meters/Switches:	100	1271		
Headlight attaching bolt	2	5	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
Side stand switch bolt	1	6	9.8 (1.0,7)	
Fan motor switch	1	16	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Thermosensor	1	PT 1/8	8.8 (0.9 , 6.5)	Note 1
Neutral switch	1	10	12 (1.2,9)	
Ignition switch mounting bolt	2	6	9.8 (1.0 , 7)	
Horn mounting bolt	1	8	21 (2.1 , 15)	

TORQUE VALUES (VT1100T)

STANDARD ———————————————————————————————————	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	FASTENER TYPE	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)
5 mm hex bolt and nut	5 (0.5, 3.6)	5 mm screw	4 (0.4, 2.9)
6 mm hex bolt and nut	10 (1.0, 7)	6 mm screw	9 (0.9, 6.5)
8 mm hex bolt and nut	22 (2.2, 16)	6 mm flange bolt (8 mm head)	9 (0.9, 6.5)
10 mm hex bolt and nut	34 (3.5, 25)	6 mm flange bolt (10 mm head) and nut	12 (1.2, 9)
12 mm hex bolt and nut	54 (5.5, 40)	8 mm flange bolt and nut	26 (2.7, 20)
		10 mm flange bolt and nut	39 (4.0, 29)

- · Torque specifications listed below are for important fasteners.
- · Others should be tightened to standard torque values listed above.

Notes:

- 1. Apply sealant to the threads.
- 2. Apply locking agent to the threads.
- 3. Apply molybdenum oil solution to the threads.
- 4. Apply grease to the threads and seating surface.
- 5. Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.
- 6. ALOC bolt. Do not reuse.
- 7. Stake.
- 8. Left hand threads.

ITEM	QTY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Lubrication:				
Oil drain bolt	1	14	29 (3.0, 22)	
Oil filter cartridge	1	20	10 (1.0,7)	Note 5
Oil pump driven sprocket bolt	1	6	18 (1.8 , 13)	Note 2
Oil pump mounting bolt	3	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Oil pump assembly bolt	2	6	13 (1.3,9)	
Oil orifice bolt	1	6	10 (1.0 , 7)	
Oil pressure switch	1	PT 1/8	12 (1.2,9)	Note 1
Fuel System:				Addison to
Carburetor insulator band screw	4	5	2 (0.2 , 1.4)	
Cooling System:		254		
Water pump assembly and coolant drain bolt	2	6	13 (1.3,9)	
Water pump mounting bolt	2	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Cylinder Head/Valve:			N. T. A. C. M.	
Spark plug	4	12	14 (1.4, 10)	
Spark plug sleeve	2	30	13 (1.3, 9)	Note 3
Assist shaft cap	6	14	22 (2.2 , 16)	
Head cover shroud bolt	8	6	9 (0.9 , 6.5)	
Cylinder head cover bolt	10	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
cap nut	4	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
	8	10	43 (4.4, 32)	
Rocker arm shaft hole plug	6	22	39 (4.0, 29)	
Cam sprocket bolt	4	7	18 (1.8 , 13)	Note 2
Cam chain tensioner bolt	4	6	12 (1.2, 9)	

ITEM	Q'TY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Clutch/Gearshift Linkage:				
Clutch cover bolt	7	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Clutch center lock nut			12 (112) 01	
VT1100T and '97-'00 VT1100C:	1	25	98 (10.0 , 72)	Note 5, 7
After '00 VT1100C:	1	25	127 (13.0, 94)	Note 5, 7
Clutch lifter plate bolt	5	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Clutch cable lock nut	1	8	10 (1.0,7)	
Left crankcase rear cover nut	1	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Primary drive gear bolt	1	12	98 (10.0,72)	Note 5
Shift stopper arm pivot bolt	1	6	10 (1.0,7)	100 H104 B100 B0
Crankshaft/Transmission:				
Right crankcase bolt	5	6	12 (1.2,9)	
	10	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
	1	10	39 (4.0, 29)	
Output drive gear shaft bolt (R. crankcase)	1	10	49 (5.0, 36)	Note 2
Left crankcase bolt	1	6	12 (1.2,9)	
	2	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Connecting rod bearing cap nut	4	10	59 (6.0, 43)	Note 5
Output gear case mounting bolt	3	8	31 (3.2, 23)	0.000/2-02-05-05-0
Output drive gear bearing holder bolt	2	8	31 (3.2, 23)	Note 5
Output driven gear bearing holder bolt	4	8	31 (3.2, 23)	Note 5
Output drive gear bearing lock nut				
(inner)	1	30	74 (7.5,54)	Note 5, 7
(outer)	1	64	98 (10.0,72)	Note 5, 7
Output driven gear bearing lock nut				10.017.00.017.00.00
(inner)	1	30	74 (7.5 , 54)	Note 5, 7
(outer)	1	64	98 (10.0,72)	Note 5, 7
Right crankcase bearing setting plate screw	1	6	9 (0.9, 6.5)	Note 2
bolt	4	6	12 (1.2,9)	Note 2
Charging System/Alternator:				
Flywheel bolt	1	12	137 (14.0 , 101)	Note 5, 8
Ignition System:				27
Timing hole cap	1	45	18 (1.8 , 13)	Note 4
Ignition pulse generator wire clamp bolt	1	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
(R. crankcase bolt)				
Electric Starter:	2	9		
Starter motor terminal nut	2	6	7 (0.7 , 5.1)	
Starter motor assembly bolt	3	5	5 (0.5 , 3.6)	
Starter clutch housing bolt	6	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	Note 2
Others: 6 mm flange bolt (8 mm head: Small flange)			10 (1.0 , 7)	
6 mm flange bolt (8 mm head: Large flange)	77		12 (1.2,9)	

Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt	ORQUE (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Rear fender bolt		
Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt	(6.5, 47)	Note 5
Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt Schaust pipe joint nut	3 (2.7, 20)	7.5.5.55.5.
(grab rail) bolt 4 8 23 Muffler mounting bolt 4 8 26 Muffler band bolt 4 8 20 Exhaust pipe cover bolt 3 6 8.8 Fuel tank mounting bolt (front) 1 6 8.8 Fuel valve 1 8 26 Fuel valve 1 22 34 Front footpeg bracket bolt 4 8 26 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 6 23 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 10 9.8 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 10 9.8 Front lower engine mounting nut 1 10 9.8 Front lower engine mounting nut 1 10 39 Front upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear	3 (11.0 , 80)	Note 5
Exhaust pipe joint nut	20 - 12 10 - 10	
Muffler mounting bolt 4 8 26 Muffler band bolt 4 8 20 Exhaust pipe cover bolt 3 6 8.8 Fuel tank mounting bolt (front) 1 6 12 Fuel valve 1 22 34 Front footpeg bracket bolt 4 8 26 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 6 23 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 10 9.8 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Int 10 9.8 26 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 10 9.8 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Front lower engine mounting nut 1 10 39 Front upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Sub	3 (2.3 , 17)	
Muffler band bolt 4 8 20 Exhaust pipe cover bolt 3 6 8.8 Fuel tank mounting bolt (front) 1 6 12 (rear) 1 8 26 Fuel valve 1 22 34 Front footpeg bracket bolt 4 8 26 Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1 16 23 Side stand pivot bolt 1 10 9.8 Final Mount 1 10 9.8 Front lopter 2 10 39 Front upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Sub-frame bolt (front)	3 (2.7 , 20)	
Exhaust pipe cover bolt Fuel tank mounting bolt (front)	(2.0 , 14)	
Fuel tank mounting bolt (front)	3 (0.9 , 6.5)	
Fuel valve	2 (1.2 , 9)	
Fuel valve Front footpeg bracket bolt Gearshift pedal pinch bolt I 1 6 23 Side stand pivot bolt nut 1 10 9.8 Front lower engine mounting nut 1 10 39 Front upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Sub-frame bolt (front) 2 10 64 (rear) 2 10 39 (left) 2 8 26 Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 Finion gear shaft nut 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front try a 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	3 (2.7 , 20)	
Front footpeg bracket bolt Gearshift pedal pinch bolt Side stand pivot bolt nut 1 10 9.8 Front lower engine mounting nut Front upper engine mounting nut Rear upper engine mounting nut Sub-frame bolt (front) (rear) (left) Final Drive: Final drive oil filler cap Final drive oil filler cap Final gear case assembly mounting nut Dust guard plate bolt Gear case cover bolt Finion gear shaft nut Pinion retainer Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper plate bolt Front taxle pinch taxle Taxle Taxle T	1 (3.5 , 25)	
Gearshift pedal pinch bolt 1	5 (2.7 , 20)	
Side stand pivot bolt	3 (2.3 , 17)	
Nut 1	8 (1.0 , 7)	
Front lower engine mounting nut	(3.0, 22)	
Front lower engine mounting nut 1 10 39 Front upper engine mounting bolt 5 8 26 Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Sub-frame bolt (front) 2 10 64 (rear) 2 10 39 (left) 2 8 26 Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 Finion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 6 9.8 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 4 8 <t< td=""><td>(0.0 , 22)</td><td></td></t<>	(0.0 , 22)	
Front upper engine mounting bolt S Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54	9 (4.0 , 29)	
Rear lower engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Rear upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Sub-frame bolt (front) 2 10 64 (rear) 2 10 39 (left) 2 8 26 Final Drive: Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 4 8 29 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 <	6 (2.7, 20)	
Rear upper engine mounting nut 1 10 54 Sub-frame bolt (front) 2 10 64 (rear) 2 10 39 (left) 2 8 26 Final Drive: Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pront Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 64 108 Front wale bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 4 8 29 Front brake disc bolt 4 8 22 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.	1 (5.5 , 40)	
Sub-frame bolt (front) 2 10 64 (rear) 2 10 39 (left) 2 8 26 Final Drive: Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 64 108 Front axle bolt 4 8 29 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 29 Front brake disc bolt 4 8 22 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lowe	1 (5.5 , 40)	
(rear) 2 10 39 (left) 2 8 26 Final Drive: Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 6 9.8 Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt </td <td>1 (6.5 , 47)</td> <td>Note 5</td>	1 (6.5 , 47)	Note 5
Final Drive: Final drive oil filler cap	9 (4.0 , 29)	Note 5
Final Drive: 1 30 12 Final drive oil filler cap 1 8 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 2 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 4 8 29 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt	6 (2.7, 20)	
Final drive oil filler cap 1 30 12 Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 64 108 Front axle bolt 4 8 29 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 29 Front brake disc bolt 4 8 22 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	(2.7, 20)	
Final drive oil drain bolt 1 8 12 Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 1 64 108 Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	2 (1.2 , 9)	
Final gear case assembly mounting nut 4 10 64 Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 3 4 8 29 Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	2 (1.2 , 9)	
Dust guard plate bolt 1 6 9.8 Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	1 (6.5 , 47)	
Gear case cover bolt 2 10 47 6 8 25 Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	.8 (1.0 , 7)	
Pinion gear shaft nut	7 (4.8 , 35)	Note 2
Pinion gear shaft nut 1 16 108 Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 37 23 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	5 (2.6 , 19)	NOTE 2
Pinion retainer lock tab bolt 1 6 9.8 Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	3 (11.0 , 80)	Note 2
Pinion retainer 1 64 108 Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	.8 (1.0 , 7)	Note 2
Front Wheel/Suspension/Steering: 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	3 (1.0 , 7)	
Handlebar upper holder bolt 4 8 29 Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	(11.0,00)	
Front axle bolt 1 14 59 Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	9 (3.0 , 22)	
Front axle pinch bolt 4 8 22 Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	9 (6.0 , 43)	
Front brake disc bolt 6 8 42 Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	2 (2.2 , 16)	
Front turn signal stopper plate bolt 2 6 8.8 Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	2 (4.3 , 31)	Note 6
Upper fork pinch bolt 2 7 11 Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22		Note 6
Lower fork pinch bolt 2 10 49 Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	3 (0.9 , 6.5)	
Fork cap 2 37 23 Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	1 (1.1 , 8)	
Fork socket bolt 2 8 22	9 (5.0 , 36)	
	3 (2.3 , 17)	Note 2
	2 (2.2 , 16)	Note 2
3	3 (10.5 , 76)	/ner- 10 00
	1 (2.1 , 15) 2 (1.2 , 9)	(page 13-29

FRAME (VT1100T) [cont'd] ————————————————————————————————————	QTY	THREAD DIA. (mm)	TORQUE N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)	REMARKS
Rear Wheel/Brake/Suspension:				
Rear axle nut	1	18	88 (9.0, 65)	
Rear axle pinch bolt	1	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
Rear brake disc bolt	6	8	42 (4.3, 31)	Note 6
Damper holder plate bolt	5	6	20 (2.0 , 14)	Note 6
Shock absorber upper mounting bolt	2	8	26 (2.7, 20)	
lower mounting bolt (left)	1	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	
(right)	1	10	34 (3.5 , 25)	
Rear brake hose clamp bolt	4	6	12 (1.2,9)	Note 6
Swingarm right pivot lock nut	1	30	113 (11.5 , 83)	
Swingarm pivot bolt (left)	1	30	103 (10.5 , 76)	
(right)	1	30	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Hydraulic Disc Brake:			_	
Caliper bleed valve	2	8	5.9 (0.6 , 4.3)	
Pad pin plug	2	10	2.9 (0.3 , 2.2)	
Pad pin	2	10	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Brake hose oil bolt	4	10	34 (3.5 , 25)	
Front brake lever pivot bolt	1	6	1.0 (0.1 , 0.7)	
nut	1	6	5.9 (0.6 , 4.3)	
Front master cylinder holder bolt	2	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Front master cylinder reservoir cap screw	2	4	2.0 (0.2 , 1.4)	
Front brake light switch screw	1	4	1.0 (0.1 , 0.7)	
Front caliper mounting bolt	2	8	30 (3.1, 22)	Note 6
Front caliper bracket pin bolt	1	8	13 (1.3,9)	Note 2
Front caliper pin bolt	1	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	Note 2
Rear master cylinder reservoir cover bolt	1	6	1.0 (0.1, 0.7)	
Rear master cylinder reservoir mounting bolt	1	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Rear master cylinder mounting bolt	2	6	12 (1.2,9)	
Rear master cylinder hose joint screw	1	4	2.0 (0.2 , 1.4)	Note 2
Rear master cylinder push rod lock nut	1	8	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Rear caliper stopper pin bolt	1	18	69 (7.0,51)	Note 6
Rear caliper pin bolt	1	12	27 (2.8, 20)	Note 2
Rear caliper bracket bolt	1	8	23 (2.3 , 17)	
Lights/Meters/Switches:				
Headlight attaching bolt	2	5	3.9 (0.4, 2.9)	
Side stand switch bolt	1	6	9.8 (1.0,7)	
Fan motor switch	1	16	18 (1.8 , 13)	
Thermosensor	1	PT 1/8	8.8 (0.9 , 6.5)	Note 1
Neutral switch	1	10	12 (1.2,9)	
Ignition switch mounting bolt	2	6	9.8 (1.0,7)	
Ignition switch cover screw	2	4	2.0 (0.2 , 1.4)	
Horn mounting bolt	1	8	21 (2.1 , 15)	

TOOLS

DESCRIPTION	TOOL NUMBER	ALTERNATIVE TOOL	TOOL NUMBER
Carburetor float level gauge	07401-0010000		
Oil pressure gauge	07506 - 3000000	Equivalent commercially	
5		available in U. S. A.	
Oil pressure gauge attachment	07510 - 4220100	Equivalent commercially	
14		available in U. S. A.	
Gear holder	07724-0010100	Not available in U. S. A.	
Flywheel holder	07725-0040000	Equivalent commercially	
- Company of the Comp		available in U. S. A.	
Rotor puller	07733-0020001	Rotor puller	07933-3290001
			(U. S. A. only)
Adjustable bearing puller,	07736-A01000B		07736-A01000A
25-40 mm	(U.S.A. only)		(U. S. A. only)
Remover weight	07741-0010201	Remover weight	07936-371020A or
		3	07936-3710200
Valve guide remover, 6.6 mm	07742-0010200	Valve guide remover, 6.6 mm	07942-6570100
			(U. S. A. only)
Valve guide driver	07743-0020000	Not available in U. S. A.	(3.3
Attachment, 32 × 35 mm	07746-0010100		
Attachment, 37 × 40 mm	07746-0010200		
Attachment, 42 $ imes$ 47 mm	07746-0010300		
Attachment, 52 × 55 mm	07746-0010400		
Attachment, 62 × 68 mm	07746-0010500		
Attachment, 72 × 78 mm	07746-0010600		
Attachment, 24 × 26 mm	07746-0010700		
Driver, 40 mm I. D.	07746-0030100		
Attachment, 25 mm I. D.	07746-0030200		
Attachment, 30 mm I. D.	07746-0030300		
Pilot, 10 mm	07746-0040100		
Pilot, 17 mm	07746-0040400		
Pilot, 20 mm	07746-0040500		
Pilot, 30 mm	07746-0040700		
Pilot, 28 mm	07746-0041100		
Bearing remover shaft	07746-0050100		
Bearing remover head, 20 mm	07746-0050600		
Driver	07749 - 0010000		
Valve spring compressor	07757 - 0010000		
Valve seat cutter, 40 mm (45° EX)	07780-0010500	Equivalent commercially	
Valve seat cutter, 33 mm (45° IN)	07780-0010800	available in U. S. A.	
Valve seat cutter, 35 mm (32° IN)	07780-0012300	Harting and tages for the clarific of the ALM Connection of the State State State	
Valve seat cutter, 42 mm (32° EX)	07780-0013000		
Valve seat cutter, 37.5 mm (60° IN)	07780-0014100		
Valve seat cutter, 42 mm (60° EX)	07780-0014400		
Valve seat cutter holder	07781-0010202		
Pivot adjust wrench	07908-4690003	Pivot adjust wrench	07908 - 4690002
Pilot screw wrench	07908-4730001	Equivalent commercially	
		available in U. S. A.	
Retainer wrench	07910 - ME80000		
Snap ring pliers	07914-3230001		
Snap ring pliers	07914-5670101	Not available in U. S. A.	07914-5670100
Steering stem socket	07916-3710101	Steering stem socket	07916-3710100
Lock nut wrench, 30 × 64 mm	07916-MB00001	Lock nut wrench, 30 × 64 mm	07916 - MB00000
Shaft holder	07923-6890101		

DESCRIPTION	TOOL NUMBER	ALTERNATIVE TOOL	TOOL NUMBER
Pinion joint holder	07926 - ME90000 -	Pinion holder plate	07924-ME40010
Joint holder attachment	07HMB-MM80100	Collar set "C"	07924 - ME40020
Fork tube holder attachment	07930-KA50100		
Bearing race insert attachment	07931-4630300		
Bearing puller & driver attachment	07934 — MB00000	Bearing puller & driver attach-	07965 - MB0010A or
bearing paner & arriver attachment	07334 WIB00000	ment	07965 - MB00100
		ment	
			(U. S. A. only)
Bearing remover set, 20 mm	07936-3710001	Not available in U. S. A.	
remover handle	07936-3710100		
– bearing remover, 20 mm	07936-3710600		
remover weight	07741-0010201	Remover weight	07936-3710200
Remover handle	07936-3710100	Suite the state of the suite of	inter-decision in the property of the property
Bearing remover, 17 mm	07936-3710300		
Bearing remover set, 10 mm	07936 - GE00000	Equivalent commercially	
remover shaft	07936 – GE00100 —	available in U. S. A.	
bearing remover, 10 mm	07936 - GE00200 -	available III O. S. A.	
remover weight	07741-0010201		
Valve guide driver, 6.6 mm	07942 - 6570100		
Attachment	07945-3330300	Alema	
Bearing remover	07946-3710500	Bearing remover	M9360-277-91774
	AND CONTROL OF LAND CONTROL OF CO	1337 ASSAULT - 4 ORDOGE PERCENTAGE	(U. S. A. only)
Steering stem driver	07946-MB00000		Anti-algebraic (Const-Anti-Assa)
Fork seal driver body	07947 - KA50100		
Fork seal driver attachment, 41 mm l. D.	07947 KF00100		
Bearing remover	07948-4630100		
Driver			
	07949-3710001		
Ball race remover	07953 - MJ10000	Ball race remover	07953 - MJ1000B or
			07953 - MJ1000A
			(U.S.A. only)
remover attachment	07953 - MJ10100		
remover handle	07953 - MJ10200		
Damper spring compressor	07964 - ME90000	Assembly bolt	07965 - 1660200
sampor opinig compressor	07004 WIE30000	Assembly collar	07965 – 166030A or
		Assembly conar	
			07965 — 1660300
		Threaded adaptor	07965-KA30000
		Compressor seat	07967-9690200
Dis/assembly tool	07965-3710101		
Attachment	07965 - MA10100		
Hydraulic tappet bleeder	07973 - MJ00000		
Valve guide reamer, 6.6 mm	07984-ZE20001	Valve guide reamer,	07984-ZE2000D
	12.20 (Chi. 24.0.1)	6.6 mm	(U. S. A. only)
Torque limiter attachment	07998 - MG80000	Not available in U. S. A.	(O. O. A. Olliy)
Bearing driver attachment		Not available in U. S. A.	
	07GAD-SD40101		
Oil filter wrench	07HAA-PJ70100		\$290 TORS 1999 OF 67
Peak voltage adaptor	07HGJ-0020100	Peak voltage tester	(U.S. A.only)
Pinion puller set	07HMC-MM80100 -	Not available in U. S. A.	
	or	Puller shaft 22 × 1.5 × 240 mm	07931 - ME9010B
Pinion puller set	07935-MB00000		(U. S. A. only)
Pinion puller attachment	07HMC-MM80200	Puller base "A"	07HMC-MM8011A
The state of the s	0711110 HIMO0200	Tuner base A	(U. S. A. only)
Clutch center holder	07 IMP - MNI50201	Clutch contor holds	
Sidton center floider	07JMB-MN50301	Clutch center holder	07HGB-001000A
			(U. S. A. only)
	07LMJ-001000A	Vacuum gauge set	M937B-021-XXXXX
√acuum gauge set		(500 SEC)	(U. S. A. only)
Vacuum gauge set	A937X-041 - XXXXX	Vacuum pump	
	A937X-041 - XXXXX	Vacuum pump	ST-AH-260-MC7
	A937X-041 - XXXXX	Vacuum pump Pressure pump	

LUBRICATION & SEAL POINTS (VT1100C)

LOCATION	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Right—left crankcase mating surfaces	Liquid sealant	
Cylinder head – head cover mating surfaces	the state of the s	Do not apply around the hydraulic tappet holes.
Camshaft plug seating surfaces	Described on	t vetos ejeje pristak kiji o jedinako
Ignition pulse generator wire grommet seating surface		apsort to date the meal
Alternator wire grommet seating surface	After Contamination Contamination	TOTAL THE BEAUTIEST OF THE PARTY
Oil pressure switch threads	The second	Do not apply sealant to the thread
		head (page 4-3). Do not apply sealant to the senso
Thermosensor thereads		head.
Right crankcase cover bolt		Only two bolts (page 10-12).
Left crankcase cover bolt		Only one bolt (page 16-10).
Clutch outer sliding surface	Molybdenum oil solu-	(page 10 10)
Clutch outer guide outer surface	tion (a mixture of 1/2	
Rocker arm shaft sliding surfaces	engine oil and 1/2	
Rocker arm slipper surfaces	molybdenum disul-	
Spark plug sleeve threads and O-ring grooves	fide grease)	
Camshaft journals and lobes		
Valve stem (valve guide sliding surface)		The second particular plant in the
Piston pin outer surface		
Piston pin hole		
Connecting rod small end inner surfaces		
Connecting rod bearing thrust surfaces		
Crankshaft main journal bearing thrust surfaces		
Transmission gearshift fork grooves		
Transmission gear spline bushing outer surfaces		
Transmission gear bushing inner and outer surfaces		
Transmission gearshift fork sliding surfaces		
Output gear bushing inner and outer surfaces		
Starter reduction gear shaft outer surface		
Other gear engaging portions and rotating surfaces	Multi-purpose grease	
Timing hole cap threads	Multi-pui pose grease	
Oil seal lips Oil filter cartridge threads and O-ring	Engine oil	
Clutch center lock nut threads	Linginie on	
Clutch disc sliding surfaces		
Piston and piston ring outer surfaces		
Connecting rod bolt/nut threads and seating surfaces		
Output drive gear shaft bearing holder bolt threads		
Output driven gear shaft bearing holder bolt threads		
Output drive gear shaft bearing inner/outer lock nut threads		
Output driven gear shaft bearing inner/outer lock nut threads		
Flywheel bolt threads and seating surfaces		
Primary drive gear bolt threads and seating surface		
Bearings		
O-rings		
Other sliding and rotating surfaces		
Air cleaner connecting tube - housing mating portion	Honda bond A or	
맞았다. 이 경우 마음 내가 있다면 하는 사람들이 아니라 하나 나를 보는 아니라 없다면 하는데 그리다.	equivalent	

- ENGINE (VT1100C) [cont'd]	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Oil filter boss threads (crankcase side only) Oil pump driven sprocket bolt threads Cam sprocket bolt threads Clutch lifter arm holder mounting bolt threads Mainshaft and countershaft bearing setting plate bolt threads Gearshift drum setting plate screw and bolt threads Gearshift cam bolt threads Output drive gear shaft bolt (R. crankcase) threads Alternator stator bolt threads Starter clutch outer bolt threads	Locking agent	Coating width: 6.5 mm (0.26 in) Only one bolt (page 10-9).

FRAME (VT1100C) ———————————————————————————————————	MATERIAL	REMARKS
EGOATION	WATERIAL	NEWANKS
Final gear case — case cover mating surfaces	Liquid sealant	Do not apply around the dowe holes.
Final driven flange spline, O-ring and O-ring groove Final driven flange—final gear case O-ring guide joint portion Rear wheel hub—final driven flange mating surface, wheel hub O-ring and O-ring groove Final driven flange drive pins	Molybdenum disul- fide paste	Apply 5 g. Apply 1-2 g. Apply 3-5 g.
Final drive pinion joint spline Final drive shaft spline (universal joint) Output driven gear shaft spline (universal joint) Final drive shaft oil seal lip	Molybdenum disul- fide grease	Apply 2 g. Apply 1 g. Apply 1 g. Apply 0.5 g.
Front and rear footpeg pivot Side stand pivot Final gear case O-ring (3 places) Final gear case oil seal lips (3 places) Speedometer gear and pinion Front wheel dust seal lips Throttle grip pipe flange cable groove Clutch lever pivot Steering head bearing Steering head bearing dust seal lips Swingarm pivot bearing Swingarm pivot bearing dust seal lips Rear brake pedal pivot and dust seal lips Rear brake middle arm pivot Rear brake cam and anchor pin sliding surfaces Gearshift pedal pivot and dust seal lips Gearshift tie-rod ball joints	Multi-purpose grease	Fill up 3 g per each bearing.
Throttle cable Clutch cable Choke cable Speedometer cable	Cable lubricant	
Brake master piston and cup Caliper piston	DOT 4 brake fluid	
Brake lever pivot Front brake lever – piston contacting portion Caliper piston seals Caliper pin boot inside Caliper bracket pin boot inside	Silicone grease	
Rear fender 10 mm bolt threads Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt threads Sub-frame bolt threads (right front side only) Front lower engine mounting nut threads Rear lower engine mounting nut threads Steering bearing adjustment nut threads	Engine oil	
Front fork dust seal lips Front fork oil seal lips	Pro Honda Suspen- sion Fluid SS-8	

FRAME (VT1100C) [cont'd] ————————————————————————————————————	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Left handlebar grip rubber Caliper pad retainer seating surface	Honda bond A or equivalent	
Back seat nut threads Final gear case cover 10 mm bolt threads Final drive pinion gear shaft nut threads Final gear case stud bolt threads (gear case side only) Front fork socket bolt threads Front caliper pin bolt threads Front caliper bracket pin bolt threads	Locking agent	

LUBRICATION & SEAL POINTS (VT1100T)

— ENGINE (VT1100T) ———————		T
LOCATION	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Right—left crankcase mating surfaces Cylinder head—head cover mating surfaces	Liquid sealant	Do not apply around the hydraulic
0 1 6 1		tappet holes.
Camshaft plug seating surfaces		
Ignition pulse generator wire grommet seating surface		
Alternator wire grommet seating surface		_
Oil pressure switch threads Thermosensor thereads		Do not apply sealant to the thread head (page 4-3). Do not apply sealant to the sensor
		head.
Right crankcase cover bolt		Only two bolts (page 10-12).
Left crankcase cover bolt		Only one bolt (page 16-12).
Clutch outer sliding surface	Molybdenum oil solu-	Only one bolt (page 10-10).
Clutch outer guide outer surface	tion (a mixture of 1/2	
Rocker arm shaft sliding surfaces	engine oil and 1/2	
Rocker arm slipper surfaces	molybdenum disul-	
Spark plug sleeve threads and O-ring grooves	fide grease)	
Camshaft journals and lobes	nac grease/	
Valve stem (valve guide sliding surface)		
Piston pin outer surface		
Piston pin hole		
Connecting rod small end inner surfaces		
Connecting rod bearing thrust surfaces		
Crankshaft main journal bearing thrust surfaces		
Transmission gearshift fork grooves		
Transmission gear spline bushing outer surfaces		
Transmission gear bushing inner and outer surfaces		
Transmission gearshift fork sliding surfaces		
Output gear bushing inner and outer surfaces		
Starter reduction gear shaft outer surface		
Other gear engaging portions and rotating surfaces		
Timing hole cap threads	Multi-purpose grease	
Oil seal lips	1 1 3	
Oil filter cartridge threads and O-ring	Engine oil	
Clutch center lock nut threads	na esta Secretaria de la constanta de la const	
Clutch disc sliding surfaces		
Piston and piston ring outer surfaces		
Connecting rod bolt/nut threads and seating surfaces		
Output drive gear shaft bearing holder bolt threads		
Output driven gear shaft bearing holder bolt threads		
Output drive gear shaft bearing inner/outer lock nut threads		
Output driven gear shaft bearing inner/outer lock nut threads		
Flywheel bolt threads and seating surfaces		
Primary drive gear bolt threads and seating surface		
Bearings		
O-rings		
Other sliding and rotating surfaces		No.
Air cleaner connecting tube - housing mating portion	Honda bond A or equivalent	

ENGINE (VT1100T) [cont'd] ————————————————————————————————————	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Oil filter boss threads (crankcase side only) Oil pump driven sprocket bolt threads Cam sprocket bolt threads Clutch lifter arm holder mounting bolt threads Mainshaft and countershaft bearing setting plate bolt threads Gearshift drum setting plate screw and bolt threads Gearshift cam bolt threads Output drive gear shaft bolt (R. crankcase) threads Alternator stator bolt threads Starter clutch outer bolt threads	Locking agent	Coating width: 6.5 mm (0.26 in) Only one bolt (page 10-9).

FRAME (VT1100T)

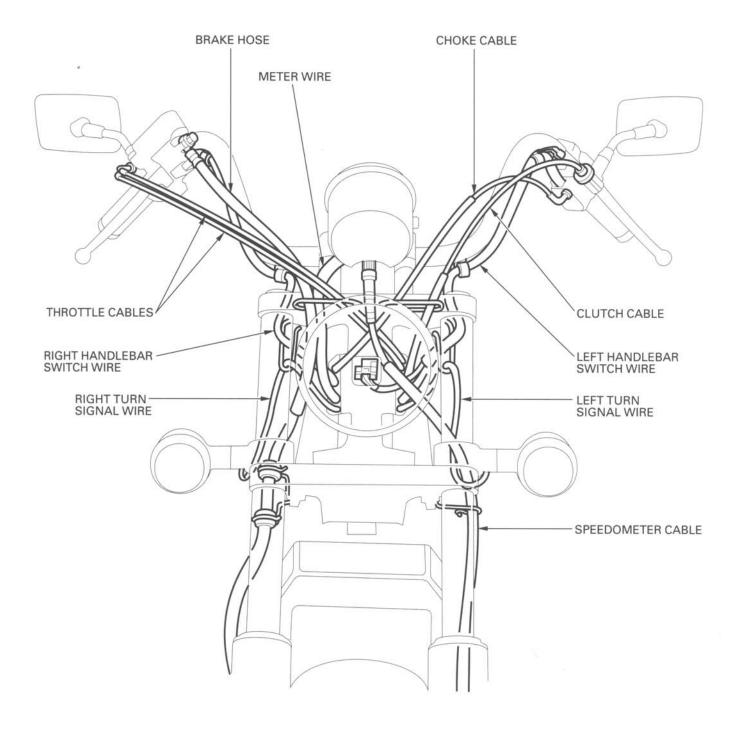
LOCATION	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Final gear case cover mating surfaces	Liquid sealant	Do not apply around the dowel holes.
Final driven flange spline, O-ring and O-ring groove Final driven flange—final gear case O-ring guide joint portion Rear wheel hub—final driven flange mating surface, wheel hub O-ring and O-ring groove	Molybdenum disul- fide paste	Apply 5 g. Apply 1-2 g. Apply 3 g to Hub End and 3 g to Driven Flange.
Final drive pinion joint spline Final drive shaft spline (universal joint) Output driven gear shaft spline (universal joint) Final drive shaft oil seal lip	Molybdenum disul- fide grease	Apply 2 g. Apply 1 g. Apply 1 g. Apply 0.5 g.
Front and rear footpeg pivot Side stand pivot Final gear case O-ring (3 places) Final gear case oil seal lips (3 places) Speedometer gear and pinion Front wheel dust seal lips Throttle grip pipe flange cable groove Clutch lever pivot Steering head bearing Steering head bearing dust seal lips Swingarm pivot bearing Swingarm pivot bearing dust seal lips Rear brake pedal pivot and dust seal lips	Multi-purpose grease	Fill up 3 g per each bearing.
Throttle cable Clutch cable Choke cable Speedometer cable	Cable lubricant	
Brake master piston and cup Caliper piston	DOT 4 brake fluid	
Brake lever pivot Front brake lever—piston contacting portion Rear master cylinder push rod—piston contacting portion Caliper piston seals Caliper pin boot inside Caliper bracket pin boot inside	Silicone grease	
Rear fender 10 mm bolt threads Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt threads Sub-frame bolt threads (right front side only) Steering bearing adjustment nut threads	Engine oil	
Front fork dust seal lips Front fork oil seal lips	Pro Honda Suspen- sion Fluid SS-8	

GENERAL INFORMATION

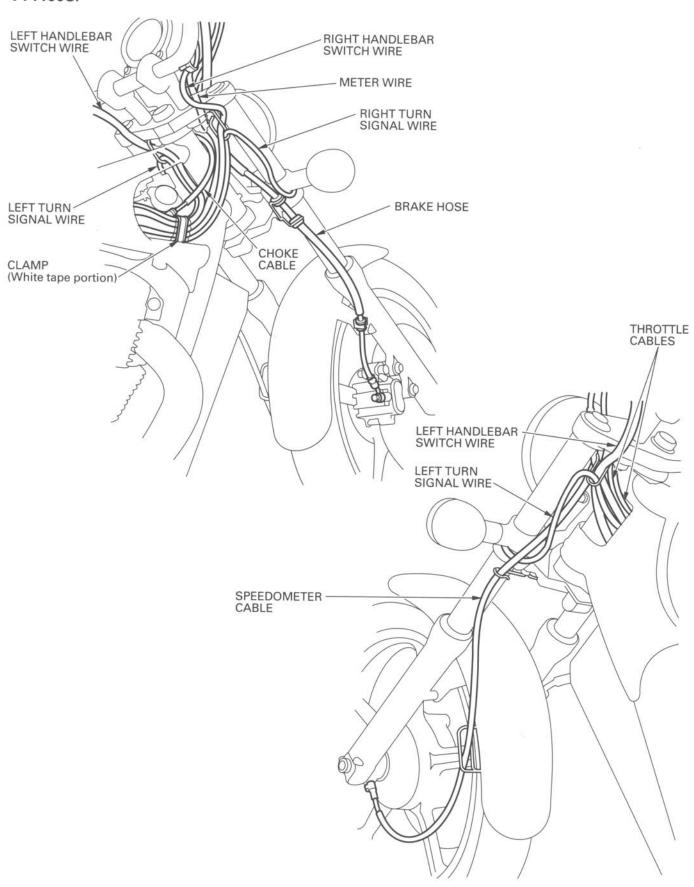
FRAME (VT1100T) [cont'd]————————————————————————————————————	MATERIAL	REMARKS
Left handlebar grip rubber Caliper pad retainer seating surface	Honda bond A or equivalent	
Final gear case cover 10 mm bolt threads Final drive pinion gear shaft nut threads Final gear case stud bolt threads (gear case side only) Front fork socket bolt threads Front caliper pin bolt threads Front caliper bracket pin bolt threads Rear master cylinder hose joint screw Rear caliper pin bolt threads	Locking agent	

1-34

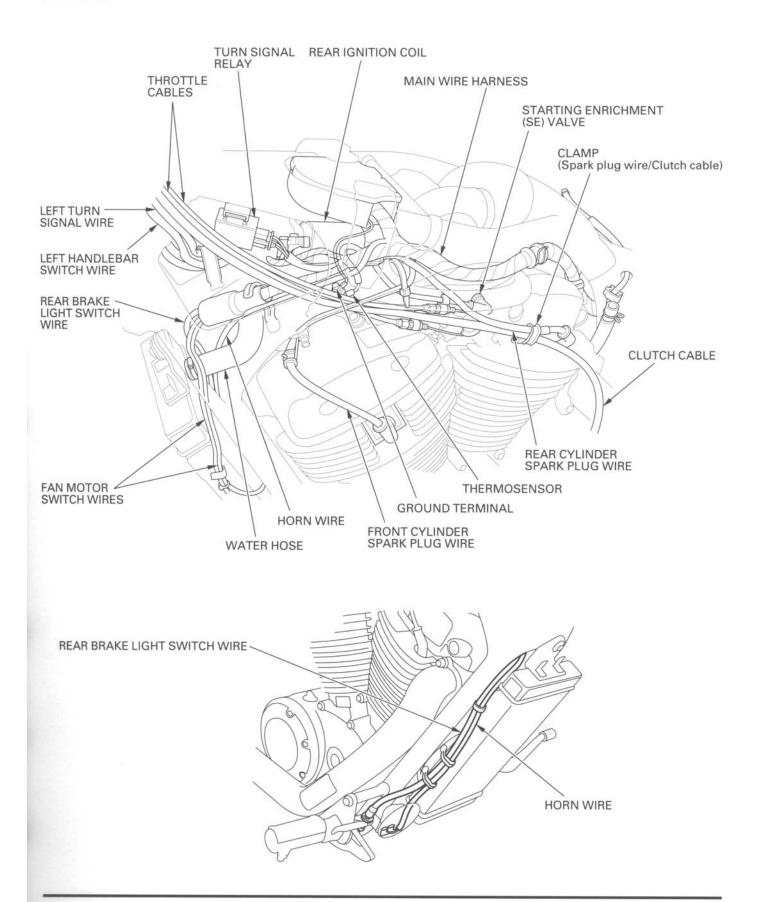
CABLE & HARNESS ROUTING (VT1100C)



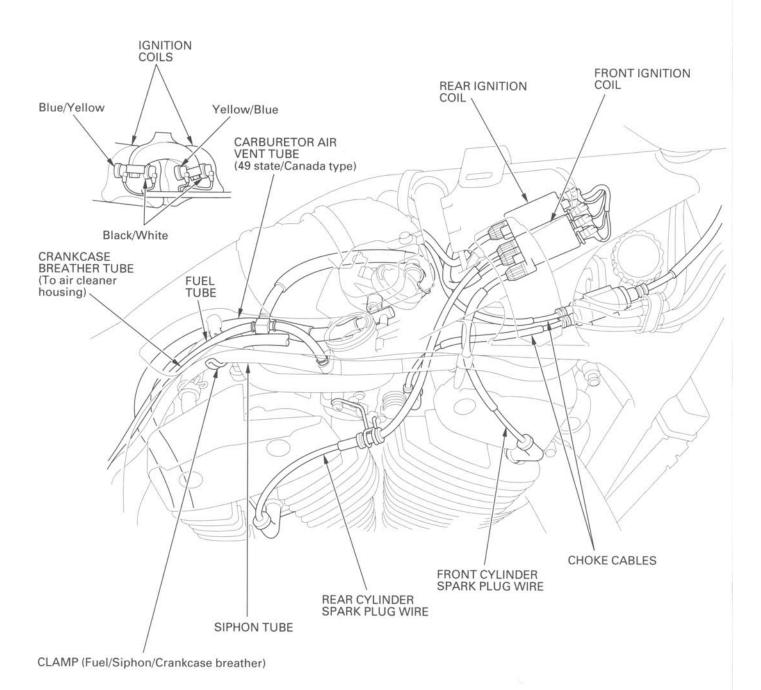
VT1100C:



VT1100C:

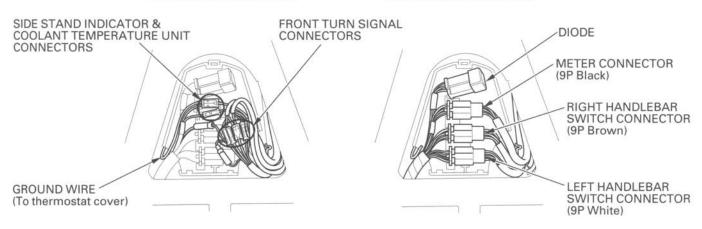


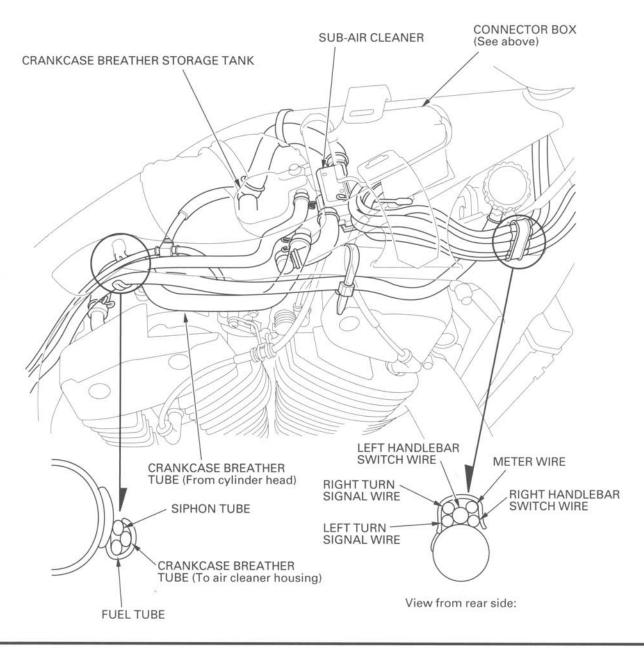
VT1100C:

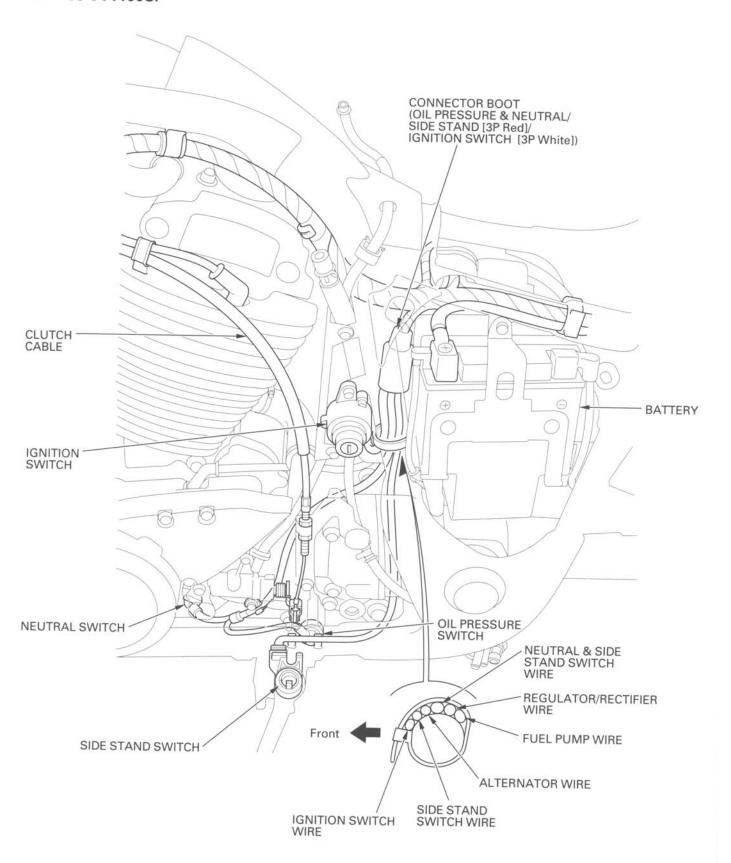


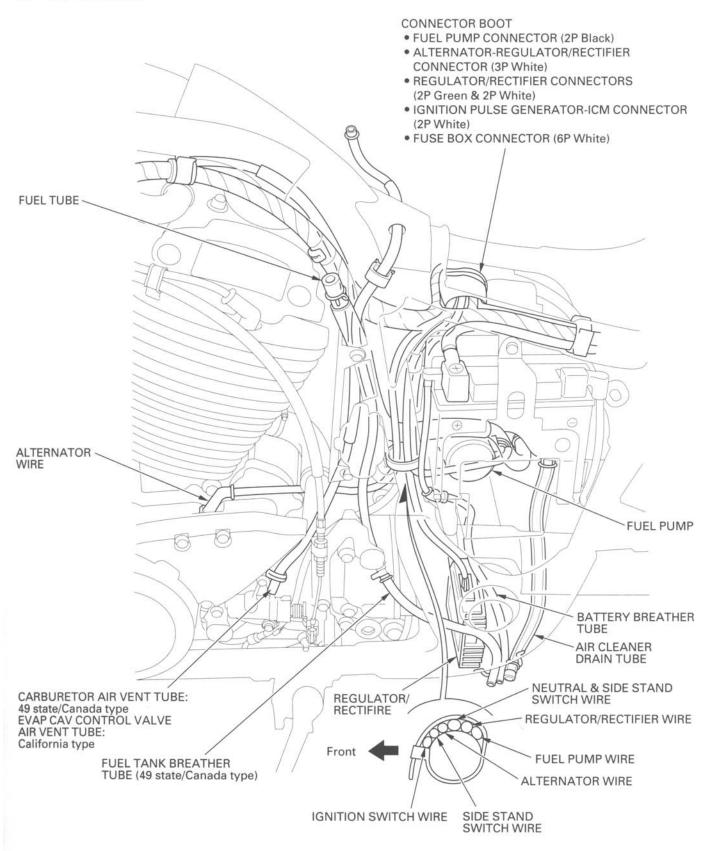
INSIDE CONNECTOR BOX:

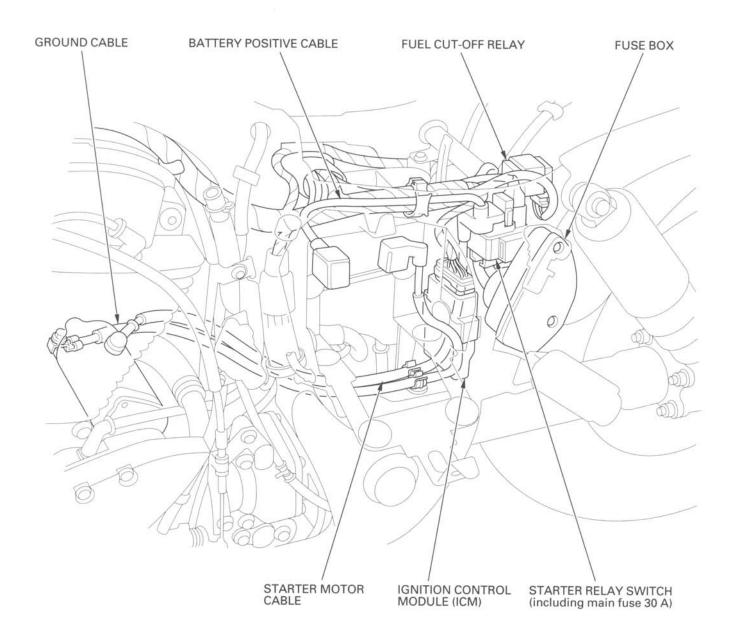
INSIDE CONNECTOR BOX:

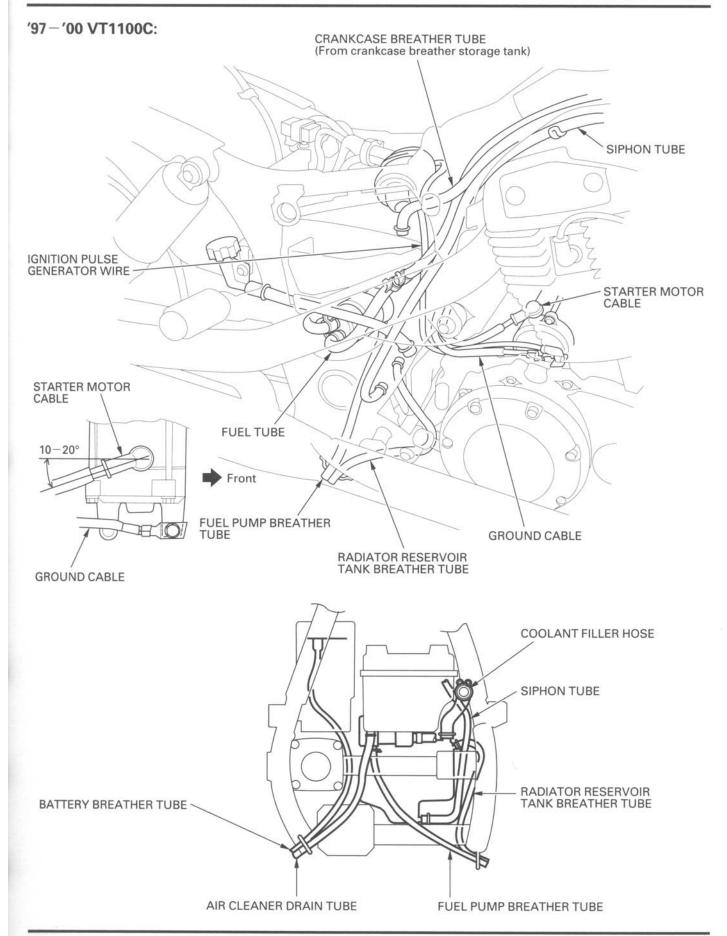


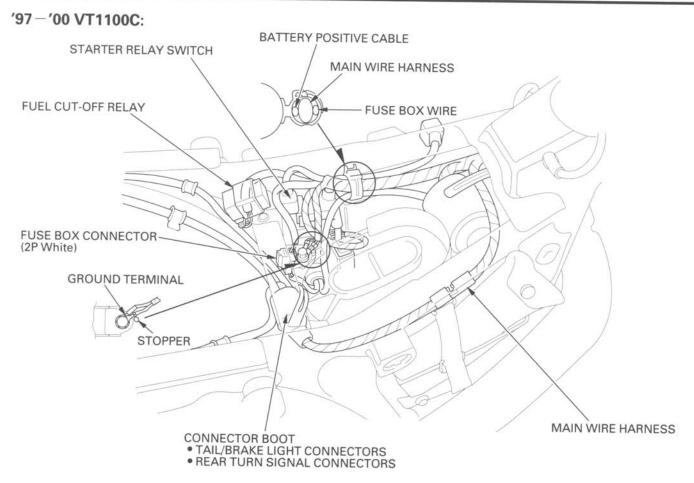


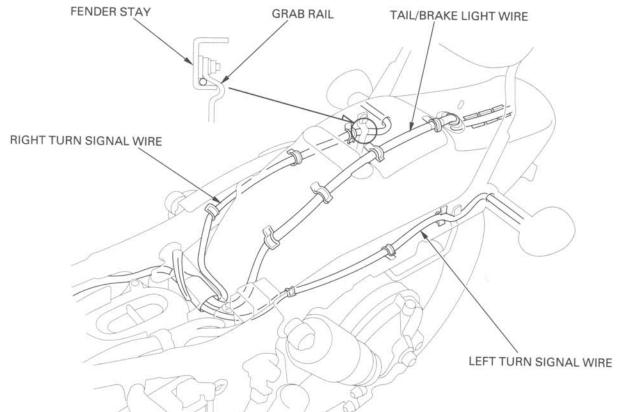


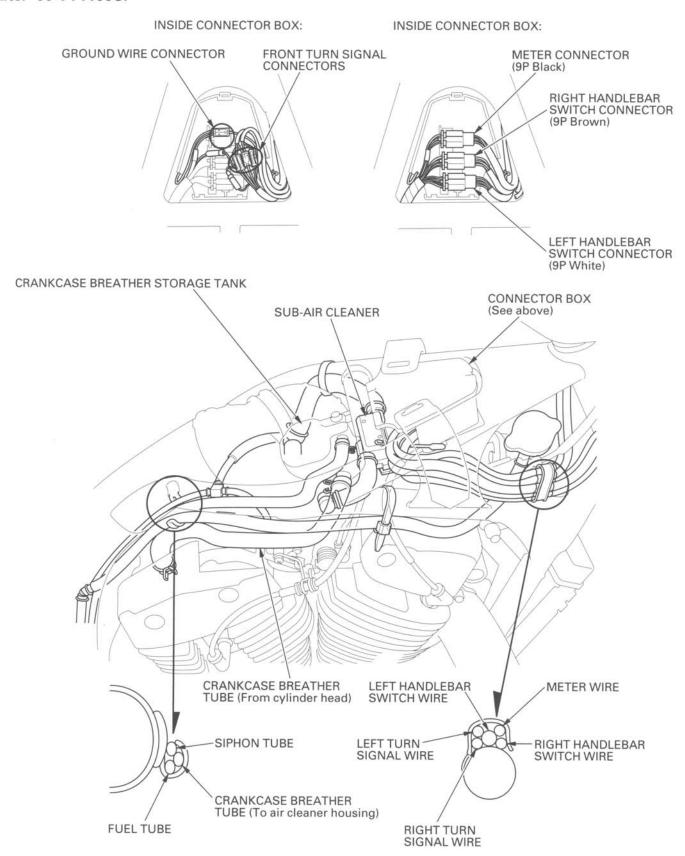


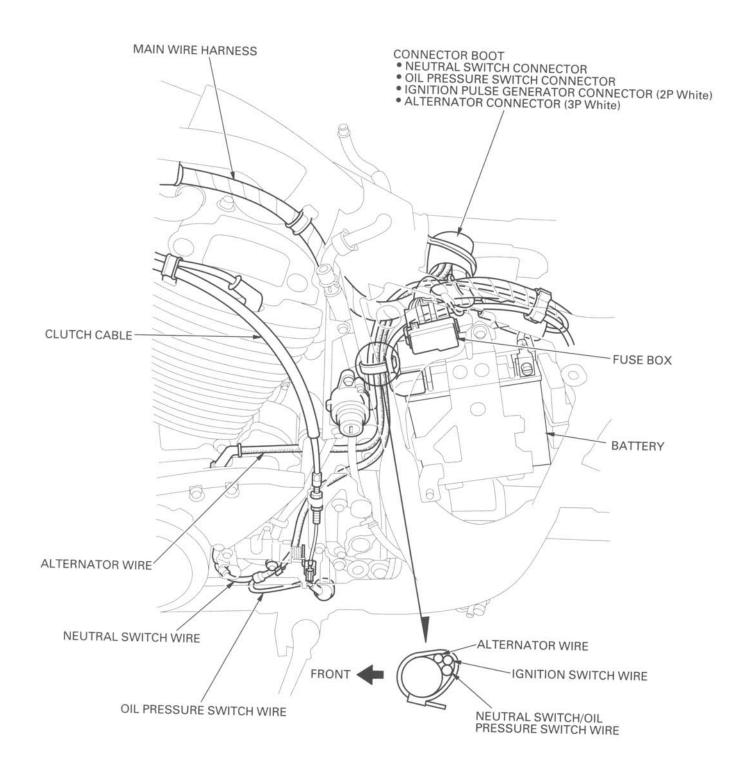


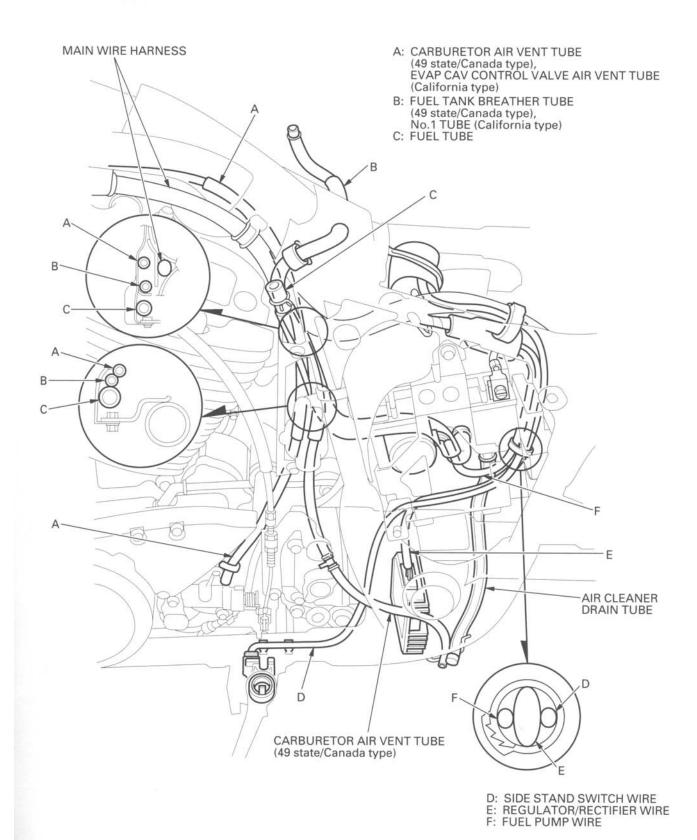


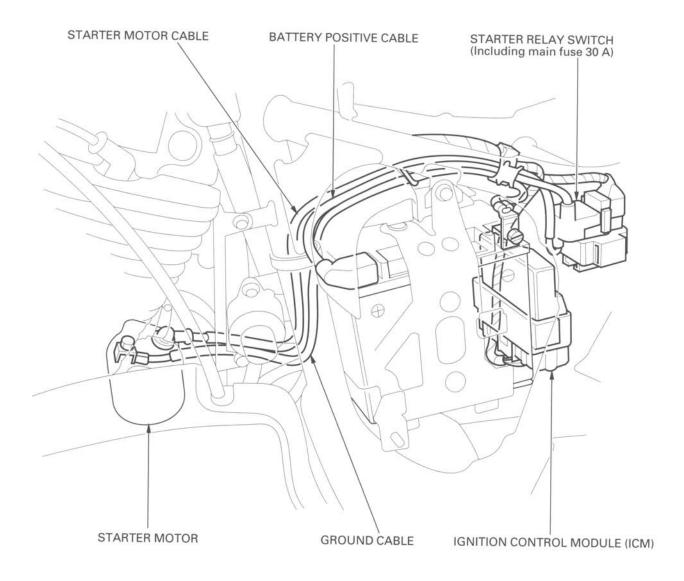


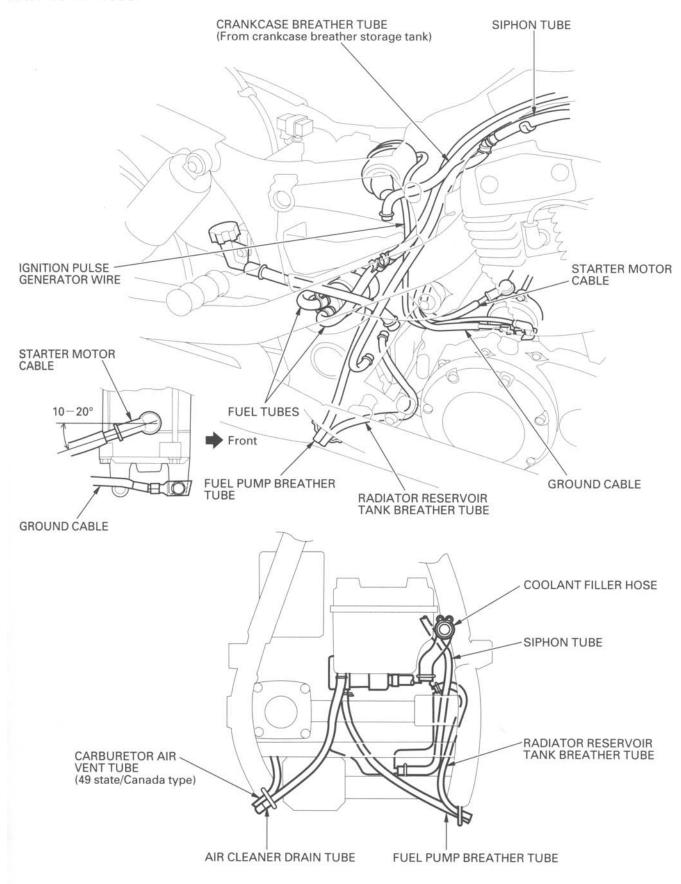


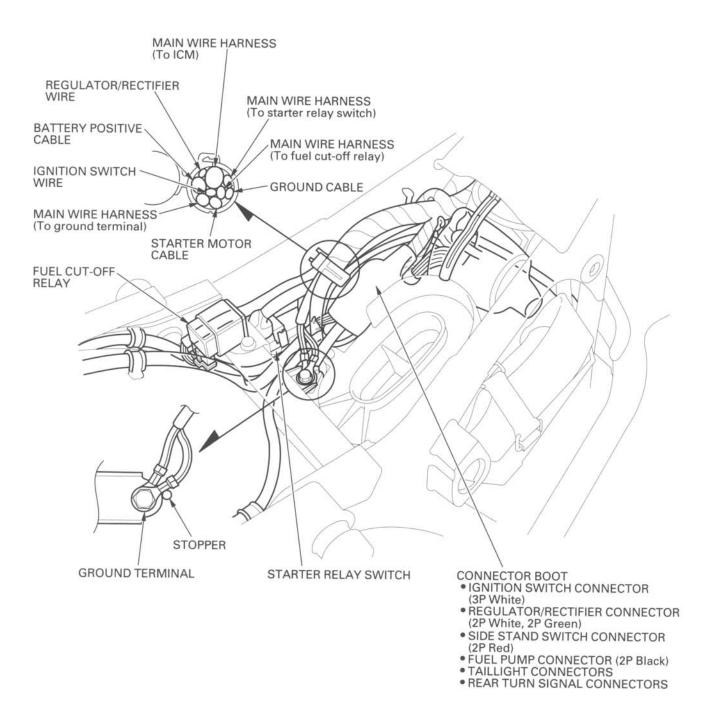


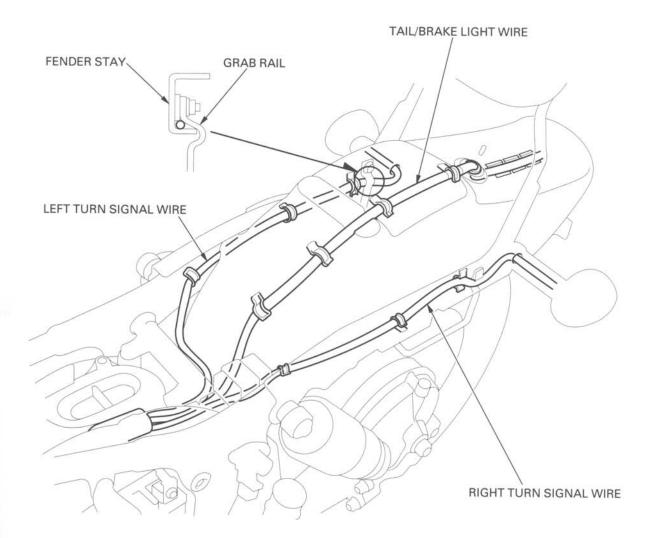


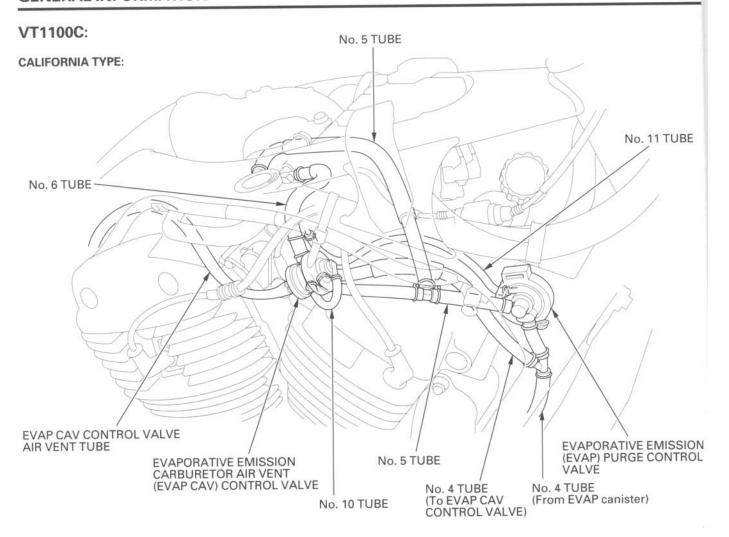




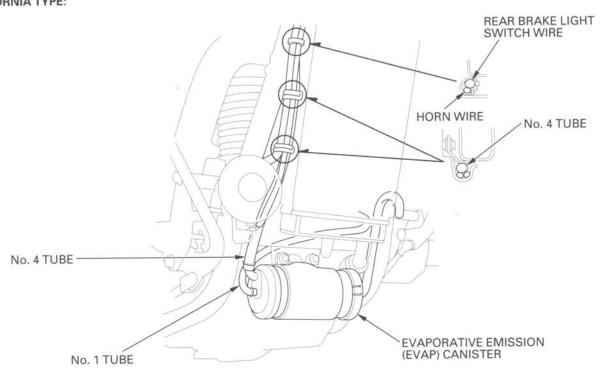


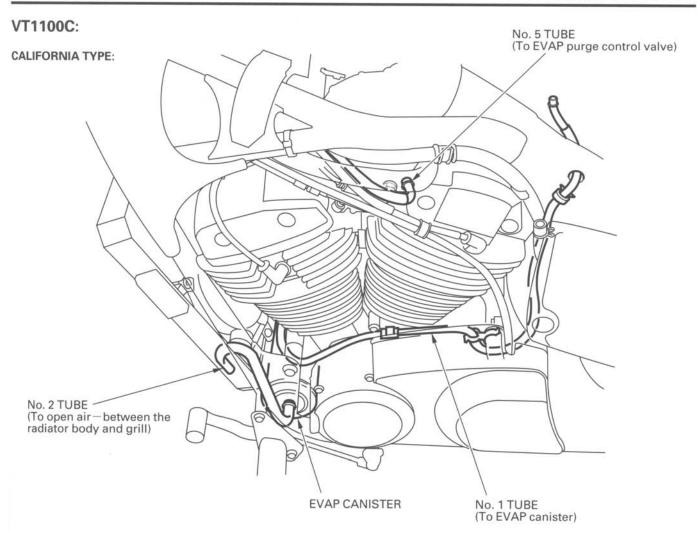




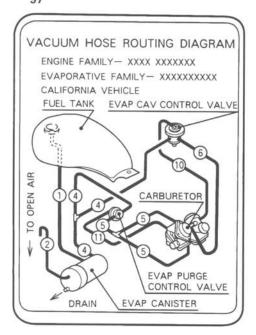


CALIFORNIA TYPE:

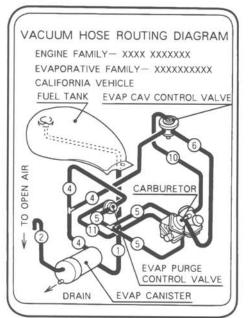




'97

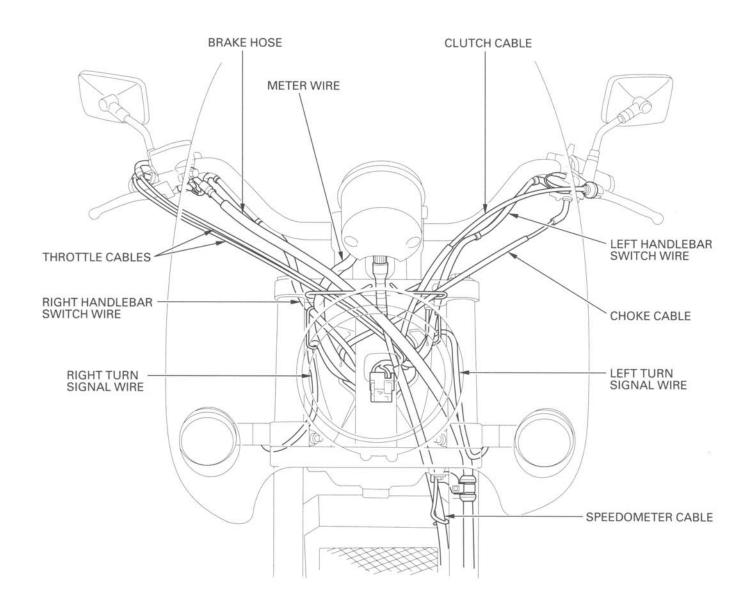


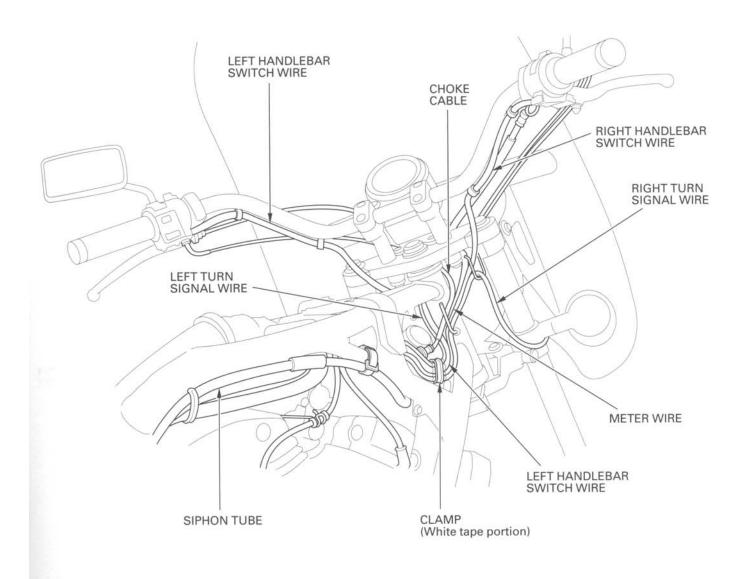
After '97

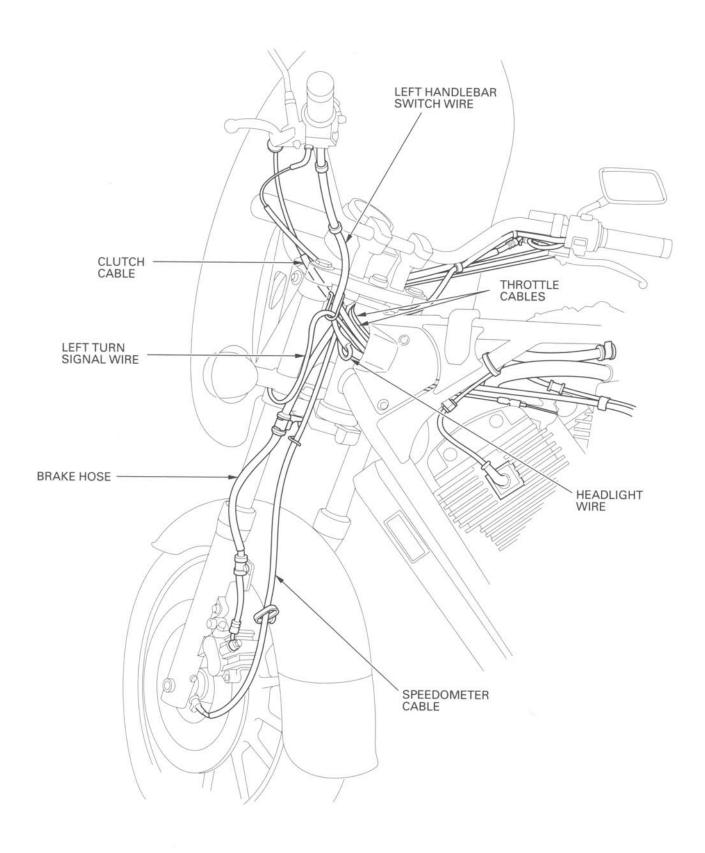


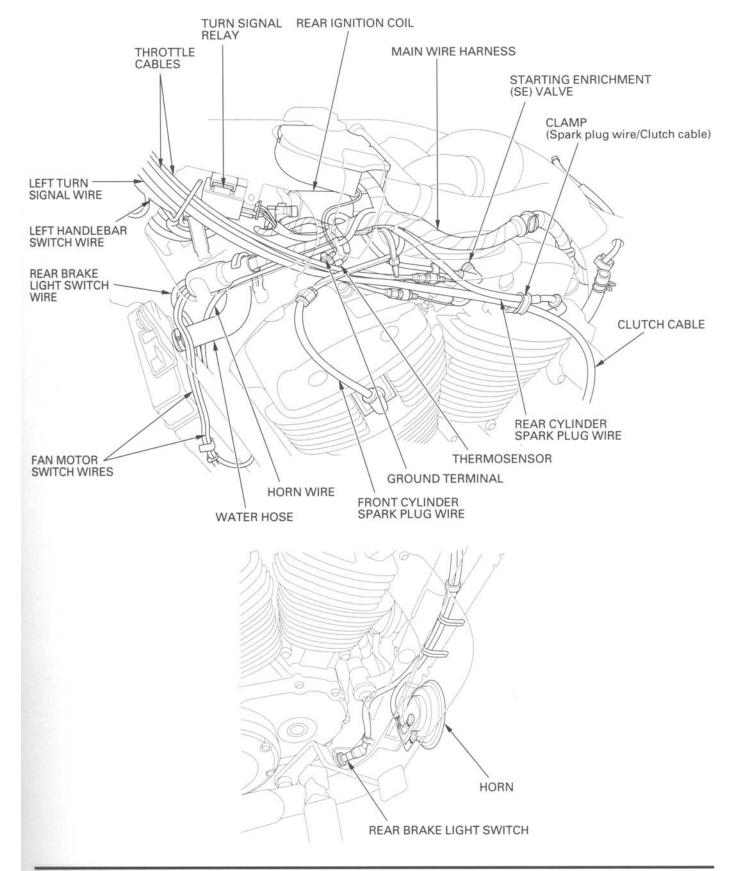
This label is located on the reverse side of the right side cover.

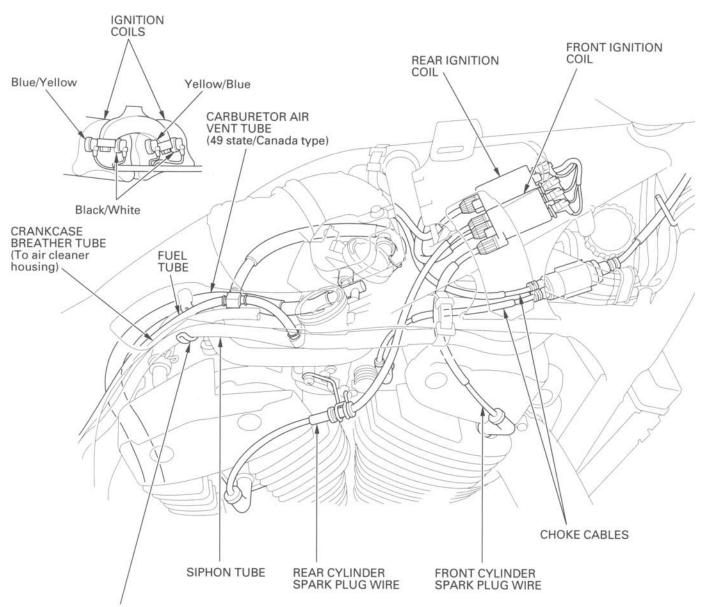
CABLE & HARNESS ROUTING (VT1100T)







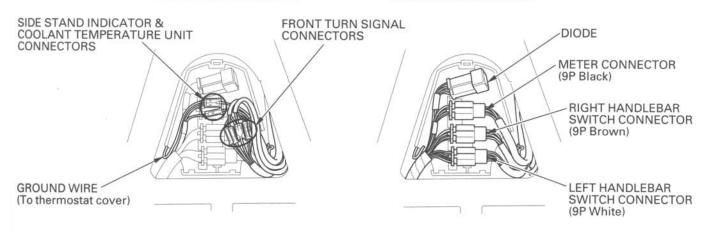


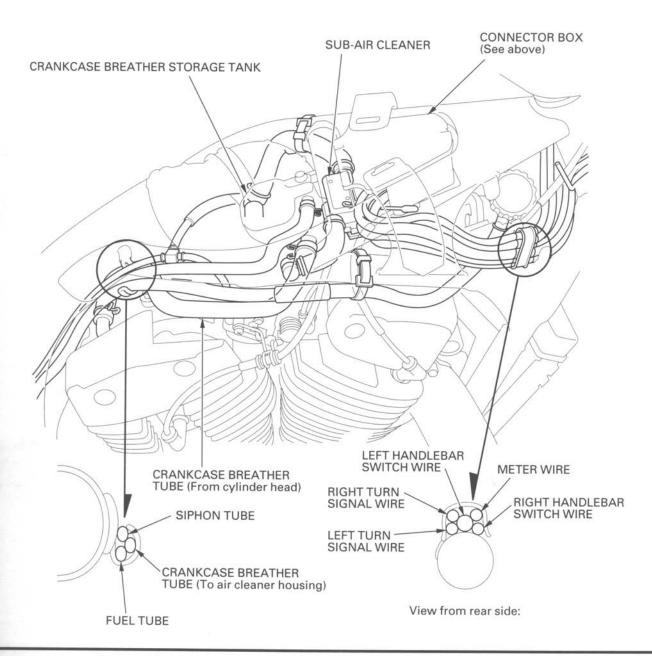


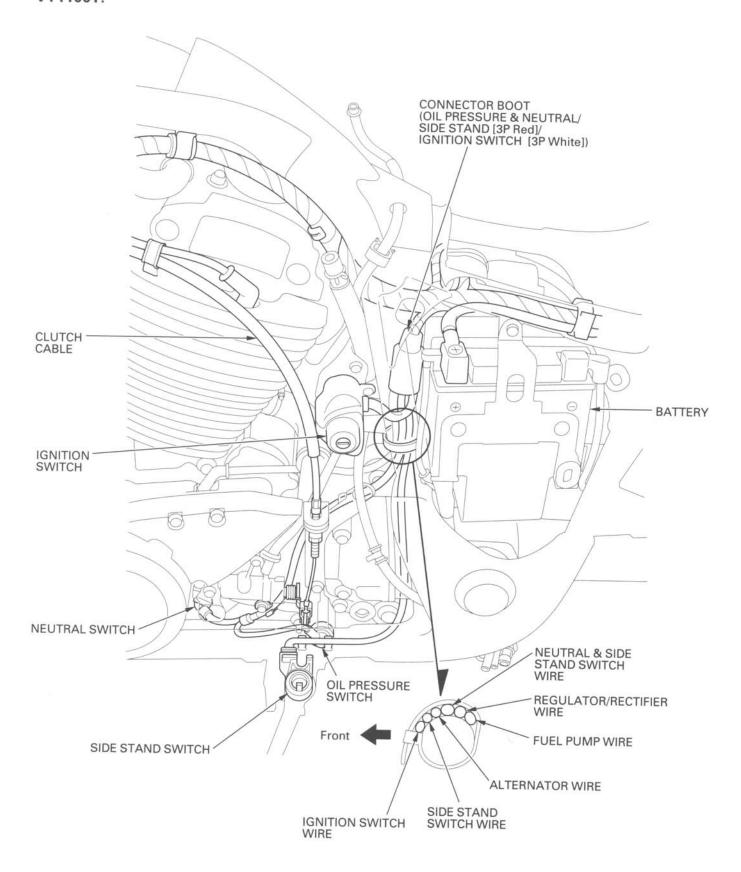
CLAMP (Fuel/Siphon/Crankcase breather)

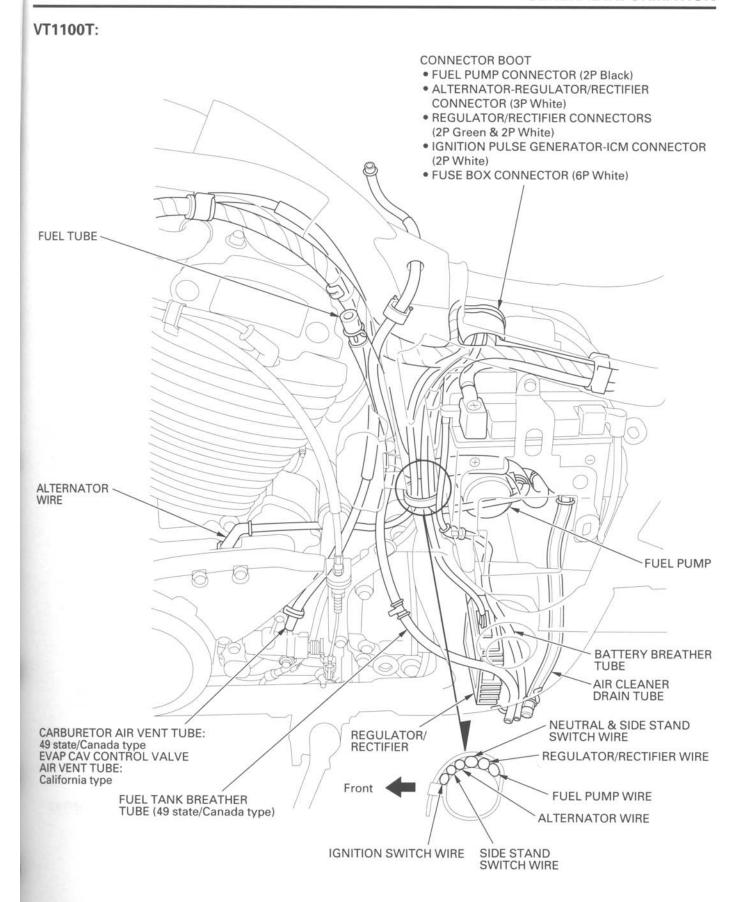
INSIDE CONNECTOR BOX:

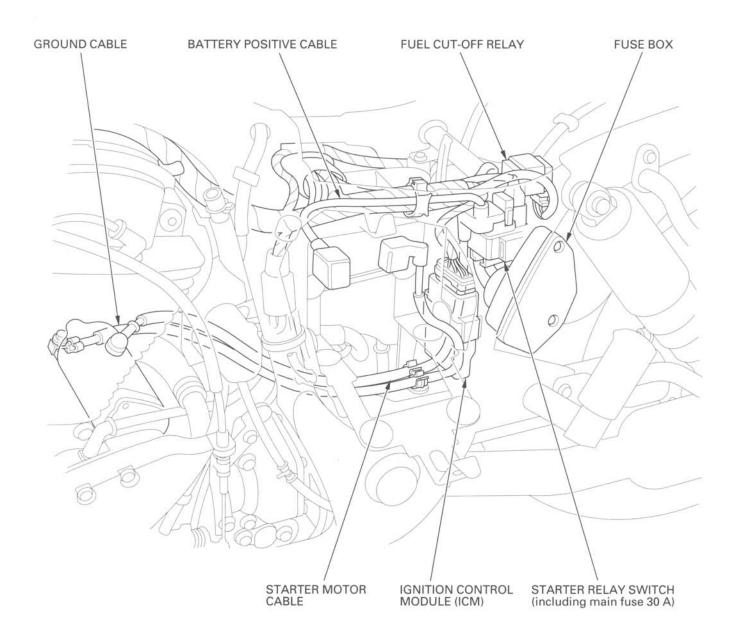
INSIDE CONNECTOR BOX:

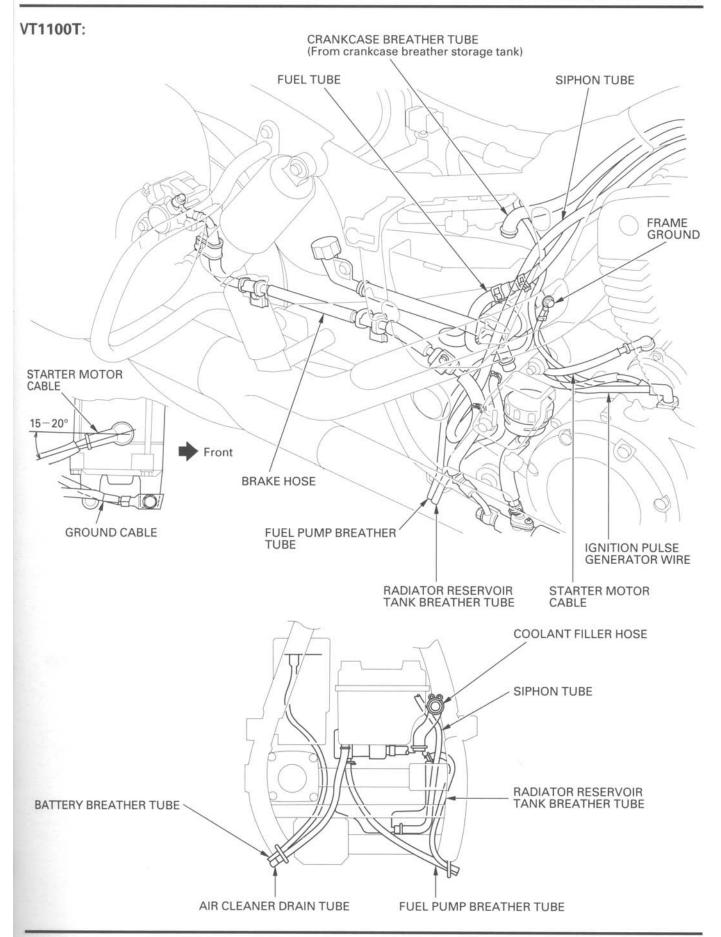


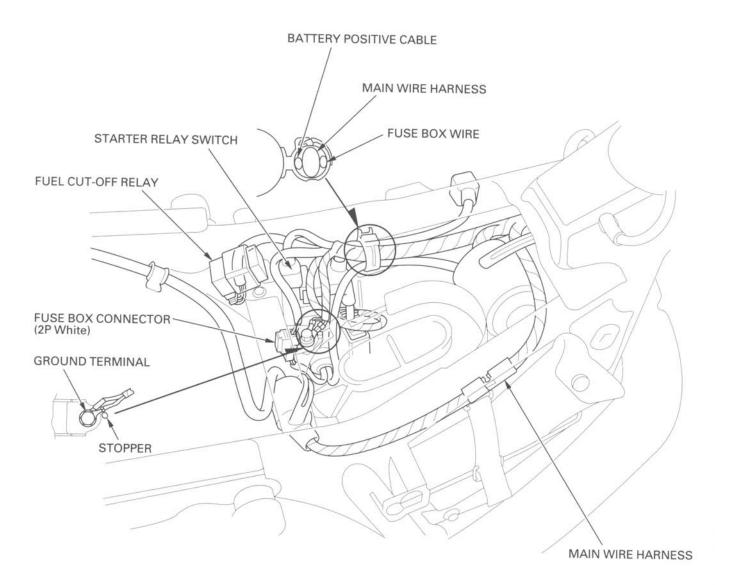


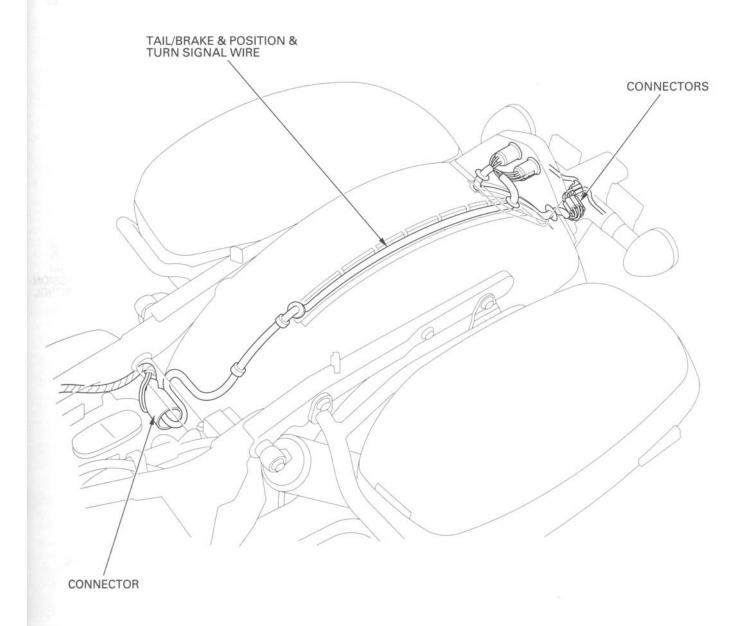


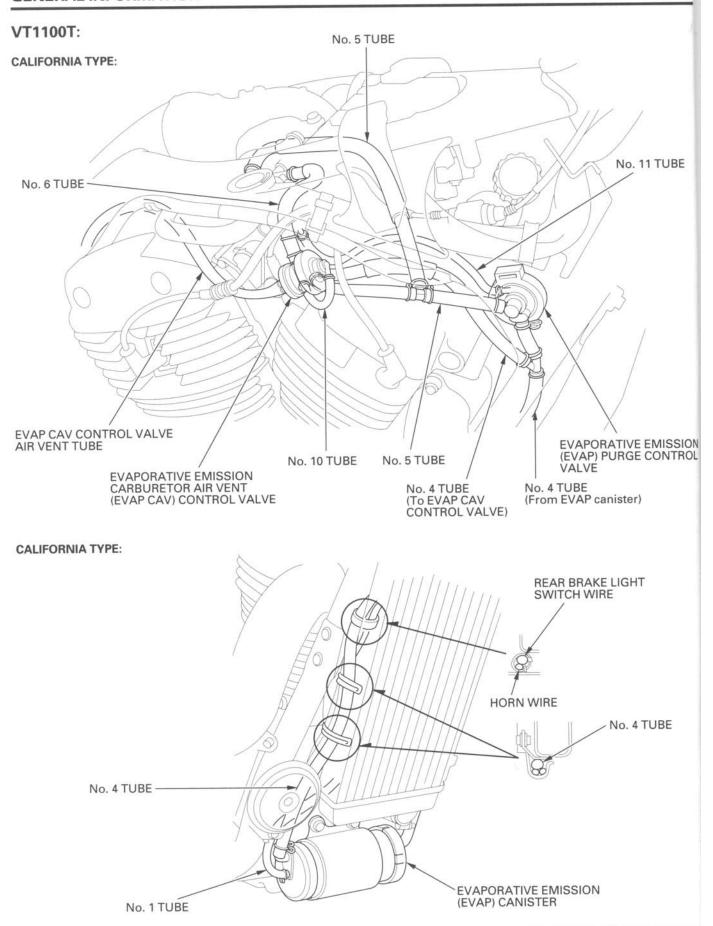












LEFT CRANKCASE REAR COVER

Remove the clip and washer (VT1100T: two clips and washers) from the front upper boss of the cover.

Remove the cover nut.

Release the bosses from the grommets and remove the left crankcase rear cover while lowering the gearshift pedal to avoid interference the pedal (VT1100T only).

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

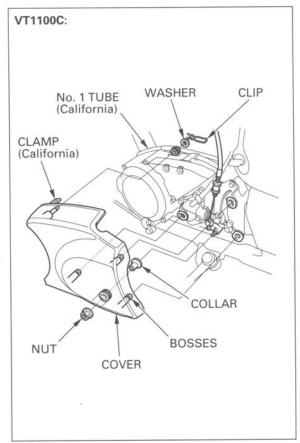
VT1100T only: When installing the cover, insert the clutch cable

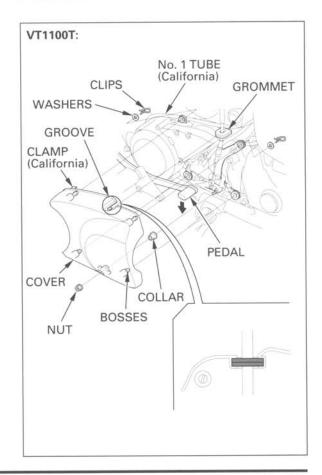
grommet into the groove in the cover.

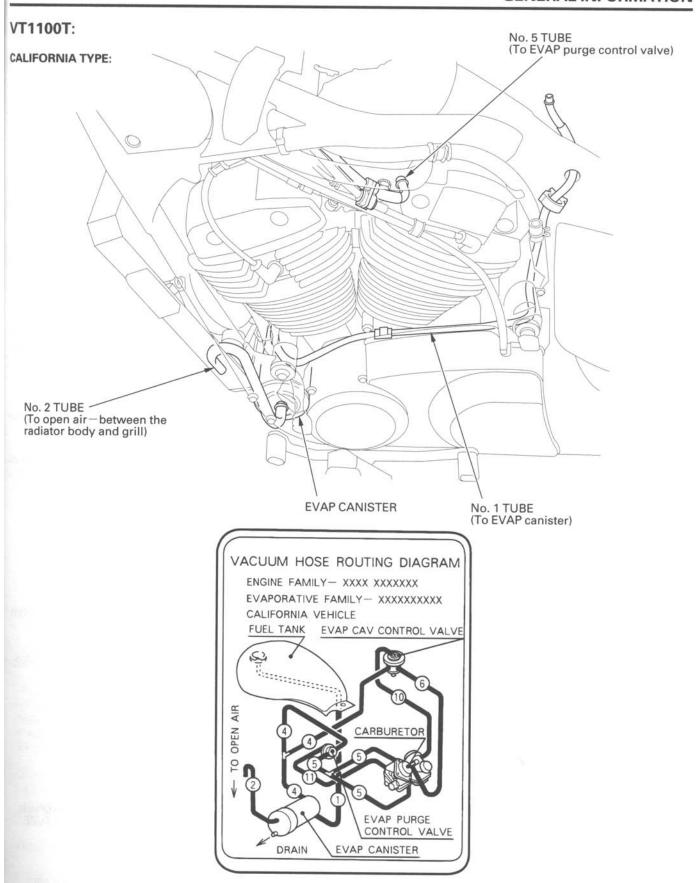
California only: Secure the No. 1 tube with the clamp after in-

stalling the cover.

TORQUE: Cover nut: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)







This label is located on the reverse side of the right side cover.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and California Air Resources Board (CARB) require manufacturers to certify that their motorcycles comply with applicable exhaust emissions standards during their useful life, when operated and maintained according to the instructions provided, and that motorcycles built after January 1, 1983 comply with applicable noise emission standards for one year or 6,000 km (3,730 miles) after the time of sale to the ultimate purchaser, when operated and maintained according to the instructions provided. Compliance with the terms of the Distributor's Limited Warranty for Honda Motorcycle Emission Control Systems is necessary in order to keep the emissions system warranty in effect.

SOURCE OF EMISSIONS

The combustion process produces carbon monoxide and hydrocarbons. Control of hydrocarbons is very important because, under certain conditions, they react to form photochemical smog when subjected to sunlight. Carbon monoxide does not react in the same way, but it is toxic.

Honda Motor Co., Ltd. utilizes lean carburetor settings as well as other systems, to reduce carbon monoxide and hydrocarbons.

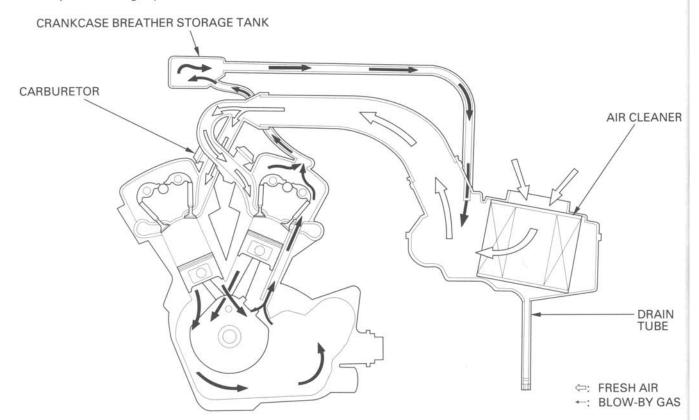
EXHAUST EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The exhaust emission control system is composed of a lean carburetor setting, and no adjustments should be made except idle speed adjustment with the throttle stop screw. The exhaust emission control system is separate from the crankcase emission control system.

CRANKCASE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The engine is equipped with a closed crankcase system which routes crankcase emissions through the air cleaner into the combustion chamber.

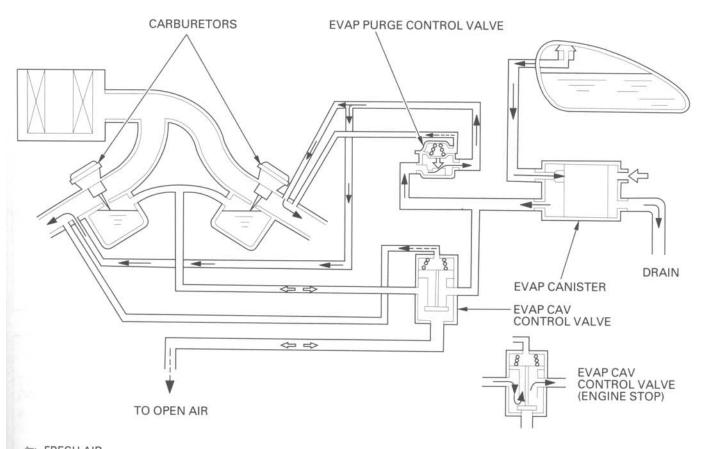
Condensed crankcase vapors are accumulated in a crankcase breather storage tank and drain tube which must be emptied periodically (page 3-3). The drain tube needs to be checked for oil accumulation more frequently if the machine has been consistently ridden at high speeds or in rain.



EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM (California type only)

This model complies with California Air Resources Board evaporative emission requirements.

Fuel vapor from the fuel tank and carburetor is directed into the evaporative emission (EVAP) canister where it is adsorbed and stored while the engine is stopped. When the engine is running and the evaporative emission (EVAP) purge control valve is open, fuel vapor in the EVAP canister is drawn into the engine through the carburetor.



: FRESH AIR

←: FUEL VAPOR

NOISE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

TAMPERING WITH THE NOISE CONTROL SYSTEM IS PROHIBITED: Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) The removal or rendering inoperative by any person, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use; or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

AMONG THOSE ACTS PRESUMED TO CONSTITUTE TAMPERING ARE THE ACTS LISTED BELOW:

- 1. Removal of, or puncturing of the muffler, baffles, header pipes or any other component which conduct exhaust gases.
- 2. Removal of, or puncturing of any part of the intake system.
- 3. Lack of proper maintenance.
- 4. Replacing any moving parts of the vehicle, or parts of the exhaust or intake system, with parts other than those specified by the manufacturer.

EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION LABELS

An Emission Control Information Label is located on the reverse side of the left side cover as shown. The left side cover must be removed to read it. It gives basic tune-up specifications.

VEHICLE EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION UPDATE LABEL

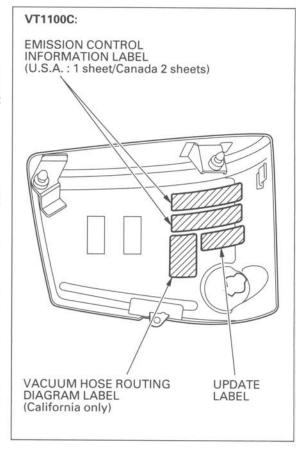
After making a high altitude carburetor adjustment, attach an update label on the reverse side of the left side cover as shown (page 5-20).

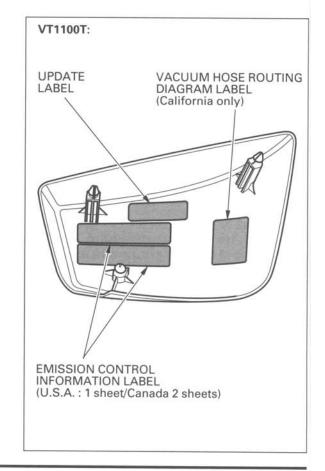
Instructions for obtaining the update label are given in Service Letter No. 132.

When readjusting the carburetors back to the low altitude specifications, be sure to remove this update label.

VACUUM HOSE ROUTING DIAGRAM LABEL (California type)

The Vacuum Hose Routing Diagram Label is on the reverse side of the left side cover as shown (page 1-53 or 1-67).





2

2. FRAME/BODY PANELS/EXHAUST SYSTEM

2-1	REAR FENDER	2-7
2-1	GRAB RAIL	2-8
2-2	EXHAUST SYSTEM (VT1100C)	2-9
2-3	EXHAUST SYSTEM (VT1100T)	2-11
2-4	WINDSHIELD (VT1100T only)	2-14
2-5	SADDLEBAG (VT1100T only)	2-14
2-6	LEFT CRANKCASE REAR COVER	2-15
2-6		
	2-1 2-2 2-3 2-4 2-5 2-6	2-1 GRAB RAIL 2-2 EXHAUST SYSTEM (VT1100C) 2-3 EXHAUST SYSTEM (VT1100T) 2-4 WINDSHIELD (VT1100T only) 2-5 SADDLEBAG (VT1100T only) 2-6 LEFT CRANKCASE REAR COVER

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

≜WARNING

- Gasoline is extremely flammable and is explosive under certain conditions. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.
- · Serious burns may result if the exhaust system is not allowed to cool before components are removed or serviced.
- This section covers removal and installation of the frame body panels, fuel tank and exhaust system.
- Work in a well ventilated area. Smoking or allowing flames or sparks in the working area or where gasoline is stored can cause a fire or explosion.
- Always replace the exhaust pipe gasket when removing the exhaust pipe from the engine.
- Always inspect the exhaust system for leaks after installation.

TORQUE VALUES

Back seat nut (VT1100C only)	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	Apply locking agent to the threads.								
Rear fender bolt (10 mm)	64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.								
(8 mm)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)									
Rear shock absorber upper pivot (grab rail) bolt	108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m , 80 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.								
Exhaust pipe joint nut (VT1100C)	25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m , 18 lbf·ft)									
(VT1100T)	23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m , 17 lbf·ft)									
Front muffler mounting bolt (VT1100C)	23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m , 17 lbf·ft)									
Front/rear muffler joint bolt (VT1100C only)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)									
Muffler mounting bolt (VT1100T)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)									
Muffler and exhaust pipe band bolt	20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m , 14 lbf·ft)									
Exhaust pipe cover bolt	8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m, 6.5 lbf·ft)									
Fuel tank mounting bolt (front)	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)									
(rear)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)									
Fuel valve	34 N·m (3.5 kgf·m , 25 lbf·ft)									

TROUBLESHOOTING

Excessive exhaust noise

- Broken exhaust system
- Exhaust gas leaks

Poor performance

- Deformed exhaust system
- Exhaust gas leaks
- Clogged muffler

SEAT (VT1100C)

FRONT AND REAR SEAT

CAUTION:

Be careful not to scratch the rear fender.

REMOVAL

Remove the rear seat mounting nut.

Raise the rear of the seat slightly and pull it rearward to release the hook of the seat from the bracket.

Remove the rear seat to the front side.

Remove the front seat mounting bolts. Raise the rear of the seat and remove it.

INSTALLATION

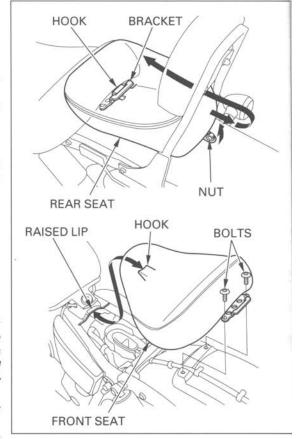
CAUTION:

The air cleaner intake port is located under the front seat. Do not remove the mounting rubbers from bottom of the seat or place foreign material (i. e. shop towel or rain wear etc.) onto the air cleaner housing cover.

If the intake port is blocked, the engine may lack power.

Install the front seat by inserting the hook of the seat under the raised lip of the frame cross member and push the seat forward. Align the bolt holes and tighten the mounting bolts.

Place the rear seat between the back seat and rear fender, being careful not to scratch the rear fender. Align the hook of the seat with the bracket hole and the bolt hole in the seat stay with the stud bolt and tighten the mounting nut.

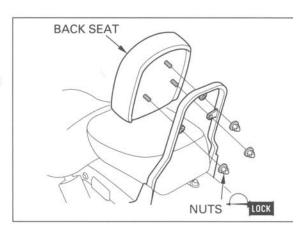


BACK SEAT

Remove the nuts and the seat.

Apply locking agent to the nut threads and install the seat in the reverse order of removal.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)



SEAT (VT1100T)

FRONT AND REAR SEAT

CAUTION:

Be careful not to scratch the rear fender.

REMOVAL

Remove the three mounting bolts and the seat.

Remove the four nuts and joint bracket and separate the front and rear seats.

INSTALLATION

CAUTION:

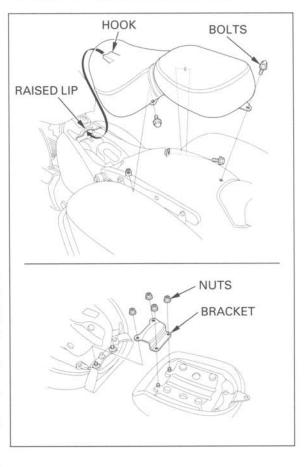
The air cleaner intake port is located under the front seat. Do not remove the mounting rubbers from bottom of the seat or place foreign material (i. e. shop towel or rain wear etc.) onto the air cleaner housing cover.

If the intake port is blocked, the engine may lack power.

Assemble the front and rear seats with the joint bracket by tightening the four nuts.

Install the seat by inserting the hook of the seat under the raised lip of the frame cross member and push the seat forward.

Align the bolt holes and tighten the mounting bolts.



SIDE COVER (VT1100C)

CAUTION:

Be careful not to break or deform the side cover bosses and tabs.

LEFT SIDE COVER

REMOVAL

'97-'00: Remove the socket bolt. After '00: Remove the cap nut.

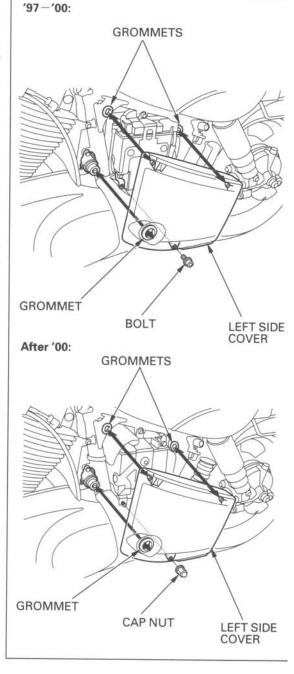
Release the side cover bosses from the grommets and remove the left side cover.

INSTALLATION

grommets.

Be careful not to Align the grommet of the cover with the ignition dislodge the switch and install the bosses into the frame

> '97-'00: Install and tighten the socket bolt. After '00: Install and tighten the cap nut.



RIGHT SIDE COVER

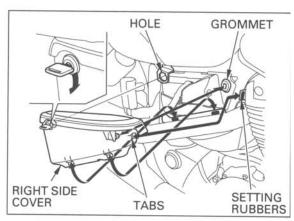
REMOVAL

Insert the ignition key into the cover lock and turn the key clockwise 90°.

Release the side cover boss from the grommet and remove the right side cover.

INSTALLATION

Be careful not to Set the three tabs of the cover on the setting dislodge the rubbers and install the boss into the grommet while grommet and aligning the key cylinder with the frame hole. Push setting rubbers. the lock portion lightly to lock up the side cover.



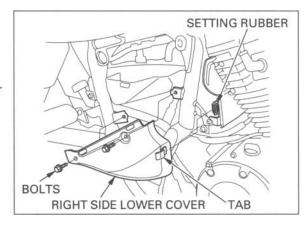
RIGHT SIDE LOWER COVER

Remove the right side cover. Remove the exhaust system (page 2-9).

Remove the two bolts and remove the lower cover by releasing the tab from the setting rubber.

Be careful not to dislodge the setting rubbers.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.



SIDE COVER (VT1100T)

CAUTION:

Be careful not to break or deform the side cover bosses.

LEFT SIDE COVER

REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

Release the three side cover bosses from the grommets and remove the left side cover.

Be careful not to dislodge the grommets in the frame.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

RIGHT SIDE COVER

REMOVAL

Insert the ignition key into the cover lock and turn the key clockwise 90°.

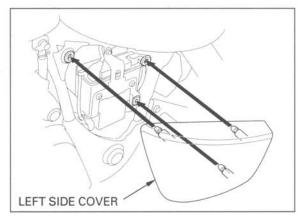
Release the two side cover bosses from the grommet and remove the right side cover.

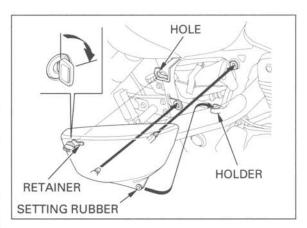
INSTALLATION

dislodge the

Be careful not to Insert the setting rubber portion of the right side cover between the frame holder as shown, align grommets in the the lock retainer with the frame hole and install the frame. bosses into the frame grommets.

> Hold the cover lock portion lightly and turn the key counterclockwise 90°.





FUEL TANK

AWARNING

Gasoline is extremely flammable and is explosive under certain conditions. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

Remove the rear and front seat (page 2-2 or 2-3).

Turn the fuel valve OFF.

Remove the 6 mm bolt and collar.

Remove the 8 mm bolt, washer and collar.

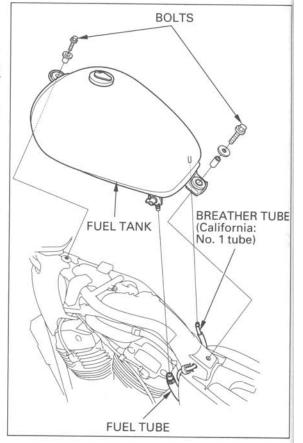
Disconnect the fuel tube and breather tube (California: No. 1 tube).

Remove the fuel tank from the frame.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

TORQUE: 8 mm: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft) 6 mm: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

After installation, turn the fuel valve ON and check the fuel line for leakage.



STEERING SIDE COVER (VT1100C)

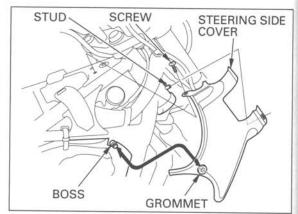
Remove the fuel tank (see above).

Remove the screw.

side cover being

If necessary, turn Release the rear side grommet of the cover from the handlebars the frame boss and remove the steering side cover away from the from the stud on the steering head.

> removed. Install the steering side cover in the reverse order of removal, being careful not to dislodge the grommets.



STEERING SIDE COVER (VT1100T)

REMOVAL

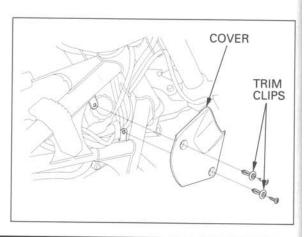
Remove the fuel tank (see above).

Remove the trim clips and the steering side cover.

INSTALLATION

the trim clips, securely. carefully align the clip holes in the frame and cover to avoid damaging the clips.

When installing Install the steering side cover with the trim clips



REAR FENDER

Remove the front and rear seats (page 2-2 or 2-3).

Disconnect the tail/brake light connectors inside the connector boot.

VT1100C only: Remove the four 8 mm bolts, washers and the back seat assembly.

Be careful not to VT1100T and '97-'00 VT1100C: Remove the two scratch the fender 10 mm bolts and place the rear fender onto the rear or deform the wheel. Remove the fuse box (2P White) connector connector stay. from the stay on the fender and remove the rear

> After '00 VT1100C: Remove the two 10 mm bolts and the rear fender.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

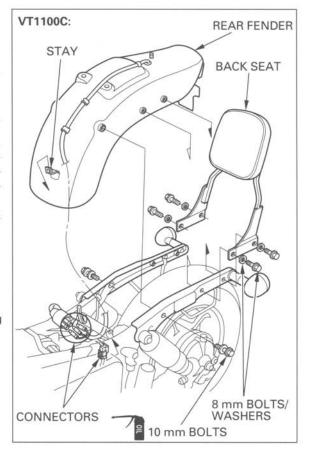
TORQUE:

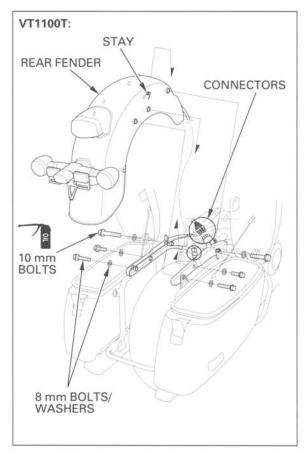
10 mm bolt: 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)

Apply oil to the threads and seating

surfaces.

8 mm bolt: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)





GRAB RAIL

Remove the rear fender (see previous page). Remove the rear shock absorber (page 14-26).

VT1100C only:

Disconnect the turn signal connectors inside the connector boot and release the turn signal wire from the frame clamp.

Remove the 14 mm bolt and the grab rail.

VT1100C only:

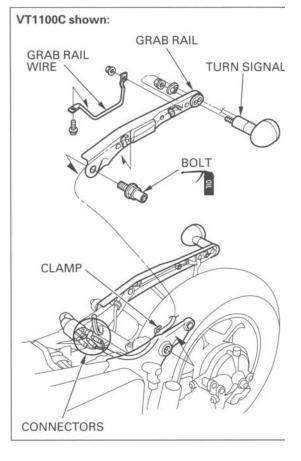
To remove the rear turn signal; Remove the bolt, nut and the grab rail wire. Release the turn signal wire from the clamps. Remove the nut, setting plate and the rear turn signal assembly.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

TORQUE:

Shock absorber upper pivot bolt (14 mm): 108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Apply oil to the threads and seating surfaces.



EXHAUST SYSTEM (VT1100C)

AWARNING

Do not service the exhaust system while it is hot.

REMOVAL

If the muffler will be separated, loosen the muffler joint bolts and muffler band bolts.

Remove the four exhaust pipe joint nuts.

Remove the two mounting bolts/nuts and the exhaust pipe/muffler as an assembly.

Remove the gaskets.

INSTALLATION

It is important to follow these steps in order.

NOTE:

If the exhaust system will not be disassembled, steps 1 and 2 are not necessary.

Refer to the illustration below:

- 1. Before mounting the exhaust system, assemble the front and rear mufflers by tightening the muffler joint bolts ② and muffler band bolt ①.
- Temporarily tighten the exhaust pipe band bolts (3)/(4).
- Make sure that the new gaskets are installed in position.
 - Insert the exhaust flange into the cylinder head studs with the flange "UP" mark facing up and loosely install the exhaust pipe joint nuts \$\(\begin{aligned}
 \)(6).
- 4. Hold the exhaust pipe/muffler assembly and loosely install the two mounting bolts and nuts ①.
 - After mounting the exhaust system, tighten each fastener in the sequence below.
- 5. Tighten the muffler band bolt ① and the muffler joint bolts ② to the specified torque.

TORQUE: Band bolt: 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m , 14 lbf·ft) **Joint bolt:** 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)

Tighten the exhaust pipe band bolts 3/4 to the specified torque.

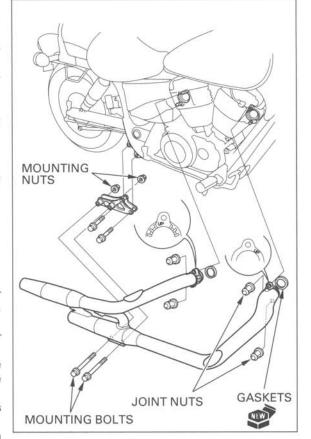
TORQUE: 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft)

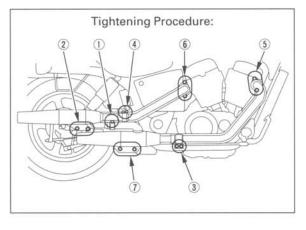
7. Tighten each pair of the exhaust pipe joint nuts (5)/(6) alternately in 2—3 steps.

TORQUE: 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 18 lbf·ft)

Tighten the mounting bolts to the specified torque.

TORQUE: 23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft)





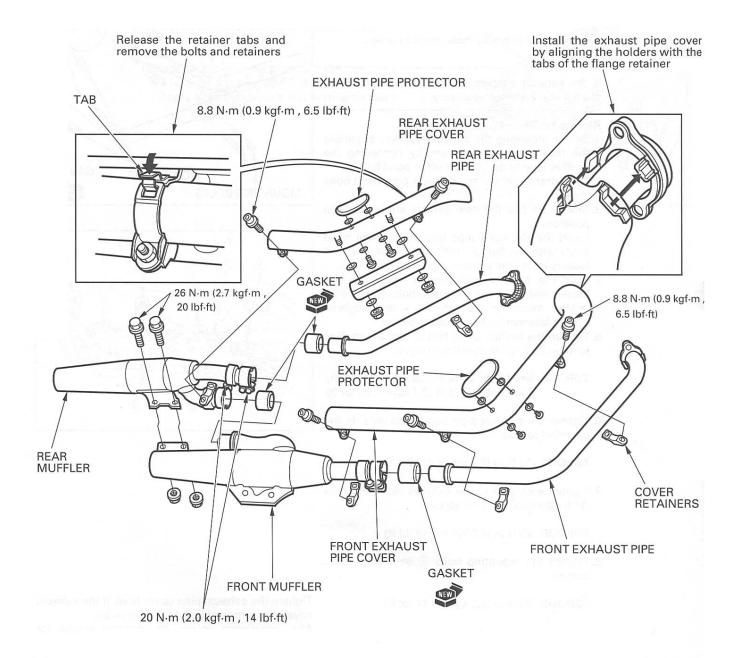
Tighten the exhaust pipe cover bolts if the exhaust cover was removed (see following page).

After installation, inspect the exhaust system for leaks.

DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

NOTE:

If the exhaust pipe covers were removed, temporarily install the exhaust pipe covers when installing the exhaust system onto the engine and tighten the cover bolts after installing the exhaust system.



EXHAUST SYSTEM (VT1100T)

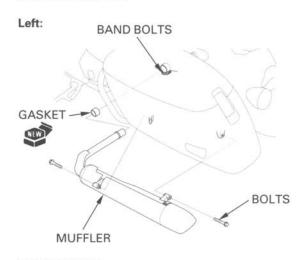
▲WARNING

Do not service the exhaust system while it is hot.

REMOVAL

MUFFLER

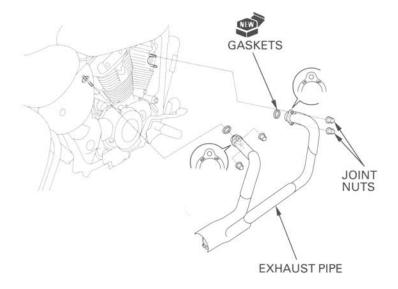
Loosen the muffler band bolts. Remove the mounting nut, washer (right muffler only) and bolts and the muffler. Remove the gasket.



BAND BOLTS HOLDERS BOLTS GASKET TABS NUT/WASHER

EXHAUST PIPE

Remove the right and left mufflers. Remove the four joint nuts and the exhaust pipe. Remove the gaskets.



INSTALLATION

EXHAUST PIPE

Install new gaskets into the exhaust ports.

Set the exhaust flanges of the exhaust pipes to the cylinder head studs with the "UP" mark facing up (Front: FR UP/Rear: RR UP) and temporarily tighten the joint nuts $\boxed{1}/\boxed{2}$.

MUFFLER

While holding the exhaust pipe, install the mufflers into the exhaust pipe with new gaskets (for the right muffler, align the tabs with the holders on the exhaust pipe cover) and temporarily tighten each muffler mounting bolts (5)/(6) and nut (3) with the washers.

- After mounting the exhaust system, tighten each fastener in the sequence below.
- 1. Tighten each pair of the joint nuts ①/② alternately in several steps.

TORQUE: 23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft)

2. Tighten the muffler band bolts 3/4.

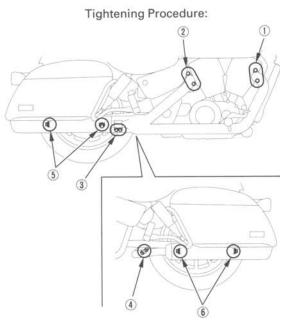
TORQUE: 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m , 14 lbf·ft)

3. Tighten each mounting bolt 5/6.

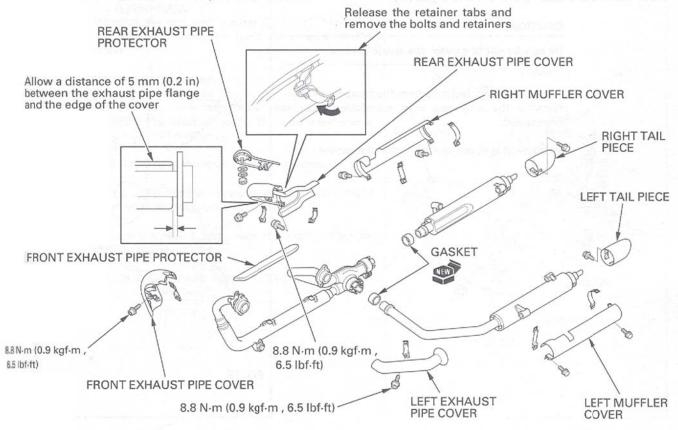
TORQUE: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

Tighten the exhaust pipe cover bolts if the exhaust cover was removed (see following page).

After installation, inspect the exhaust system for leaks.



DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY



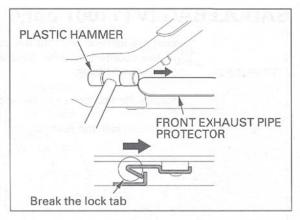
NOTE:

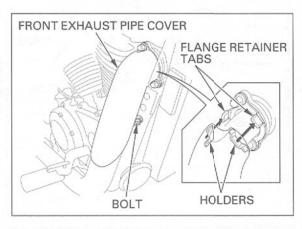
- The front exhaust pipe cover and front exhaust pipe protector can be removed without removing the exhaust system from the engine.
- If the rear exhaust pipe cover was removed, temporarily install the exhaust pipe cover and cover band bolts when installing the exhaust system onto the engine and tighten the cover bolts after installing the exhaust system.

At front exhaust pipe protector removal: Drive the rear end of the protector using the plastic hammer and break the lock tab (reverse side of the protector) and remove it.

Do not reuse the removed protector.

At front exhaust cover installation: After installing the exhaust system onto the engine, install the protector cover by aligning the holders with the tabs of the flange retainer. Then tighten the cover band bolt to the specified torque.





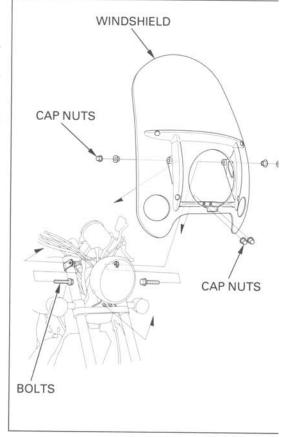
WINDSHIELD (VT1100T only)

CAUTION:

Be careful not to scratch the shield surface.

Remove the two cap nuts from the front side. Remove the two cap nuts and bolts and the windshield.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

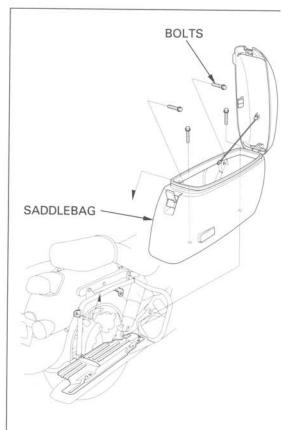


SADDLEBAG (VT1100T only)

Insert the ignition key into the cover lock and turn the key counterclockwise to release the lock and open the saddlebag.

Remove the four bolts and the saddlebag.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.



LEFT CRANKCASE REAR COVER

Remove the clip and washer (VT1100T: two clips and washers) from the front upper boss of the cover.

Remove the cover nut.

Release the bosses from the grommets and remove the left crankcase rear cover while lowering the gearshift pedal to avoid interference the pedal (VT1100T only).

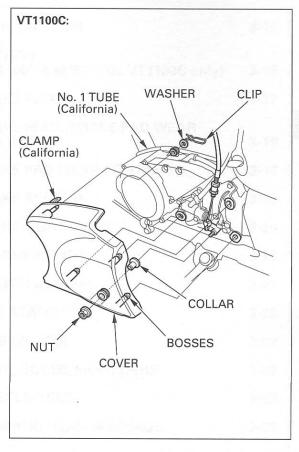
Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

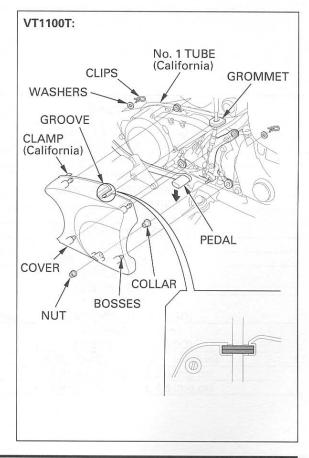
VT1100T only: When installing the cover, insert the clutch cable grommet into the groove in the cover.

fornic only: Coours the No. 1 to be with the last

California only: Secure the No. 1 tube with the clamp after installing the cover.

TORQUE: Cover nut: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)





3. MAINTENANCE

SERVICE INFORMATION	3-1	FINAL DRIVE OIL	3-15
MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE	3-3	BATTERY (VT1100T and '97 – '00 VT1100C only)	3-16
FUEL LINE	3-5	5 950	
THROTTLE OPERATION	3-5	BRAKE FLUID	3-17
CARBURETOR CHOKE	3-7	BRAKE SHOE/BRAKE PAD WEAR (VT1100C)	3-18
AIR CLEANER	3-8	BRAKE PAD WEAR (VT1100T)	3-18
CRANKCASE BREATHER	3-8	BRAKE SYSTEM	3-19
SPARK PLUG	3-8	BRAKE LIGHT SWITCH	3-20
ENGINE OIL	3-10	HEADLIGHT AIM	3-20
ENGINE OIL FILTER	3-11	CLUTCH SYSTEM	3-21
CARBURETOR SYNCHRONIZATION	3-12	SIDE STAND	3-22
ENGINE IDLE SPEED	3-13	SUSPENSION	3-22
RADIATOR COOLANT	3-13	NUTS, BOLTS, FASTENERS	3-23
COOLING SYSTEM	3-14	WHEELS/TIRES	3-23
EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM (California type only)	3-14	STEERING HEAD BEARINGS	3-23

SERVICE INFORMATION

SPECIFICATIONS

)	ITEM	SPECIFICATIONS					
Engine oil capacity	at draining	2.9 g (3.1 US qt, 2.6 Imp qt)					
	at disassembly	3.8 l (4.0 US qt, 3.3 Imp qt)					
	at oil filter change	3.1 & (3.3 US qt, 2.7 Imp qt)					
Carburetor vacuum difference		Within 40 mm Hg (1.6 in Hg)					
		base carburetor: No.1 (rear)					
Engine idle speed		1,000 \pm 100 rpm					
Throttle grip free play		2-6 mm (1/8-1/4 in)					
Starting enrichment (SE) va	alve distance	10.0 – 11.0 mm (0.39 – 0.43 in)					
Clutch lever free play		10-20 mm (3/8-3/4 in)					
Rear brake pedal free play		20-30 mm (3/4-1-1/4 in)					
Spark plug	Standard	DPR7EA-9 (NGK)					
		X22EPR - U9 (DENSO)					
	For cold climate/below	DPR6EA-9 (NGK)					
	5 °C/41 °F	X20EPR - U9 (DENSO)					
	For extended high speed	DPR8EA-9 (NGK)					
	riding	X24EPR-U9 (DENSO)					
Spark plug gap		0.80 - 0.90 mm (0.031 - 0.035 in)					
Final drive oil capacity	at disassembly	150 cm³ (5.1 US oz, 5.3 lmp oz)					
	at draining	130 cm ³ (4.4 US oz, 4.6 lmp oz)					

	3	ITEM		SPECIFICATIONS					
Cold tire	VT1100C	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs)	Front	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm², 33 psi)					
pressure		load	Rear	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)					
		Up to maximum	Front	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)					
		weight capacity	Rear	280 kPa (2.80 kgf/cm ² , 41 psi)					
	VT1100T	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs)	Front	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)					
		load	Rear	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)					
		Up to maximum	Front	225 kPa (2.25 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)					
		weight capacity	Rear	250 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm ² , 36 psi)					
Minimum tire tread depth		Front		1.5 mm (0.06 in) 2.0 mm (0.08 in)					
		Rear							
Tire size	VT1100C	Front		110/90 - 19 62H					
1		Rear		170/80 - 15 M/C 77H					
	VT1100T	Front		130/80R18 66H					
		Rear		170/70R16 75H					
Tire brand VT1100C		Front		F24					
(Dunlop)		Rear		K555					
VT1100T		Front		D206F					
		Rear		D206A					

TORQUE VALUES

Spark plug
Engine oil drain bolt
Engine oil filter cartridge
Final drive oil filler cap
Final drive oil drain bolt

14 N·m (1.4 kgf·m , 10 lbf·ft) 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m , 22 lbf·ft)

9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m , 7 lbf·ft) Apply oil to the threads and seating surfaces

12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft) 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)

TOOLS

Oil filter wrench Pilot screw wrench Vacuum gauge set

07HAA-PJ70100

07908 - 4730001 or equivalent commercially available in U. S. A.

07LMJ-001000A or

M937B-021-XXXXX (U. S. A. only)

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

VT1100C:

Perform the PRE-RIDE INSPECTION in the Owner's Manual at each scheduled maintenance period.

l: Inspect and Clean, Adjust, Lubricate, or Replace if necessary.

C: Clean R: Replace A: Adjust L: Lubricate

The following items require some mechanical knowledge. Certain items (particularly those marked * and **) may require more technical information and tools. Consult your authorized Honda dealer.

	\	FREQUENCY	WHICHEVER COMES	ODOMETER READING (NOTE 1)								Refer to page
	TEM		FIRST →	× 1,000 mi	0.6	4	8	12	16	20	24	
TEN			NOTE	× 100 km	10	64	128	192	256	320	384	
1	*	FUEL LINE					1	SHOP	=1	1,000	1	3-5
+	*	THROTTLE OPERATION	ture Statistics			S 4	1				1	3-5
0	*	CARBURETOR CHOKE	DESTRUCTES SELECT	14 St. 15 St		1	1	- 27	1		1	3-7
2	× =	AIR CLEANER	NOTE 2		-	SIDS.		R	93		R	3-8
=	10	CRANKCASE BREATHER	NOTE 3			С	С	С	С	С	C	3-8
ב		SPARK PLUG		155 63		1	R	-	R	1	R	3-8
4		ENGINE OIL		1804144	R		R		R		R	3-10
		ENGINE OIL FILTER			R		R		R	2.3	R	3-11
2	*	CARBURETOR SYNCHRONIZATION	No.	F REGIME	1		1		1		1	3-12
EMISSION RELATED ITEMS	*	ENGINE IDLE SPEED		1 4474	1	1	-1	1	-1	1		3-13
		RADIATOR COOLANT	NOTE 5	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		5-4	1	1.00	1		R	3-13
	*	COOLING SYSTEM	ne neates on				1	138	1			3-14
	-*-	EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL	NOTE 4					-		1	1	3-14
		SYSTEM	A STANSON							361	1.16	
		FINAL DRIVE OIL	AN ASSESSED AND			100	1		1	177	R	3-15
18	11 - 01	BATTERY	NOTE 6			1	1	1	1	1	1	3-16
ITEMS	AD D	BRAKE FLUID	NOTE 5			1	1	R	1	1	R	3-17
	50 TE	BRAKE SHOE/BRAKE PAD WEAR	TELL BUILD			1	1	1	- 1	1	1	3-18
RELATED	farte.	BRAKE SYSTEM		a late of the	1		-1	5,0	1	PE	1	3-19
A	*	BRAKE LIGHT SWITCH					1	l hel	1	2.8	1	3-20
RE	*	HEADLIGHT AIM					1		- 1	1741	1	3-20
NON-EMISSION	-	CLUTCH SYSTEM		- V-	1	1	1	1	1	-1		3-21
		SIDE STAND	i de giberra			1	1	100	1			3-22
	*	SUSPENSION	February Comment				I		1			3-22
	*	NUTS, BOLTS, FASTENERS			1		1	10	1	756	1	3-23
	**	WHEELS/TIRES					1		1		1	3-23
Z	**	STEERING HEAD BEARINGS	ark suniture water	ala adheral La	1	1100			- 1	Ji a		3-23

* Should be serviced by your authorized Honda dealer, unless the owner has proper tools and service data and is mechanically qualified.

** In the interest of safety, we recommend these items be serviced only by your Honda dealer.

NOTES: 1. At higher odometer readings, repeat at the frequency interval established here.

2. Service more frequently when riding in unusually wet or dusty areas. 3. Service more frequently when riding in rain or at full throttle.

4. California type only.

5. Replace every 2 years, or at indicated odometer interval, whichever comes first. Replacement requires mechanical skill.

6. '97-'00 only

VT1100T:

Perform the PRE-RIDE INSPECTION in the Owner's Manual at each scheduled maintenance period.

I: Inspect and Clean, Adjust, Lubricate, or Replace if necessary.

C: Clean R: Replace A: Adjust L: Lubricate

The following items require some mechanical knowledge. Certain items (particularly those marked * and **) may require more technical information and tools. Consult your authorized Honda dealer.

		FREQUENCY	WHICHEVER COMES FIRST →	COMES ODOMETER READING (NOTE 1)								
ITI	ITEM		1 III 31 1	× 1,000 mi	0.6	4	8	12	16	20	24	page
		THE LAND	NOTE	imes 100 km	10	64	128			320		
	*	FUEL LINE	18				1	1	1		1	3-5
	*	THROTTLE OPERATION				1	1	1				3-5
EMISSION RELATED ITEMS	*	CARBURETOR CHOKE					1		1	1973	i	3-7
世	0.0	AIR CLEANER	NOTE 2			-		R	10	l iti	R	3-8
$\overline{\Box}$	1	CRANKCASE BREATHER	NOTE 3			С	С	C	С	С	C	3-8
۳		SPARK PLUG				1	R	1	R	ī	R	3-8
\equiv		ENGINE OIL			R	7	R	ain.	R		R	3-10
2	100	ENGINE OIL FILTER			R		R		R		R	3-10
0	*	CARBURETOR SYNCHRONIZATION			1		1		1		1	3-11
SS	*	ENGINE IDLE SPEED			i	1	-	-				
Ĭ		RADIATOR COOLANT	NOTE 5		-		1	100	1	- 1	R	3-13
Ш	*	COOLING SYSTEM					-		1		n	3-13
	*	EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL	NOTE 4	45	-	-	10	1	-		1	3-14
	15.85	SYSTEM								-	1	3-14
0	5-65	FINAL DRIVE OIL	44 9.8185.				1			Section 1	D .	0.45
Š	Bridge.	BATTERY	P 3 - 3 - 3 - 5 - 5 - 5			-	-	-		-	R	3-15
=	ME.	BRAKE FLUID	NOTE 5	3		-	-		1		<u> </u>	3-16
-	H.S.	BRAKE PAD WEAR	NOTES			-	-	R	1 1		R	3-17
7		BRAKE SYSTEM	- / /			1	1	-1	-	- 1		3-18
	*	BRAKE LIGHT SWITCH			-1-		-	100		-171		3-19
2	*	HEADLIGHT AIM			-	100	1		!	151	1	3-20
NON-EMISSION RELATED ITEMS	1	CLUTCH SYSTEM					-				0 7 3	3-20
	100	SIDE STAND			1	1			1	1		3-21
	*	SUSPENSION						200	1	161	1	3-22
	*	NUTS, BOLTS, FASTENERS					1	1 4 4		=111		3-22
2	**	WHEELS/TIRES	A		1		1				1	3-23
Z	**	STEERING HEAD BEARINGS					1			STATE	1	3-23
-	-P - TP	O LETTING HEAD BEARINGS							1	35	T	3-23

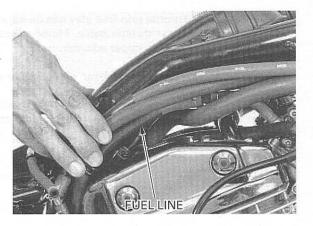
- * Should be serviced by your authorized Honda dealer, unless the owner has proper tools and service data and is mechanically qualified.
- ** In the interest of safety, we recommend these items be serviced only by your Honda dealer.

- NOTES: 1. At higher odometer readings, repeat at the frequency interval established here.
 - 2. Service more frequently when riding in unusually wet or dusty areas.
 - 3. Service more frequently when riding in rain or at full throttle.
 - 4. California type only.
 - 5. Replace every 2 years, or at indicated odometer interval, whichever comes first. Replacement requires mechanical skill.

FUEL LINE

Remove the fuel tank (page 2-6).
Remove the left and right side cover (page 2-4 or 2-5).

Remove the right side lower cover (page 2-4).



Check the fuel lines for deterioration, damage or leakage.

Replace the fuel lines if necessary.

For the tube routing, see section 1.



Check for any deterioration or damage to the throttle cables.

Check that the throttle grip for smooth operation. Check that the throttle opens and automatically closes in all steering positions.

If the throttle grip does not return properly, lubricate the throttle cable and overhaul and lubricate the throttle grip housing.

For the lubrication: Disconnect the throttle cables at their upper ends (page 13-6). Thoroughly lubricate the cables and their pivot points with a commercially available cable lubricant or a light weight oil.

If the throttle grip still does not return properly, replace the throttle cable.

AWARNING

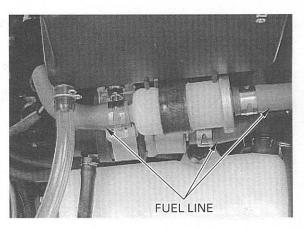
Reusing a damaged or abnormally bent or kinked throttle cable can prevent proper throttle slide operation and may lead to a loss of throttle control while riding.

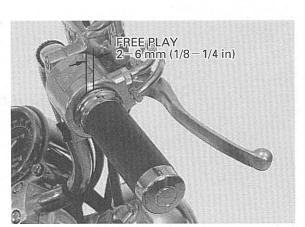
With the engine idling, turn the handlebar all the way to the right and left to ensure that the idle speed does not change.

If idle speed increases, check the throttle grip free play and the throttle cable connection.

Measure throttle grip free play at the throttle grip flange.

FREE PLAY: 2-6 mm (1/8-1/4 in)

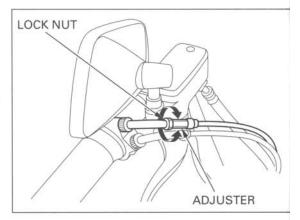




Throttle grip free play can be adjusted at either end of the throttle cable. Minor adjustments are made with the upper adjuster.

Loosen the lock nut and turn the adjuster to obtain the free play.

Tighten the lock nut and reposition the adjuster boot properly after the adjustment has been made.



Major adjustment are made with the lower adjuster.

Remove the fuel tank (page 2-6).

Loosen the lock nuts and turn the adjuster to obtain the free play.

Tighten the lock nuts after the adjustment has been made.

Recheck the throttle free play.



CARBURETOR CHOKE

STARTING ENRICHMENT (SE) VALVE

Starting enrichment system operation can be checked by the way engine starts and runs:

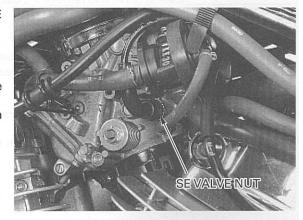
- Difficulty in starting before the engine is warmed up (easy once it is warmed up): SE valve is not completely opened.
- Idle speed is erratic even after warm-up (imperfect combustion): SE valve is not completely closed.

When the above symptoms occur, inspect the SE valve using the following procedure.

Remove the fuel tank (page 2-6).

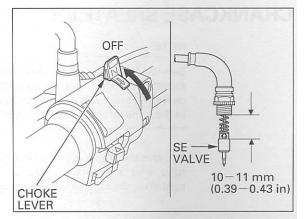
Remove the choke cable boots from the SE valve nuts.

Loosen the SE valve nuts and remove them from the carburetors.



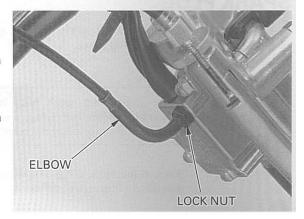
Turn the choke lever fully close position (OFF) and measure the distance between the SE valve end and the cable threaded end as shown.

DISTANCE: 10.0 – 11.0 mm (0.39 – 0.43 in)



Fully turn the handlebar to right side. Loosen the lock nut and turn the cable's elbow until the specified SE valve distance is obtained. Tighten the lock nut after the adjustment has been made.

Recheck the clearance and choke lever operation.
Thread the SE valves in by hand and then tighten the SE valve nuts 1/4 turn with a 14 mm wrench.



AIR CLEANER

NOTE:

- The viscous paper element type air cleaner cannot be cleaned because the element contains a dust adhesive.
- If the motorcycle is used in wet or dusty areas, more frequent inspections are required.

Remove the seat (page 2-2 or 2-3).

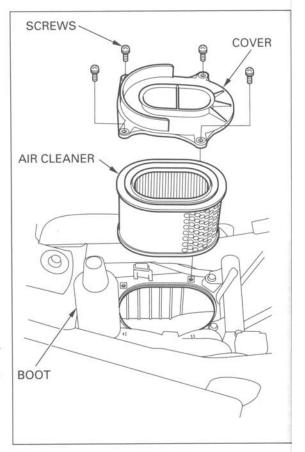
Release the connector boot from the frame clamp. Remove the four screws from the air cleaner housing cover and remove the cover.

Remove the air cleaner.

Replace the air cleaner in accordance with the maintenance schedule or any time it is excessively dirty or damaged.

Install the air cleaner in the reverse order of removal.

Secure the connector boot with the clamp (page 1-35 or 1-54).

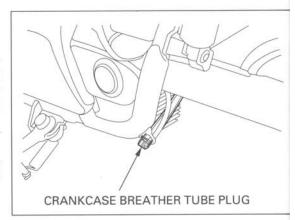


CRANKCASE BREATHER

NOTE:

Service more frequently when ridden in rain, at full throttle, or after the motorcycle is washed or overturned. Service if the deposit level can be seen in the transparent section of the breather tube.

Remove the crankcase breather tube plug from the tube end and drain deposits into a suitable container, then install the tube plug securely.



SPARK PLUG

Disconnect the spark plug caps and clean around the spark plug bases.

NOTE:

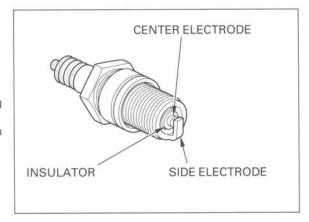
Clean around the spark plug bases with compressed air before removing, and be sure that no debris is allowed to enter the combustion chamber.

Remove the spark plugs and inspect or replace as described in the maintenance schedule.



Check the following and replace if necessary (recommended spark plugs: page 3-1)

- insulator for damage
- electrodes for wear
- burning condition, coloration;
 - dark to light brown indicates good condition.
 - excessive lightness indicates malfunctioning ignition system or lean mixture.
 - wet or black sooty deposit shows over-rich mixture.



Clean the spark plug electrodes with a wire brush or special plug cleaner.

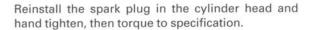
Check the gap between the center and side electrodes with a wire-type feeler gauge. If necessary, adjust the gap by bending the side electrode carefully.

SPARK PLUG GAP:

0.80-0.90 mm (0.031-0.035 in)

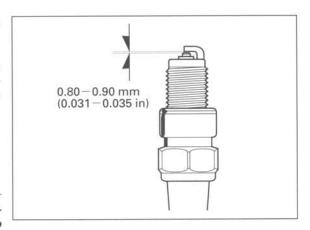
CAUTION:

To prevent damage to the cylinder head, handtighten the spark plug before using a wrench to tighten to the specified torque.



TORQUE: 14 N·m (1.4 kgf·m, 10 lbf·ft)

Install the spark plug caps.

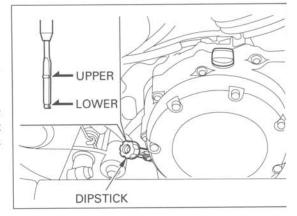


ENGINE OIL

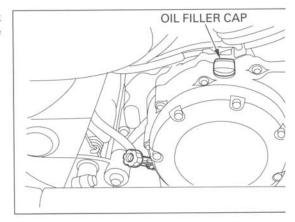
Start the engine and let it idle for a few minute.

Stop the engine, remove the dipstick and wipe the oil from the dipstick with a clean cloth.

Two or three minutes after stopping the engine; with the motorcycle in an upright position, insert the dipstick into the stick hole without screwing it in.



If the oil level is below or near the lower level mark on the dipstick, remove the oil filler cap and add the recommended oil up to the upper level mark.



RECOMMENDED ENGINE OIL:

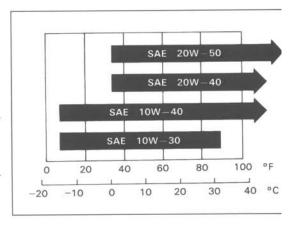
Honda GN4 or HP4 4-stroke oil or equivalent motor oil certified to meet API service classification: SF or SG Viscosity: SAE 10W-40

NOTE:

Other viscosities shown in the chart may be used when the average temperature in your riding area is within the indicated range.

Reinstall the dipstick.

For engine oil change, see following page.



ENGINE OIL FILTER

NOTE:

Change engine oil with the engine warm and the motorcycle on its side stand to assure complete and rapid draining.

▲WARNING

Engine and exhaust system parts become very hot and remain hot for some time after the engine is run. Wear insulated gloves or wait until the engine and exhaust system have cooled before handling these parts.

Remove the drain bolt and filler cap, and drain the oil.

Remove and discard the oil filter cartridge.

TOOL:

Oil filter wrench

07HAA-PJ70100

After draining the oil completely, install and tighten the drain bolt with a new sealing washer.

TORQUE: 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft)

Apply oil to new oil filter O-ring and oil filter threads and install the oil filter cartridge.

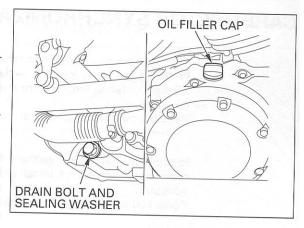
TORQUE: 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m , 7 lbf·ft)

Fill the crankcase with recommended oil (see previous page).

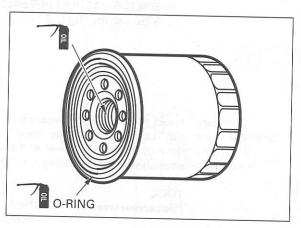
Install the oil filler cap.

Start the engine and let it idle for 2-3 minutes. Stop the engine and check that the oil level is at the upper level mark on the dipstick (see previous page).

Make sure there are no oil leaks.







CARBURETOR SYNCHRONIZATION

NOTE:

Perform this maintenance with the engine at normal operating temperature and transmission in

Place the motorcycle on a level surface.

Remove the plugs and washers from the cylinder head intake ports and install the vacuum gauge

Connect the vacuum gauge to the adaptors.



Vacuum gauge

07LMJ-001000A or M937B-021-XXXXX

(U.S.A. only)

Remove the fuel tank mounting bolts (page 2-4) but do not disconnect the fuel tube.

1. Turn the fuel valve ON. Start the engine and adjust the idle speed to the specification.

IDLE SPEED: $1,000 \pm 100 \text{ rpm}$

2. Check the difference in vacuum between each carburetor.

CABRETOR VACUUM DIFFERENCE:

Within 40 mm Hg (1.6 in Hg)

The base Insert the pilot screw wrench from the left side of carburetor is the the frame between the lower throttle cable and No. 1 (rear) front cylinder head cover and align the edge of the carburetor. wrench with the adjusting screw as shown.

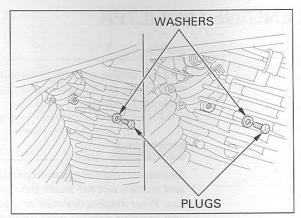
TOOL:

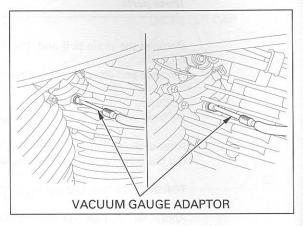
Pilot screw wrench

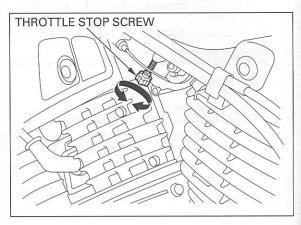
07908-4730001 or equivalent commercially available in U.S.A.

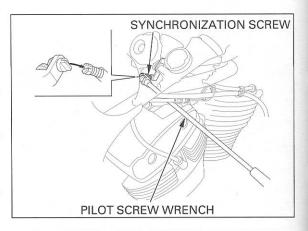
- 3. Turn the synchronization adjusting screw so that the difference between the each carburetor is below the specification.
- 4. Be sure that the synchronization is stable by snapping the throttle grip several times.
- 5. Snap the throttle grip several times and recheck the idle speed and difference in vacuum between each carburetor.

Disconnect the vacuum gauge and install the removed parts.









ENGINE IDLE SPEED

NOTE:

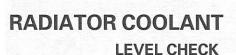
- Inspect and adjust idle speed after all other engine adjustments are within specifications.
- Engine must be warm for accurate adjustment. Ten minutes of stop-and-go riding is sufficient.

Warm up the engine.

Support the motorcycle on a level surface and shift the transmission into neutral.

Check the idle speed and adjust by turning the throttle stop screw if necessary.

IDLE SPEED: $1,000 \pm 100 \text{ rpm}$



Check the coolant level of the reserve tank with the engine running at normal operating temperature. The level should be between the "UPPER" and "LOWER" level lines with the motorcycle in a vertical position on a flat, level surface.

If necessary, remove the reserve tank cap and fill to the "UPPER" level line with a 50-50 solution of distilled water and recommended antifreeze (coolant mixture preparation: page 6-4).

RECOMMENDED ANTIFREEZE

Pro Honda HP coolant or an equivalent high quality ethylene glycol antifreeze containing silicate-free corrosion inhibitors

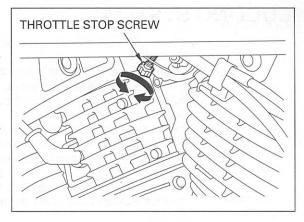
CAUTION:

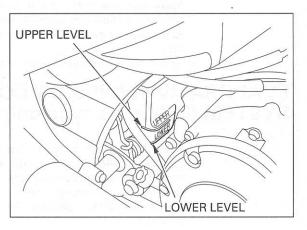
Using coolant with silicate corrosion inhibitors may cause premature wear of water pump seals or blockage of radiator passages. Using tap water may cause engine damage.

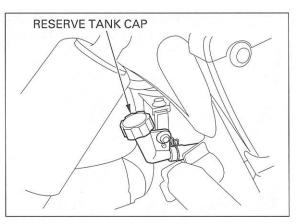
Check to see if there are any coolant leaks when the coolant level decreases very rapidly.

If the reserve tank becomes completely empty, there is a possibility of the air getting into the cooling system.

Be sure to remove all air from the cooling system as described on page 6-4.







COOLING SYSTEM

 Check the radiator air passage for clogging or damage.

Straighten bent fins with a small, flat blade screwdriver and remove insects, mud or other obstructions with compressed air or low pressure water.

Replace the radiator if the air flow is restricted over more than 20 % of the radiating surface.

For radiator replacement, refer to page 6-9.

Remove the fuel tank (page 2-6) and check for any coolant leakage from water pump, water hose and hose joints.

Make sure the hoses are in good condition; they should not show any signs of deterioration.

Replace any hose that shows any sign of deterioration.

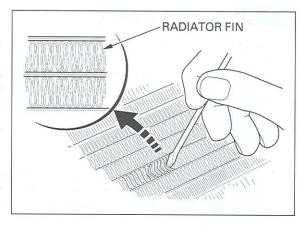
Check that all hose clamps are tight.

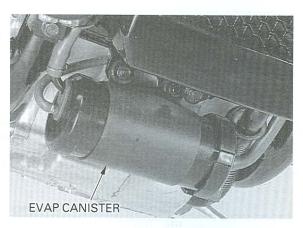


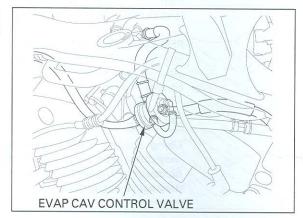
Check the tubes between the fuel tank, EVAP canister, EVAP purge control valve, EVAP CAV control valve and carburetors for deterioration, damage or loose connections.

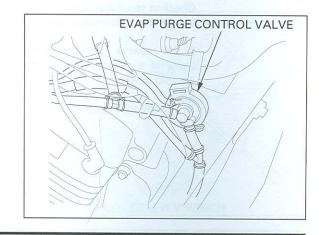
Check the EVAP canister for cracks or other damage.

Refer to the Vacuum Hose Routing Diagram label and Cable & Harness Routing (page 1-52 or 1-66) for tube connections.









FINAL DRIVE OIL

LEVEL CHECK

Place the motorcycle on its side stand on a level surface.

Remove the oil filler cap.

Check that the oil level is up to lower edge of the oil filler hole.

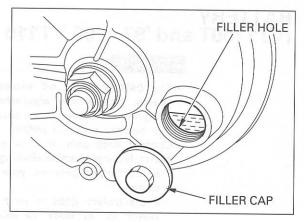
Check for leaks, if the oil level is low. Pour the recommended oil through the oil filler hole until it reaches the lower edge of the hole.

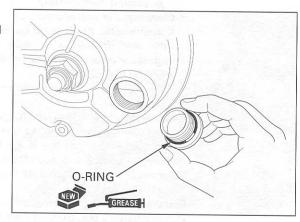
RECOMMENDED OIL: Hypoid gear oil, SAE #80

Coat a new O-ring with grease and install it onto oil filler cap.

Install and tighten the filler cap.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)





OIL CHANGE

Place the motorcycle on its side stand on a level surface.

Remove the oil filler cap and drain bolt, slowly turn the rear wheel and drain the oil.

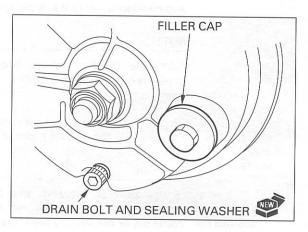
When the oil is completely drained, clean the drain bolt, replace the sealing washer and tighten it.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Fill the gear case with the recommended oil up to correct level (see above).

OIL CAPACITY: 130 cm³ (4.4 US oz, 4.6 Imp oz)

at draining



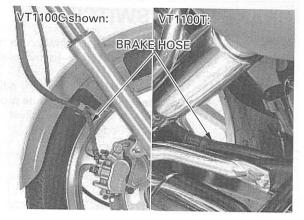
BRAKE SYSTEM

HYDRAULIC DISC BRAKE

Firmly apply the brake lever or pedal, and check that no air has entered the system. If the lever or pedal feels soft or spongy when operated, bleed air from the system.

Inspect the brake hose and fittings for deterioration, cracks and signs of leakage. Tighten any loose fittings. Replace hoses and fittings as required.

Refer to page 15-3 for brake bleeding procedures.

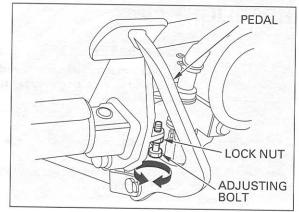


REAR DRUM BRAKE (VT1100C)

PEDAL HEIGHT

Adjust the rear brake pedal to the desired height by loosening the lock nut and turning the adjusting bolt. After adjustment, tighten the lock nut securely.

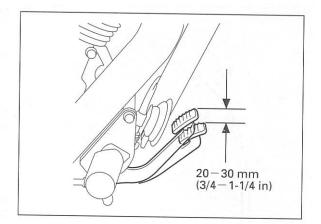
Perform the free play adjustment after adjusting the pedal height.



FREE PLAY

Check the rear brake pedal free play.

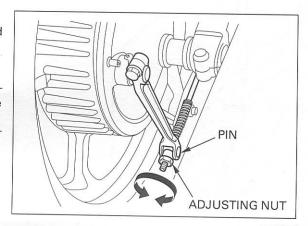
FREE PLAY: 20-30 mm (3/4-1-1/4 in)



Adjust the free play by turning the adjusting nut. Make sure the cut-out of the adjusting nut is seated on the brake arm pin.

NOTE:

After adjusting the free play, check the rear brake light switch operation (see below).



BATTERY (VT1100T and '97-'00 VT1100C only)

AWARNING

water.

- The battery gives off explosive gases; keep sparks, flames and cigarettes away. Provide adequate ventilation when charging.
- The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte).
 Contact with skin or eyes may cause severe burns. Wear protective clothing and a face shield.
 If electrolyte gets on your skin, flush with
 - If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush with water for at least 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.
- Electrolyte is poisonous.
 If swallowed, drink large quantities of water or milk and follow with milk of magnesia or vegetable oil and call a physician. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

Remove the left side cover (page 2-4 or 2-5) and inspect the battery electrolyte level.

When the level nears the lower level, remove the battery holder bolt and open the holder.

Disconnect the negative cable first, then disconnect the positive cable.

Disconnect the battery breather tube.

Pull the battery out, then remove the filler caps and add distilled water to the upper level line.

NOTE:

Add only distilled water. Tap water contains minerals that will shorten the life of the battery.

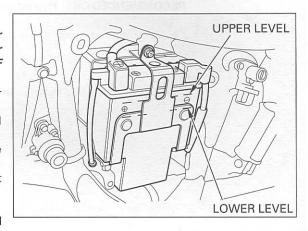
Make sure that the battery breather tube is correctly positioned, and not kinked, trapped or bent in such a way as to obstruct the passage of the air.

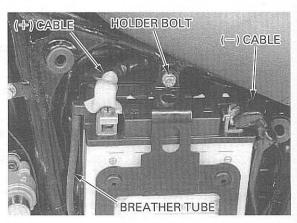
After filling, install each filler cap firmly and install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

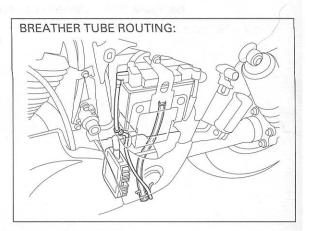
CAUTION:

trapped or bent in If the tube is blocked, the battery's internal such a way as to pressure will not be relieved, the breather may obstruct the come off, or the battery could crack as a result.

For the battery charging and specific gravity, see page 16-6.







BRAKE FLUID

CAUTION:

- Do not remove the cover or cap unless the reservoir is level because fluid may spill out.
- Do not mix different types of fluid, as they are not compatible with each other.
- Do not foreign material to enter the system when filling the reservoir.
- Avoid spilling fluid in painted, plastic or rubber parts. Place a rag over these parts whenever the system is serviced.

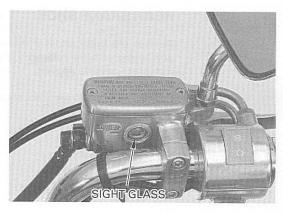
NOTE:

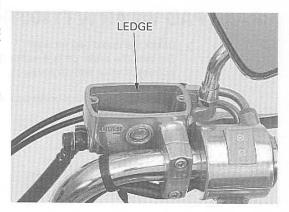
- When the fluid level is low, check the brake pads for wear (see below). A low fluid level may be due to wear of the brake pads. If the brake pads are worn, the caliper piston is pushed out, and this accounts for a low reservoir level.
- If the brake pads are not worn and the fluid level is low, check entire system for leaks (page 3-19).
- Do not remove the level float from the reservoir when filling the brake fluid.

FRONT BRAKE

Turn the handlebar to the left so that the reservoir is level and check the front brake reservoir level through the sight glass. If the level (float edge) is near the lower level mark, remove the cover, set plate and diaphragm and fill the reservoir with DOT 4 brake fluid from a sealed container to the casting ledge.

Refer to page 15-5 for brake fluid replacement/ bleeding procedures.



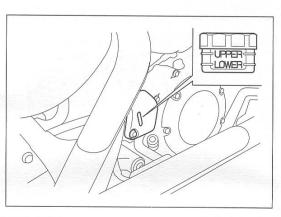


REAR BRAKE (VT1100T only)

Place the motorcycle on a level surface, and support it upright.

Check the rear brake fluid reservoir level through the sight hole. If the level (float edge) is near the lower level mark, remove the reservoir cover (page 15-20) and cap and fill the reservoir with DOT 4 brake fluid from a sealed container to the upper level mark.

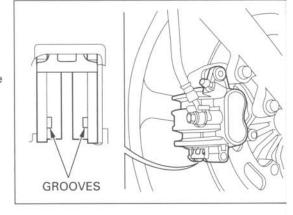
Refer to page 15-5 for brake fluid replacement/bleeding procedures.



BRAKE SHOE/BRAKE PAD WEAR (VT1100C) FRONT BRAKE PAD

Check the front brake pad for wear. Replace the brake pads if either pad is worn to the bottom of the wear limit groove.

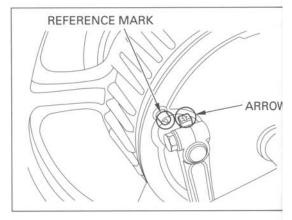
Refer to page 15-7 for brake pad replacement.



REAR BRAKE SHOE

Replace the brake shoes if the arrow on the brake arm aligns with the reference mark " \triangle " when the rear brake pedal is applied.

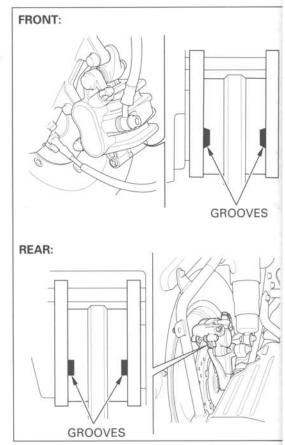
Refer to page 14-21 for brake shoe replacement.



BRAKE PAD WEAR (VT1100T)

Check the brake pad for wear. Replace the brake pads if either pad is worn to the bottom of wear limit groove.

Refer to page 15-7 for brake pad replacement.



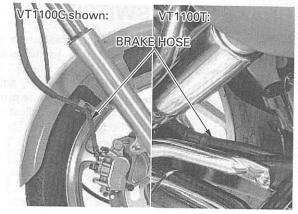
BRAKE SYSTEM

HYDRAULIC DISC BRAKE

Firmly apply the brake lever or pedal, and check that no air has entered the system. If the lever or pedal feels soft or spongy when operated, bleed air from the system.

Inspect the brake hose and fittings for deterioration, cracks and signs of leakage. Tighten any loose fittings. Replace hoses and fittings as required.

Refer to page 15-3 for brake bleeding procedures.

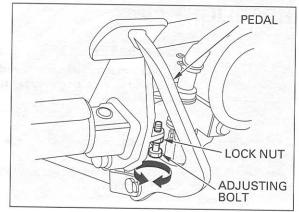


REAR DRUM BRAKE (VT1100C)

PEDAL HEIGHT

Adjust the rear brake pedal to the desired height by loosening the lock nut and turning the adjusting bolt. After adjustment, tighten the lock nut securely.

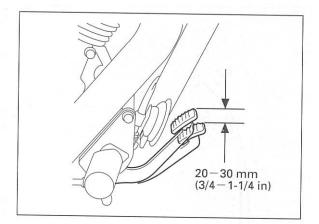
Perform the free play adjustment after adjusting the pedal height.



FREE PLAY

Check the rear brake pedal free play.

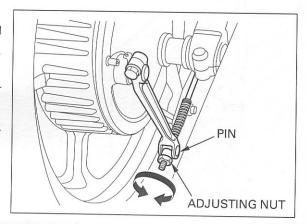
FREE PLAY: 20-30 mm (3/4-1-1/4 in)



Adjust the free play by turning the adjusting nut. Make sure the cut-out of the adjusting nut is seated on the brake arm pin.

NOTE:

After adjusting the free play, check the rear brake light switch operation (see below).

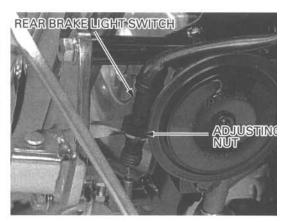


BRAKE LIGHT SWITCH

not require

The front brake Adjust the brake light switch so that the brake light light switch does comes on just prior to the brake actually being engaged.

adjustment. If the light fails to come on, adjust the switch so that the light comes on at the proper time. Hold the switch body and turn the adjusting nut. Do not turn the switch body.



HEADLIGHT AIM

AWARNING

An improperly adjusted headlight may blind oncoming drivers, or it may fail to light the road for a safe distance.

headlight beam as specified by local laws and regulations.

Adjust the Adjust vertically by turning the vertical adjusting

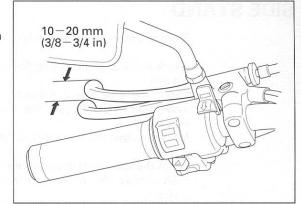
Adjust horizontally by turning the horizontal adjusting screw.



CLUTCH SYSTEM

Measure the clutch free play at the end $\acute{}$ of the clutch lever.

FREE PLAY: 10-20 mm (3/8-3/4 in)



Adjust as follows:

Minor adjustments are made at the adjuster near the lever.

Loosen the lock nut and turn the adjuster. Tighten the lock nut.

CAUTION:

The adjuster may be damaged if it is positioned too far out, leaving minimal thread engagement.

If the adjuster is threaded out near its limit and the correct free play cannot be obtained, turn the adjuster all the way in and back out one turn. Tighten the lock nut and make a major adjustment as described below.

Major adjustments are performed at the clutch arm.

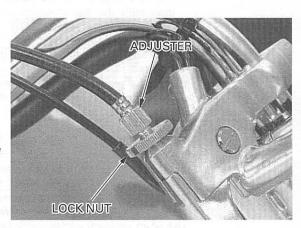
Remove the left crankcase rear cover (page 2-16).

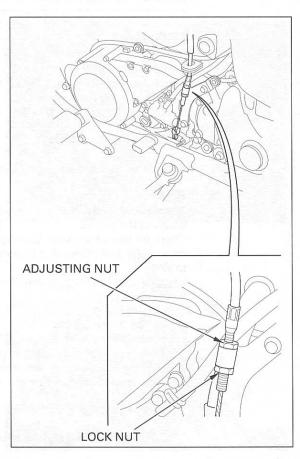
Loosen the lock nut and turn the adjusting nut to adjust play. Hold the adjusting nut securely while tightening lock nut.

TORQUE: 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7 lbf·ft)

If proper free play cannot be obtained, or the clutch slips during the test ride, disassemble and inspect the clutch (see section 10).

Install the left crankcase rear cover (page 2-16).





SIDE STAND

Support the motorcycle on a level surface.

Check the side stand spring for damage or loss of tension.

Check the side stand assembly for freedom of movement and lubricate the side stand pivot if necessary.

Make sure that the side stand is not bent.

Check the side stand ignition cut-off system:

- Sit astride the motorcycle and raise the side stand.
- Start the engine with the transmission in neutral, then shift the transmission into gear, with the clutch lever squeezed.
- -Move the side stand full down.
- -The engine should stop as the side stand is lowered.

If there is a problem with the system, check the side stand switch (section 19).



AWARNING

Loose, worn, or damaged suspension parts impair motorcycle stability and control. Repair or replace any damaged components before riding. Riding a motorcycle with faulty suspension increases your risk of an accident and possible injury.

FRONT

Check the action of the forks by compressing the front suspension several times.

Check the entire fork assembly for signs of leaks, damage or loose fasteners.

Replace damaged components which cannot be repaired.

Tighten all nuts and bolts.

Refer to section 13 for front fork service.

REAR

Support the motorcycle securely and raise the rear wheel of the ground.

Check for worn swingarm bearings by grabbing the rear wheel and attempting to move the wheel side to side.

Replace the bearings if any looseness is noted (section 14).

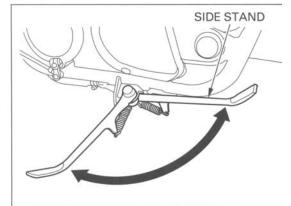
Check the action of the shock absorbers by compressing them several times.

Check the entire shock absorber assembly for signs of leaks, damage or loose fasteners.

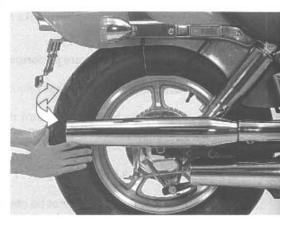
Replace damaged components which cannot be repaired.

Tighten all nuts and bolts.

Refer to section 14 for shock absorber service.









NUTS, BOLTS, FASTENERS

Check that all chassis nuts and bolts are tightened to their correct torque values (page 1-17 or 1-21). Check that all cotter pins, safety clips, hose clamps and cable stays are in place and properly secured.

WHEELS/TIRES

NOTE:

Tire pressure should be checked when tires are COLD.

RECOMMENDED TIRE PRESSURE AND TIRE SIZES:

unit: kPa (kgf/cm², psi)

		VT1100C		VT1100T	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
Cold tire pressure	Up to 90 kg (200 lbs)	225 (2.25, 33)	225 (2.25, 33)	225 (2.25, 33)	225 (2.25, 33)
	Up to maximum weight capacity	225 (2.25, 33)	280 (2.80, 41)	225 (2.25, 33)	250 (2.50, 36)
Tire size	1 1 1	110/90-19 62H	170/80-15MC 77H	130/80R18 66H	170/70R16 75H
Tire brand	(Dunlop)	F24	K555	D206F	D206A

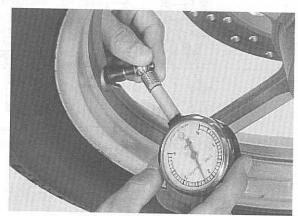
Check the tires for cuts, embedded nails, or other damage.

Check the front and rear wheels for trueness (refer to sections 13 and 14).

Measure the tread depth at the center of the tires. Replace the tires when the tread depth reaches the following limits.

MINIMUM TREAD DEPTH: Front: 1.5 mm (0.06 in)

Rear: 2.0 mm (0.08 in)



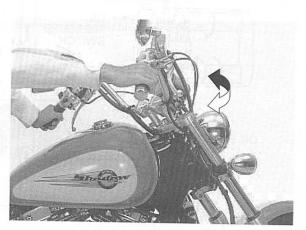
STEERING HEAD BEARINGS

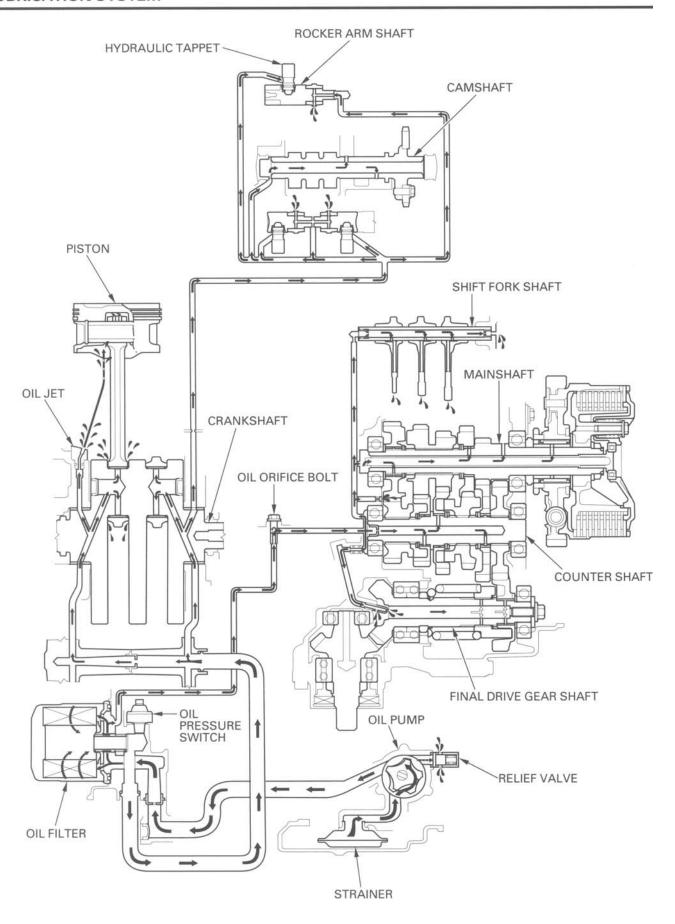
Check that the control cables do not interfere with handlebar rotation.

Check that the Support the motorcycle securely and raise the front wheel off ground.

Check that the handlebar moves freely from side to side.

If the handlebar moves unevenly, binds, or has vertical movement, inspect the steering head bearings (section 13).





4. LUBRICATION SYSTEM

SERVICE INFORMATION	4-1	OIL PRESSURE CHECK	4-3
TROUBLESHOOTING	4-2	OIL PUMP & OIL STRAINER	4-4

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

▲WARNING

 When the engine must be running to do some work, make sure the area is well-ventilated. Never run the engine in an enclosed area. The exhaust contains poisonous carbon monoxide gas that may cause loss of consciousness and lead to death. Run the engine in an open area or with an exhaust evacuation system in an enclosed area.

 Used engine oil may cause skin cancer if repeatedly left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods. Although this is unlikely unless you handle used oil on a daily basis, it is still advisable to thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water as soon as possible after handling used oil. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

• The service procedures in this section can be performed with the engine in the frame.

• When removing and installing the oil pump use care not to allow dust or dirt to enter the engine.

• If any portion of the oil pump is worn beyond the specified service limits, replace the oil pump as an assembly.

After the oil pump has been installed, check that there are no oil leaks and that oil pressure is correct.

• For oil pressure indicator inspection, refer to section 19 of this manual.

SPECIFICATIONS

Unit mm (in)

ITEM		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
Oil pressure at oil pressure switch (80 °C/176 °F)		441 kPa (4.5 kgf/cm² , 64 psi) at 5,000 rpm		
Oil pump rotor	tip clearance	0.15 (0.006)	0.20 (0.008)	
	body clearance	0.15-0.22 (0.006-0.009)	0.35 (0.014)	
	end clearance	0.02-0.07 (0.001-0.003)	0.10 (0.004)	

TORQUE VALUES

Oil pressure switch 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) Apply sealant to the threads. Oil pump driven sprocket bolt 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft) Apply locking agent to the threads.

Oil pump mounting bolt 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Oil pump assembly bolt 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) Oil orifice bolt 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7 lbf·ft) (page 11-0)

TOOLS

Oil pressure gauge	07506-3000000	or equivalent commercially available in U. S. A.
Oil pressure gauge attachment	07510-4220100	

TROUBLESHOOTING

Oil level too low - high oil consumption

- · External oil leaks
- Worn piston rings or incorrect piston ring installation
- Worn valve guide or seal

Oil contamination (white appearance)

- Coolant mixing with oil
 - -Faulty head gasket
 - -Water leak in crankcase

Low oil pressure

- Pressure relief valve stuck open
- Clogged oil filter screen
- Oil pump worn or damaged
- Internal oil leaks
- Incorrect oil being used
- · Low oil level

High oil pressure

- Pressure relief valve stuck closed
- Plugged gallery, or metering orifice
- Incorrect oil being used

No oil pressure

- · Oil level too low
- Oil pump drive chain or drive/driven sprocket broken
- · Oil pump damaged

OIL PRESSURE CHECK

NOTE:

If the engine is cold, the pressure reading will be abnormally high. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature before starting this test.

Stop the engine.

Remove the switch cover and disconnect the oil pressure switch wire by removing the screw.



Remove the oil pressure switch and connect an oil pressure gauge attachment and gauge to the pressure switch hole.

TOOLS:

Oil pressure gauge

07510-4220100

attachment

Oil pressure gauge

07506-3000000

or equivalent commercially available in U.S.A.

Check the oil level and add the recommended oil if necessary (page 3-10).

Start the engine and check the oil pressure at 5,000 rpm.

OIL PRESSURE: 441 kPa (4.5 kgf/cm², 64 psi)

at 5,000 rpm (80 °C/176 °F)

Stop the engine.

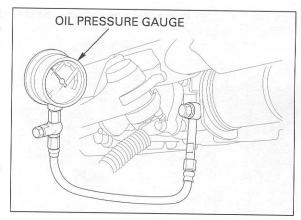
Apply sealant to the pressure switch threads as shown and install it.

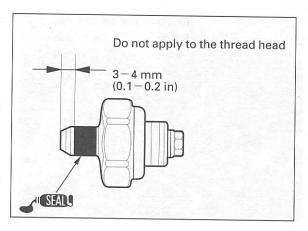
TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Connect the oil pressure switch wire and install the switch cover.

Start the engine.

Check that the oil pressure indicator goes out after one or two seconds. If the oil pressure indicator stays on, stop the engine immediately and determine the cause (page 19-14).





OIL PUMP & STRAINER

REMOVAL

Remove the gearshift linkage (page 10-15).

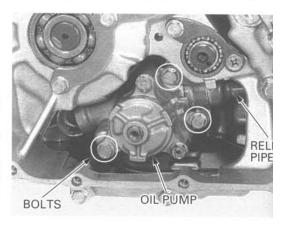
Remove the three mounting bolts and pull the oil pump off the right crankcase.

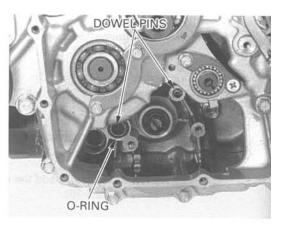
Separate the relief pipe from the oil pump by sliding to the right and rotating the pipe.

Remove the oil pump by rotating rear of the pump toward outside of the engine and slide the pump out of the crankcase.

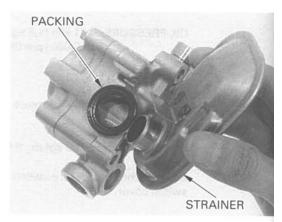
Remove the relief pipe.

Remove the dowel pins and O-ring.





Remove the oil strainer and packing from the oil pump.

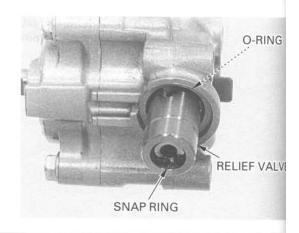


RELIEF VALVE CHECK

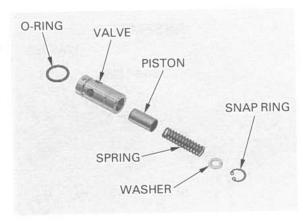
Remove the following:

- -relief valve from the oil pump
- -O-ring from the relief valve
- -relief valve snap ring

Disassemble the relief valve.



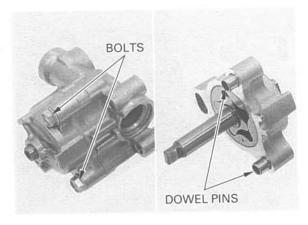
Check the spring and piston for wear or damage. Check the valve for clogging or damage. Assemble the parts in the reverse order of disassembly. Be sure to use a new O-ring.



DISASSEMBLY

Remove the oil pump body cover by removing the bolts.

Remove the dowel pins.

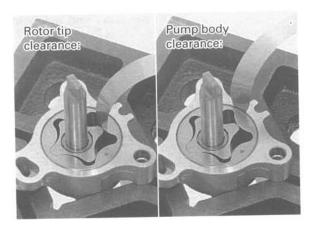


Measure the rotor tip clearance.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.20 mm (0.008 in)

Measure the pump body clearance.

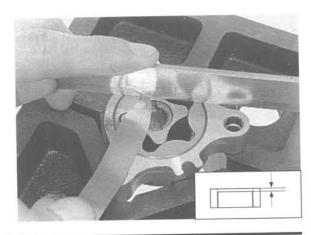
SERVICE LIMIT: 0.35 mm (0.014 in)

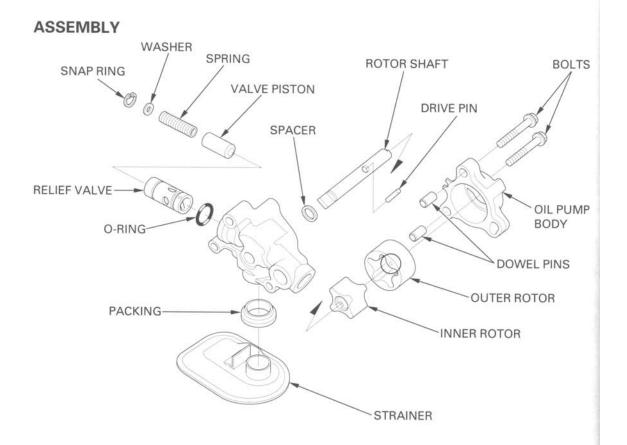


Remove the spacer, drive pin and rotor shaft.

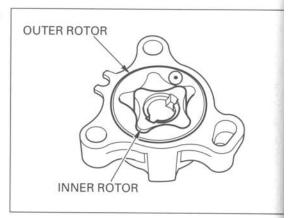
Measure the oil pump end clearance.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.10 mm (0.004 in)



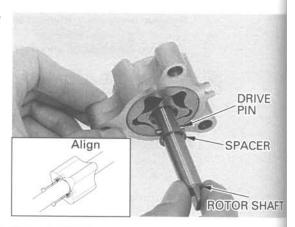


Install the outer and inner rotors into the pump body.



Insert the rotor shaft and install the drive pin by aligning the slots in the inner rotor.

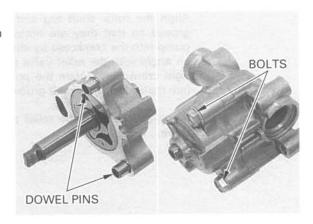
Place the spacer into the inner rotor groove.



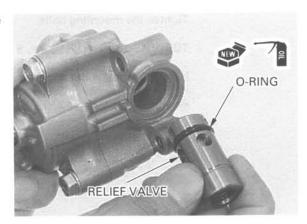
Install the dowel pins in the oil pump body.
Install the oil pump cover onto the pump body with the bolts.

TORQUE: 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)

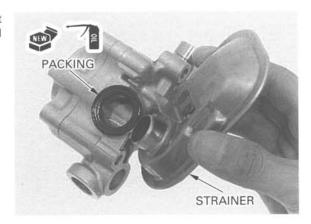
Make sure the rotor shaft is rotating smoothly.



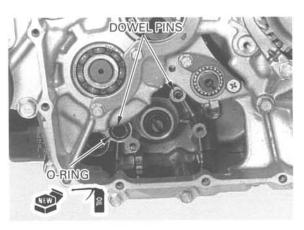
Coat a new O-ring with the engine oil and install the relief valve into the oil pump securely.



Coat a new packing with the engine oil and install it into the groove of the oil pump, and install the oil strainer into the oil pump.

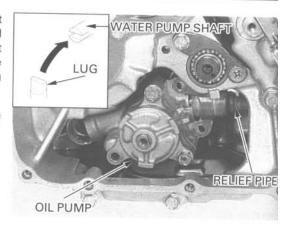


Install the dowel pins into the right crankcase. Coat a new O-ring with the engine oil and install it onto the dowel pin.



Align the rotor shaft lug and water pump shaft groove so that they are horizontal. Place the oil pump into the crankcase by sliding the pump in at an angle with the relief valve pointing toward the right crankcase. Rotate the pump to seat the lug into the water pump shaft groove.

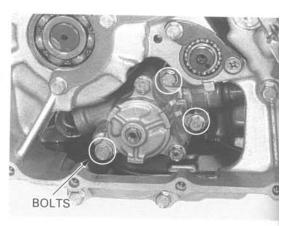
Insert and connect the relief pipe over the relief valve.

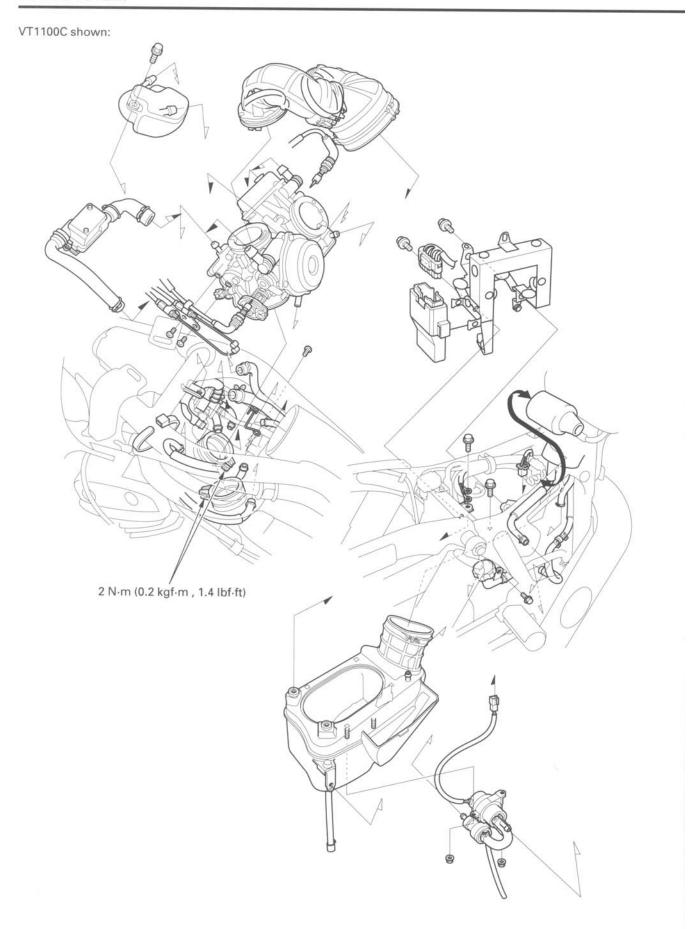


Tighten the mounting bolts.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Install the gearshift linkage, clutch assembly and right crankcase cover (section 9).
Install the sub-frame (section 7).





5

5. FUEL SYSTEM

SERVICE INFORMATION	5-1	CARBURETOR CLEANING	5-14
TROUBLESHOOTING	5-3	CARBURETOR COMBINATION	5-14
CARBURETOR REMOVAL	5-4	CARBURETOR INSTALLATION	5-16
VACUUM CHAMBER	5-7	PILOT SCREW ADJUSTMENT	5-19
FLOAT CHAMBER	5-9	HIGH ALTITUDE ADJUSTMENT	5-20
PILOT SCREW	5-11	AIR CLEANER HOUSING	5-22
AIR CUT-OFF VALVE	5-13	EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL	
CARBURETOR SEPARATION	5-13	SYSTEM (California type only)	5-25

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

▲WARNING

- · Gasoline is extremely flammable and is explosive under certain conditions, KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.
- When the engine must be running to do some work, make sure the area is well-ventilated. Never run the engine in an
 enclosed area. The exhaust contains poisonous carbon monoxide gas that may cause loss of consciousness and lead to
 death. Run the engine in an open area or with an exhaust evacuation system in an enclosed area.
- Bending or twisting the control cables will impair smooth operation and could cause the cable to stick or bind, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Work in a well ventilated area. Smoking or allowing flames or sparks in the work area or where gasoline is stored can cause a fire or explosion.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the diaphragms before cleaning air and fuel passages with compressed air. The diaphragms might be damaged.

NOTE:

If the vehicle is to be stored for more than one month, drain the float bowls. Fuel left in the float bowls may cause clogged jets resulting in hard starting or poor driveability.

- For fuel tank removal and installation, refer to section 2.
- For fuel pump inspection, refer to section 19.
- Before disassembling the carburetor, place an approved fuel container under the carburetor drain screw, loosen the screw and drain the carburetor.
- When disassembling fuel system parts, note the locations of the O-rings. Replace them with new ones on reassembly.
- After removing the carburetor, wrap the intake port of the engine with a shop towel or cover it with a piece of tape to prevent any foreign material from dropping into the engine. Be sure to remove the cover when reinstalling the caburetor.
- All hoses used in the evaporative emission control system (California type only) are numbered for identification.
 When connecting one of these hoses, compare the hose number with the Vacuum Hose Routing Diagram Label on page 1-37, for its proper routing.

FUEL SYSTEM

SPECIFICATIONS

ITEM		SPECIFICATIONS	
Carburetor type		Constant Venturi	
Carburetor throttle bore		36 mm (1.4 in)	
Carburetor identification number	49 state/Canada type	VDKHA	
	California type	VDKJA	
Main jet		# 178	
Slow jet		# 42	
Pilot screw	initial/final opening	See page 5-19	
	high altitude adjustment	See page 5-20	
Float level		9.2 mm (0.36 in)	
Idle speed		1,000 \pm 100 rpm	

ITEM		SPECIFICATIONS	
Carburetor type		Constant Venturi	
Carburetor throttle bore		36 mm (1.4 in)	
Carburetor identification	49 state/Canada type	VDKFA	
number	California type	VDKGA	
Main jet	Front	# 175	
	Rear	# 180	
Slow jet		# 42	
Pilot screw	initial/final opening	See page 5-19	
	high altitude adjustment	See page 5-20	
Float level		9.2 mm (0.36 in)	
Idle speed		1,000 \pm 100 rpm	

TORQUE VALUES

Carburetor insulator band screw 2.0 N·m (0.2 kgf·m , 1.4 lbf·ft)

TOOLS

Carburetor float level gauge Valve guide driver, 6.6 mm Vacuum/Pressure pump

-Vacuum pump -Pressure pump 07401-0010000 07942-6570100

A937X-041-XXXXX or

ST-AH-260-MC7 (U. S. A. only) ST-AH-255-MC7 (U. S. A. only)

TROUBLESHOOTING

Engine cranks but won't start

- · No fuel in tank
- No fuel to carburetor
 - -Fuel filter clogged
 - -Fuel line clogged
- -Fuel level misadjusted
- Fuel tank breather tube restricted (49 state/Canada type)
- Evaporative emission tube No. 1 restricted (California type)
- Too much fuel getting to the engine
 - -Air cleaner clogged
 - -Flooded carburetor
- Intake air leak
- Fuel contaminated/deteriorated
 - jets clogged
- Improper starting enrichment valve operation
- Starting enrichment valve circuit clogged
- Improper throttle operation
- No spark at plug (ignition system faulty)

Lean mixture

- Fuel jets clogged
- Float valve faulty
- · Float level too low
- Fuel line restricted
- · Carburetor air vent tube clogged
- Intake air leak
- · Vacuum piston faulty
- Throttle valve faulty
- Emission control system faulty (California type only)
 - Evaporative emission carburetor air vent control valve faulty
 - -Hose of the emission control system faulty

Rich mixture

- · Starting enrichment valve open
- Float valve faulty
- · Float level too high
- · Air jets clogged
- Air cleaner clogged
- Flooded carburetor
- · Vacuum piston faulty
- Emission control system faulty (California type only)
 - -Evaporative emission purge control valve faulty
 - Hose of the emission control system faulty

Engine stalls, hard to start, rough idling

- Fuel line restricted
- Fuel mixture too lean/rich
- Fuel contaminated/deteriorated

 jets clogged
- Intake air leak
- Idle speed misadjusted
- Float level misadjusted
- Fuel tank breather tube restricted (49 state/Canada type)
- Evaporative emission tube No. 1 restricted (California type)
- Pilot screw misadjusted
- Starting enrichment valve circuit cloqged
- Ignition system malfunction
- Emission control system faulty (California type only)
 - Evaporative emission carburetor air vent control valve faulty
 - -Evaporative emission purge control valve faulty
 - Hose of the emission control system faulty

Afterburn when engine braking is used

- · Lean mixture in slow circuit
- · Air cut-off valve malfunction
- ICM stops ignition intermittently to prevent over revolution (working over rev limiter function)

Backfiring or misfiring during acceleration

- Ignition system malfunction
- Fuel mixture too lean
- ICM stops ignition intermittently to prevent over revolution (working over rev limiter function)

Poor performance (driveability) and poor fuel economy

- · Fuel system clogged
- Ignition system malfunction
- Emission control system faulty (California type only)
 - Evaporative emission carburetor air vent control valve faulty
- -Hose of the emission control system faulty

CARBURETOR REMOVAL

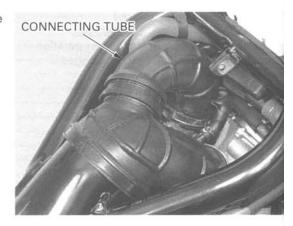
Remove the fuel tank (page 2-6). Loosen the drain screws and drain the carburetors.

Disconnect the crankcase breather tubes from the crankcase breather storage tank.

Remove the bolt and crankcase breather storage

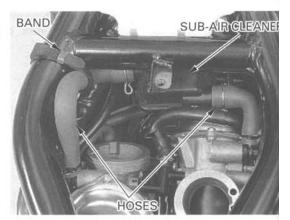


Loosen the three tube band screws and remove the connecting tube.

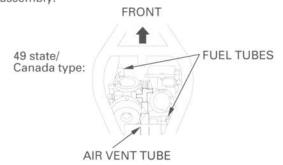


Release the hose band.

Disconnect the two hoses from the carburetors and remove the sub-air cleaner.



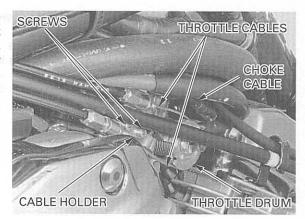
Disconnect the carburetor air vent tube (California: No. 6 tube) and the fuel tubes from the carburetor assembly.





spring.

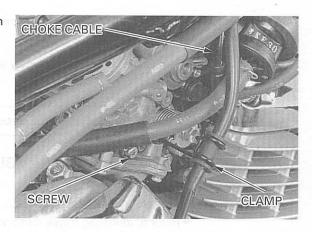
Disconnect the throttle cables from the throttle drum (Rotate the throttle grip if necessary to slack cable) and remove the two screws and cable holder. Be careful not to Disconnect the choke cable of the rear carburetor lose SE valve and by turning the starting enrichment (SE) valve nut.



Remove the screw and spark plug wire clamp from the carburetor.

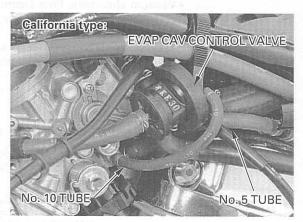
Be careful not to lose SE valve and spring.

Disconnect the choke cable of the front carburetor.



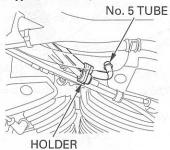
California type Disconnect the No. 10 and No. 5 tubes from the only: front carburetor.

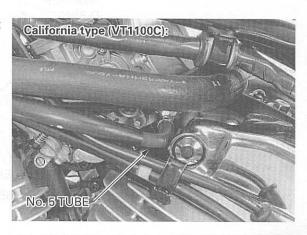
> Remove the evaporative emission carburetor air vent (EVAP CAV) control valve from the carburetor stay.



California type Release the cable holder (VT1100T) and disconnect only: the No. 5 tube from the rear carburetor.

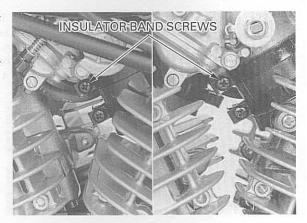
California type (VT1100T):





Loosen each insulator band screw at the carburetor

Release the carburetor outlet ports from the insulators while carefully raising the carburetor as-



California type Raise the carburetor and disconnect the No. 11 only: tube.

Remove the carburetor assembly out of the frame.

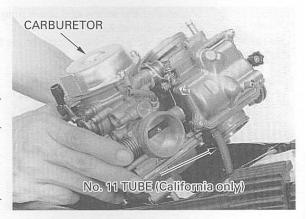
CAUTION:

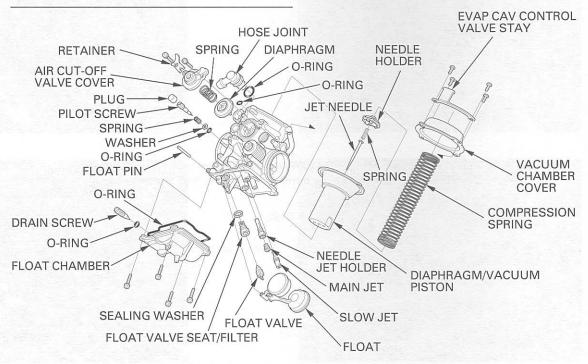
Be careful not to damage the carburetor assembly.

DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

NOTE:

- Refer to following pages for service of each part.
- · Vacuum chambers, float chambers, pilot screws and air cut off valves can be serviced without separating the carburetors.
- · Keep each carburetor's parts separate from the other's so you can install the parts in their original positions.





VACUUM CHAMBER

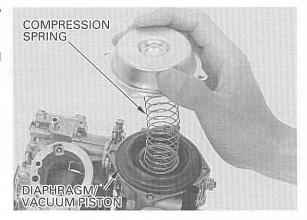
REMOVAL

Remove the four screws, EVAP CAV control valve stay [front (#2) carb. of California type] and vauum chamber cover.



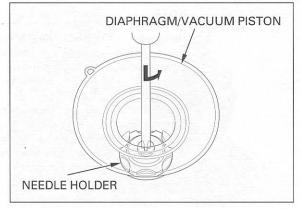
Remove the compression spring, diaphragm/vacuum piston.

Check the piston for smooth operation up and down in the carburetor body.



Turn the needle holder counterclockwise 60° while pressing it in and remove the holder flanges from the piston grooves.

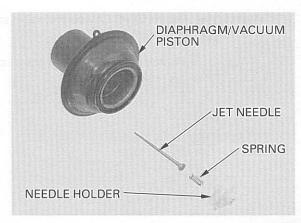
Remove the needle holder, spring and jet needle from the vacuum piston.



INSPECTION

Check the jet needle for stepped wear.
Check the vacuum piston for wear or damage.
Check the diaphragm for damage, pin holes, wrinkles or bends.
Replace these parts if necessary.

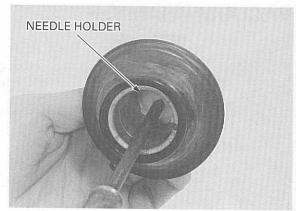
Air leaks out of the vacuum chamber if the diaphragm is damaged in any way—even a pin hole.



INSTALLATION

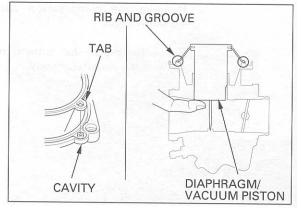
Install the jet needle into the vacuum piston. Install the spring onto the needle holder and set the jet needle holder into the piston.

Turn the needle holder clockwise while pressing it until it locks. Holder flanges and piston grooves should be fitted after turning.



Install the vacuum piston/diaphragm into the carburetor body by aligning the tab of the diaphragm with the cavity.

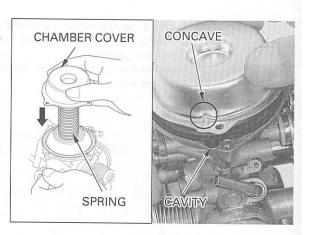
Lift the bottom of the piston with your finger to set the diaphragm rib in the groove in the carburetor body.



NOTE:

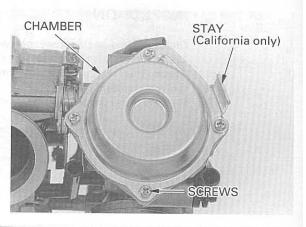
Be careful not to pinch the diaphragm, and to keep the spring straight when installing the chamber cover by compressing the spring.

Install the spring and chamber cover while the piston remains held in place. Align the concave of the cover with the cavity in the carburetor and secure the cover with at least two screws before releasing the vacuum piston.



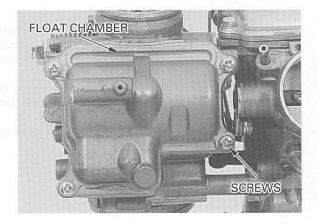
California type Set the EVAP CAV control valve stay in the position only: as shown.

Tighten the four chamber cover screws.

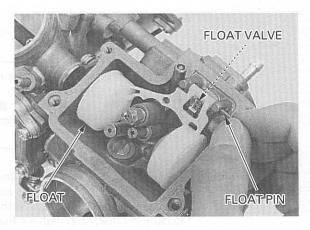


FLOAT CHAMBER REMOVAL

Remove the four screws and the float chamber.



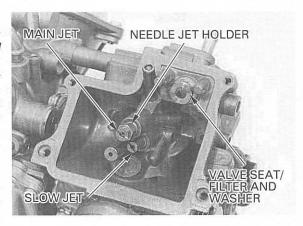
Remove the float pin, float and float valve.



CAUTION:

Handle all jets with care. They can easily be scored or scratched.

Remove the main jet, needle jet holder and slow jet. Remove the float valve seat/filter and sealing washer.



INSPECTION AND CLEANING

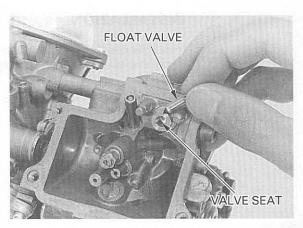
FLOAT/VALVE

Check the float for damage, deterioration or fuel in the float.

Check the float valve and valve seat for scoring, scratches, clogging or damage.

Check the tip of the float valve, where it contacts the valve seat, for stepped wear or contamination.

A worn or contaminated valve does not seat properly and will eventually flood the carburetor.



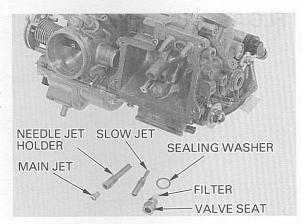
JETS/FILTER

Check each jet for wear or damage.

Clean the jets with non-flammable or high flash solvent and blow open with compressed air.

Check the filter for damage or clogging, and be sure the filter is securely installed onto the valve seat.

Clean the filter with low pressure compressed air.



FLOAT LEVEL

NOTE:

- Check the float level after checking the float valve, valve seat and float.
- Set the float level gauge so that it is perpendicular to the float chamber face at the highest point of the float.

Set the carburetor so that the float valve end just contacts the float arm lip. Be sure that the float valve tip is securely in contact with the valve seat. Measure the float level with the float level gauge.

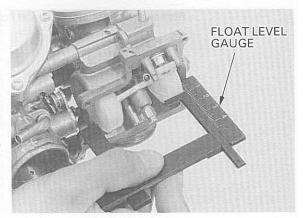
TOOL

Carburetor float level gauge

07401-0010000

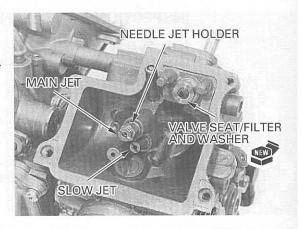
FLOAT LEVEL: 9.2 mm (0.36 in)

If the level is out of specification and the float arm lip can be bent, adjust the float level by carefully bending the lip.

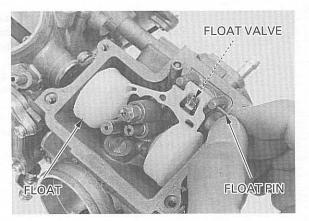


INSTALLATION

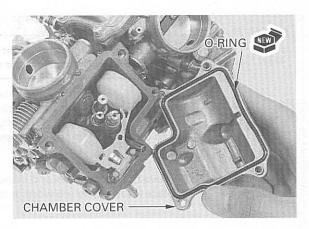
Install the needle jet holder, main jet and slow jet. Install the valve seat/filter with new sealing washer.



Hang the float valve onto the float arm lip. Install the float valve with the float in the carburetor body, then install the float pin through the body and float.



Install a new O-ring into the chamber cover groove. Install the chamber cover and tighten the four screws.



PILOT SCREW

REMOVAL

CAUTION:

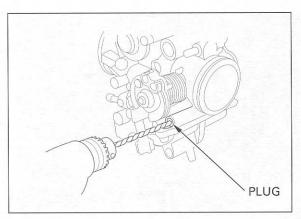
- Use extreme care when drilling into the pilot screw plug to avoid damaging the pilot screw.
- For proper pilot screw adjustment, both pilot screws must be replaced even if only one requires it.

NOTE:

- The pilot screws are factory pre-set and should not be removed unless the carburetors are overhauled.
- The pilot screw plugs are factory installed to prevent pilot screw misadjustment. Do not remove the plugs unless the pilot screws are being removed.
- Cover all openings with tape to keep particles out when the plugs are drilled.

Center punch the pilot screw plug to center the drill point.

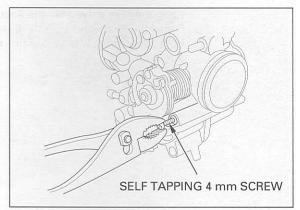
Drill through the plug with a 4 mm (5/32 in) drill bit. Attach a drill stop to the bit 3 mm (1/8 in) from the end to prevent drilling into the pilot screw.



Force the self-tapping 4 mm screw (H/C 069399, P/N 93903—35410) into the drilled plug and continue turning the screw driver until the plug rotates with the screw.

Pull out the screw head with pliers to remove the plug.

Use compressed air to clean the pilot screw area and remove metal shavings.

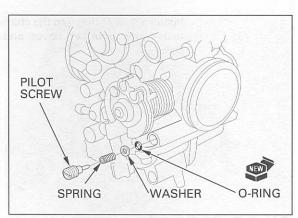


CAUTION:

Damage to the pilot screw seat will occur if the pilot screw is tighten against the seat.

Turn each pilot screw in and carefully count the number of turns until seats lightly. Make a note of this to use as a reference when reinstalling the pilot screw.

Remove the pilot screws and inspect them. Replace them if they are worn or damaged.



INSTALLATION

Install the pilot screws and return them to their original position as noted during removal.

Perform pilot screw adjustment if new pilot screws are installed.

NOTE:

Do not install new plugs in the pilot screw holes until after the new pilot screw adjustment has been made (page 5-19).

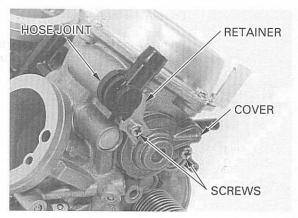
AIR CUT-OFF VALVE

REMOVAL

spring pressure. and spring.

The air cut-off Remove the two screws and retainer while holding cover is under the air cut-off valve cover, then remove the cover

Do not lose the Remove the diaphragm, O-ring and the sub-air spring and screws. cleaner hose joint.



INSPECTION

Visually check the following:

- -the diaphragm for deterioration or pin holes
- -the spring for deterioration
- -the needle of diaphragm for excessive wear at the tip
- -the orifice of the air vent for clogging or restriction
- -the O-ring for damage.

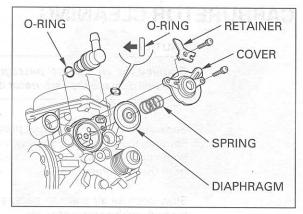
Blow open air passages in the cover with compressed air.

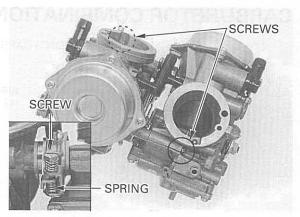
INSTALLATION

Install the removed parts in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE:

Install the O-ring with the flat side facing the carburetor body. Be sure that the diaphragm and Oring do not interfere with the cover.



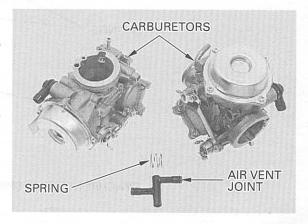


CARBURETOR SEPARATION

Loosen the synchronization screw until there is no tension and remove the spring.

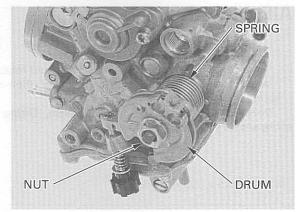
Remove the two connecting screws.

Carefully separate the carburetors then remove the thrust spring and air vent joint.



Loosen the throttle stop screw.

Remove the nut attaching the throttle drum and remove the throttle drum and return spring if necessary.



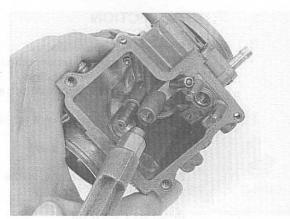
CARBURETOR CLEANING

CAUTION:

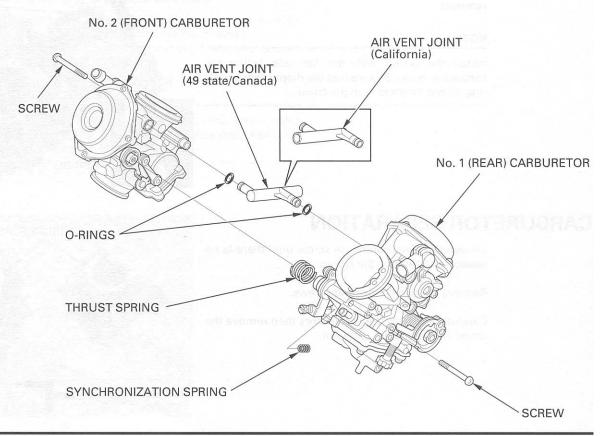
Cleaning the air and fuel passages with a piece of wire will damage the carburetor body.

Separate the carburetors (see previous page). Remove the all parts (diaphragm/vacuum chamber, float valve, all jets, pilot screw and air cut-off valve) from the carburetor.

Blow open all air and fuel passages in the carburetor body with compressed air.

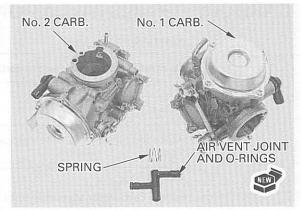


CARBURETOR COMBINATION



Coat new O-rings with oil and install them on the air vent joint pipe.

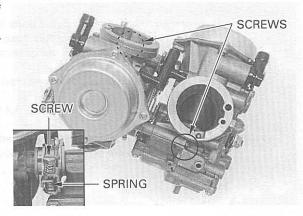
Assemble the No. 1 and No. 2 carburetors together with the air vent joint (Note the installation direction: see previous page) and thrust spring.



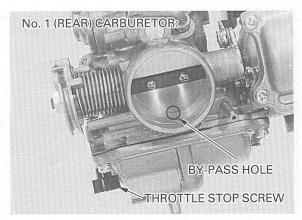
Be sure there is no clearance at the joint portion of the carburetor bodies.

Install and tighten the connecting screws alternately and gradually.

Install the synchronization spring.



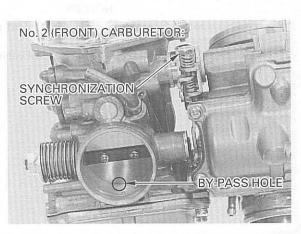
Turn the throttle stop screw to align the throttle valve with the edge of the outside by-pass hole in No. 1 (base) carburetor.



Align the No. 2 throttle valve with the outside bypass hole edge by turning the synchronization adjusting screw.

Check for throttle operation as described below:

- Open the throttle valves slightly by pressing the throttle linkage and be sure that it returns smoothly.
- Rotate the throttle drum and be sure that each throttle valve opens and closes smoothly.



CARBURETOR INSTALLATION

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the carburetor assembly.

NOTE:

Route the cables and tubes properly (page 1-35 or

Set the carburetor assembly onto the engine.

California type only:

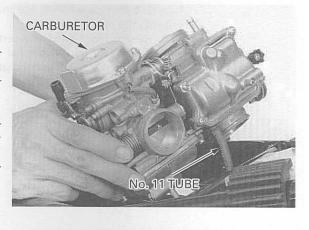
Connect the No. 11 tube to the carburetor.

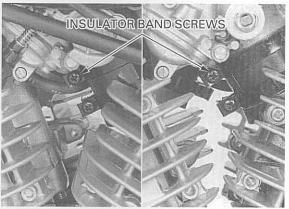
Install the carburetor outlet ports into the insulators by pressing the carburetor assembly against the upper surface of the insulator securely.

Tighten each insulator band screw alternately.

TORQUE: 2.0 N·m (0.2 kgf·m , 1.4 lbf·ft)

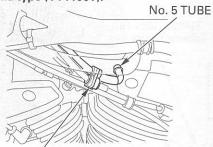
California type The tube numbers of the evaporative emission cononly: trol system are printed on all tubes.





Connect the No. 5 tube to the rear carburetor. Install the cable holder to the No. 5 tube and spark plug wire (VT1100T).

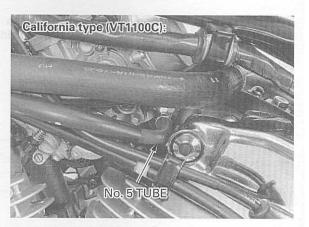
California type (VT1100T):

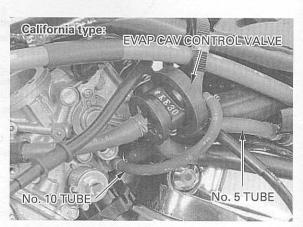


HOLDER

California type Connect the No. 5 and No. 10 tubes to the front only: carburetor.

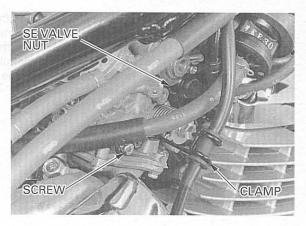
Install the EVAP CAV control valve to the stay.



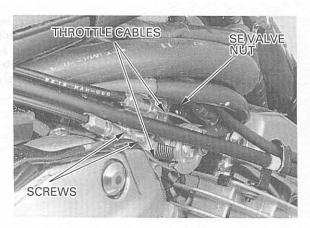


Thread the SE valves in by hand then tighten the SE valve nuts 1/4 turn with 14 mm wrench.

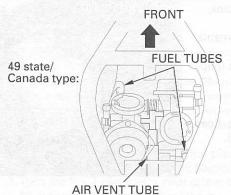
Install the spark plug wire clamp onto the carburetor with the screw.



Connect the choke cable (see above).
Install the throttle cable holder with the two screws.
Connect the throttle cables to the throttle drum.

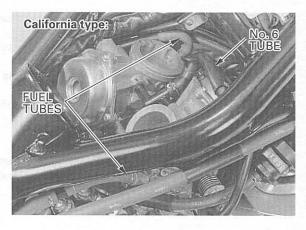


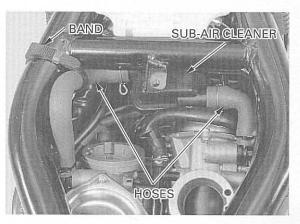
Connect the fuel tubes and air vent tube to (California: No. 6 tube) the carburetor.



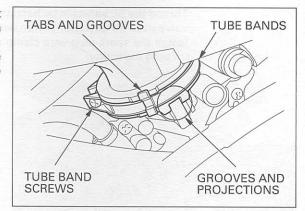
Connect the sub-air cleaner hoses to the carburetors.

Secure the left side hose with the hose band.



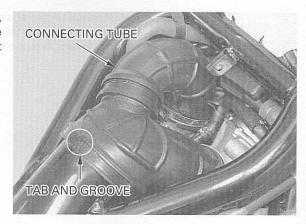


Install the connecting tube onto the carburetor inlet ports and frame opening by aligning the grooves in the tube with the projections on the carburetors. Be sure to align the tabs of the tube bands with the grooves in the connecting tube and tighten the three tube band screws.



If the connecting tube is not installed correctly, loosen the insulator band screws (page 5-16) at the carburetor side and tube band screws, and reset the carburetor and connecting tube.

Tighten all band screws alternately and gradually.



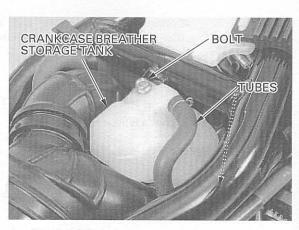
Install the crankcase breather storage tank with the bolt.

Connect the crankcase breather tubes to the tank.

Perform the following inspections and adjustments.

- Throttle operation (page 3-5).
- Carburetor synchronization and idle speed (page 3-12).
- Carburetor choke (page 3-7).

After the inspections and adjustment have been made, install the fuel tank and seat (section 2).



PILOT SCREW ADJUSTMENT

IDLE DROP PROCEDURE

NOTE:

- Make sure the carburetor synchronization is within specification before pilot screw adjustment
- The pilot screws are factory pre-set and no adjustment is necessary unless the pilot screws are replaced.
- Use tachometer with graduations of 50 rpm or smaller that will accurately indicate a 50 rpm change.
- Turn each pilot screw clockwise until it seats lightly, then back it out to the specification given.
 This is an initial setting prior to the final pilot screw adjustment.

INITIAL OPENING: VT1100C: 2 turns out VT1100T: 2-1/2 turns out

CAUTION:

Damage to the pilot screw seat will occur if the pilot screw is tighten against the seat.

- Warm up engine to operating temperature.Stop and go riding for 10 minutes is sufficient.
- 3. Attach the tachometer according to the tachometer manufacturer's instructions.
- Adjust the idle speed to the specified rpm with the throttle stop screw.

IDLE SPEED: $1,000 \pm 100 \text{ rpm}$

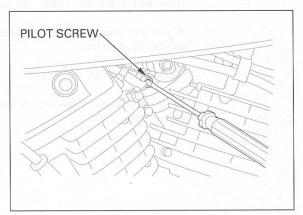
- 5. Turn each pilot screw 1/2 turn out from the initial setting.
- 6. If the engine speed increases by 50 rpm or more, turn each pilot screws out by successive 1/2 turn increments until engine speed does not increase.
- 7. Adjust the idle speed to the specified rpm with the throttle stop screw.
- 8. Turn the No. 1 (rear) carburetor pilot screw in until the engine speed drops by 50 rpm.
- Turn the No. 1 carburetor pilot screw 3/4 turn out from the position obtained in step 8.
 This is the final opening position.
- 10. Adjust the idle speed with the throttle stop screw.
- 11. Perform steps 8, 9 and 10 for the No. 2 (front) carburetor pilot screw.

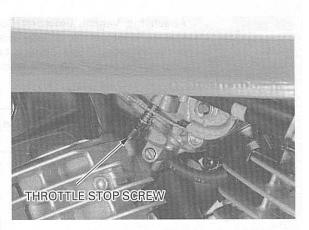
Drive new pilot screw plugs into the pilot screw bores with the special tool.

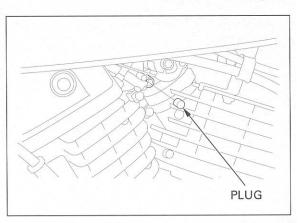
When fully seated, the plug surface will be recessed 1 mm.

TOOL:

Valve guide driver, 6. 6 mm 07942-6570100







HIGH ALTITUDE ADJUSTMENT

When the vehicle is to be operated continuously above 2,000 m (6,500 feet), the carburetor must be readjusted as described below to improve driveability and decrease exhaust emissions.

These adjustments must be made at high altitude to ensure proper high altitude operation.

Remove the each pilot screw plug (page 5-11).

be made at high Warm up the engine to operating temperature.

It it is a sufficient.

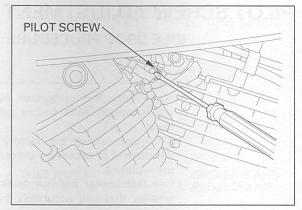
Turn each pilot screw to the High Altitude Setting specified below.



Adjust the idle speed to the specified rpm with the throttle stop screw.

IDLE SPEED: 1,000 ± 100 rpm

Drive new pilot screw plugs into the pilot screw bores (page 5-19).

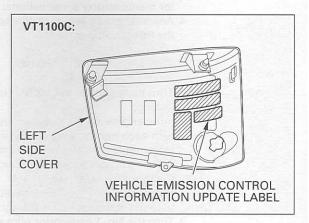


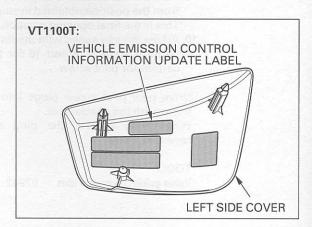


Attach the Vehicle Emission Control Information Update label on the reverse side of the left side cover as shown. See Service Letter No. 132 for information on obtaining the label.

NOTE:

Do not attach the label to any part that can be easily removed from the vehicle.





AWARNING

Sustained operation at an altitude lower than 1,500 m (5,000 feet) with the carburetor adjusted for high altitude may cause the engine to idle roughly and the engine stall in traffic. It may also cause engine damage due to over heating.

When the vehicle is to be operated continuously below 1,500 m (5,000 feet), remove each pilot screw plug (page 5-11) and turn each pilot screw to the Low Altitude Setting specified below (its original position).

LOW ALTITUDE SETTING: 1/2 turn out

Adjust the idle speed to the specified rpm (1,000 \pm 100 rpm).

Be sure to do these adjustments at low altitude with the engine at normal operating temperature.

Drive new pilot screw plugs into the pilot screw bores (page 5-19). Remove the Vehicle Emission Control Information Update label that is attached to the reverse side of the left side cover after adjusting for low altitude.

VEHICLE EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION UPDATE HONDA MOTOR CO.,LTD

THIS VEHICLE HAS BEEN ADJUSTED TO IMPROVE EMISSION CONTROL PERFORMANCE WHEN OPERATED AT HIGH ALTITUDE.

ALTITUDE PERFORMANCE ADJUSTMENT INSTRUCTIONS ARE AVAILABLE AT YOUR AUTHORIZED HONDA DEALER.

AIR CLEANER HOUSING

REMOVAL

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage or pinch the wire harness.

Remove the following:

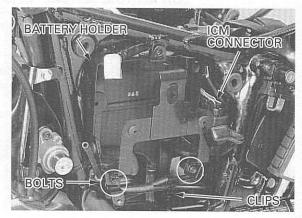
-battery (page 16-5).

-seat (page 2-2 or 2-3).

Remove the starter motor cable and ground cable from the clips on the battery holder.

Remove the two holder attaching bolts.

Remove the battery holder from the frame and disconnect the ignition control module (ICM) connector, being careful not to damage the frame.

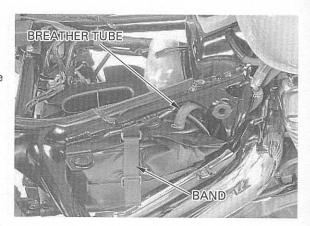


Remove the following:

- right side cover (page 2-4 or 2-5)

-swingarm (page 14-27)

Disconnect the crankcase breather tube from the air cleaner housing.
Remove the tool band.

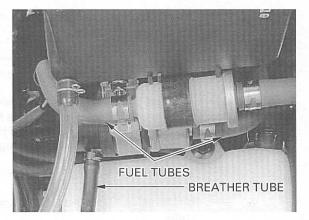


Disconnect the fuel pump connector 2P (Black) in the connector boot. Release the wire band.

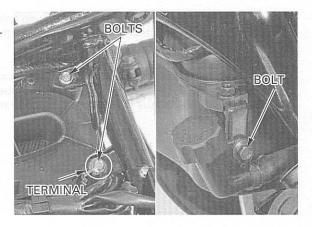


Remove the fuel pump breather tube from the frame clamp.

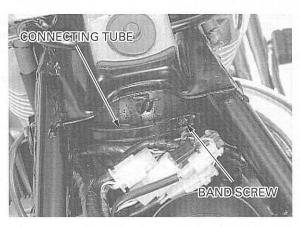
Disconnect the fuel tubes from the fuel filter and fuel pump.



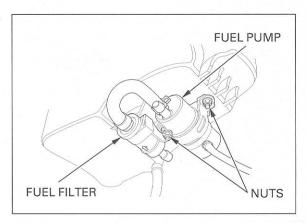
Remove the coolant filler neck bolt. Remove the two mounting bolts and ground terminal from the air cleaner housing.



Loosen the connecting tube band screw. Release the connecting tube from the frame opening and remove the air cleaner housing from the frame.



Remove the two nuts, and the fuel pump and filter as an assembly.



INSTALLATION

NOTE:

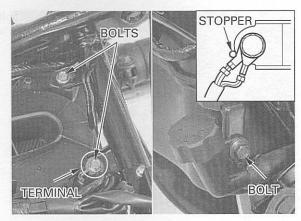
- Route the wires and tubes properly (page 1-35 or 1-54).
- If the connecting tube is removed from the air cleaner housing, apply a Honda Bond A or equivalent to the mating portion and install the tube by aligning the air cleaner housing groove with the tube tab.

Install the fuel pump and filter and tighten the two nuts.

Place the air cleaner housing into the frame and install the connecting tube over the frame opening securely.

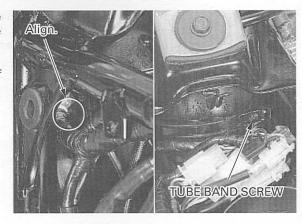
Install and tighten the mounting bolts with the ground terminal against the stopper.
Install the coolant filler neck with the bolt.





Be sure to align the groove in the connecting tube with the tab of the tube band and tighten the tube band screw.

Install the removed parts in the reverse order of removal.



EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM (California type only)

NOTE:

Refer to tubing diagram on page 1-53 or 1-67 for the tube connections.

EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CANISTER

REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

Remove the No. 2 tube from the radiator (between the radiator body and grill).

Disconnect the No. 1 and No. 4 tube from the EVAP canister.

Remove the two bolts and EVAP canister.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) PURGE CONTROL VALVE:

REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

Remove the EVAP purge control valve from the frame stay.

Disconnect the No. 11, No. 5 and No. 4 tube from their connections.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

INSPECTION

NOTE:

The EVAP purge control valve should be inspected if hot restart is difficult.

Remove the EVAP purge control valve (see above). Connect a vacuum pump to the No. 5 tube fitting (output port) that goes to the carburetors. Apply the specified vacuum to the EVAP purge control valve.

TOOL:

Vacuum/Pressure pump A937X-041-XXXXX or Vacuum pump ST-AH-260-MC7 (U. S. A. only)

SPECIFIED VACUUM: 250 mm Hg (9.8 in Hg)

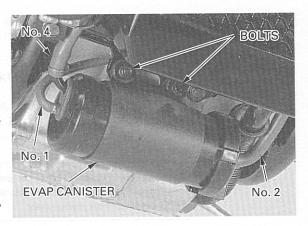
The specified vacuum should be maintained. Replace the EVAP purge control valve if vacuum is not maintained.

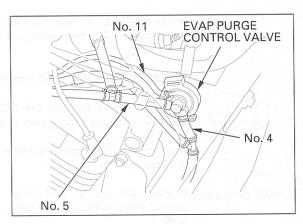
Remove the vacuum pump and connect it to the No. 11 tube fitting (vacuum port) goes to the rear carburetor.

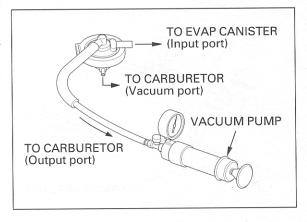
Apply the specified vacuum to the EVAP purge control valve.

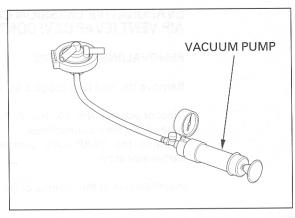
SPECIFIED VACUUM: 250 mm Hg (9.8 in Hg)

The specified vacuum should be maintained. Replace the EVAP purge control valve if vacuum is not maintained.









FUEL SYSYTEM

Connect a pressure pump to the No. 4 tube fitting (input port) goes to EVAP canister.

TOOL:

Vacuum/Pressure pump A

A937X-041-XXXXX

or

Pressure pump

ST-AH-255-MC7

(U.S.A. only)

CAUTION:

Damage to the EVAP purge control valve may result from use of a high pressure air source. Use a hand-operated air pump only.

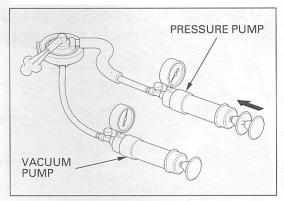
While applying the specified vacuum to the EVAP purge control valve vacuum port, pump air through the input port.

SPECIFIED VACUUM: 250 mm Hg (9.8 in Hg)

Air should flow through the EVAP purge control valve and out the output port that goes to the carburetors.

Replace the EVAP purge control valve if air does not flow out.

Remove the pumps and install the EVAP purge control valve in the reverse order of removal (page 5-25).



EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CARBURETOR AIR VENT (EVAP CAV) CONTROL VALVE

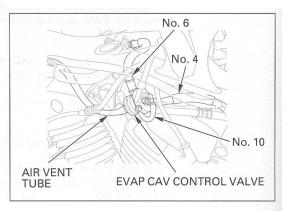
REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

Remove the fuel tank (page 2-6).

Disconnect the No. 10, No. 6, No. 4 and air vent tubes from their connections.

Remove the EVAP CAV control valve from the carburetor stay.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.



INSPECTION

NOTE:

The EVAP CAV control valve should be inspected if hot restart is difficult.

Remove the EVAP CAV control valve (see previous page).

Connect a vacuum pump to the No. 10 tube fitting (vacuum port) that goes to the front carburetor. Apply the specified vacuum to the EVAP CAV control valve.

TOOL:

Vacuum/Pressure pump A937X-041-XXXXX or Vacuum pump

ST-AH-260-MC7 (U.S.A. only)

SPECIFIED VACUUM: 250 mm Hg (9.8 in Hg)

The specified vacuum should be maintained. Replace the EVAP CAV control valve if vacuum is not maintained.

Remove the vacuum pump and connect it to the air vent tube fitting goes to open air.

Apply vacuum to the EVAP CAV control valve. The vacuum should hold steady.

Replace the EVAP CAV control valve if vacuum leaks.

Remove the vacuum pump and reconnect it to the No. 10 tube fitting (vacuum port).

Connect the pressure pump to the air vent tube fitting (open air port).

TOOL:

A937X-041-XXXXX Vacuum/Pressure pump or Pressure pump

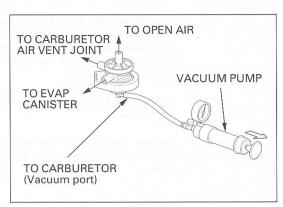
ST-AH-255-MC7 (U.S.A. only)

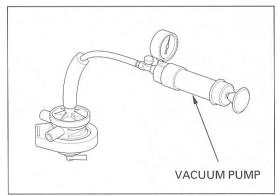
CAUTION:

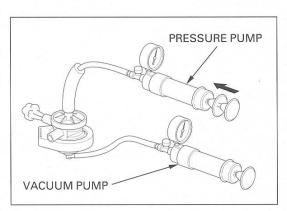
Damage to the EVAP CAV control valve may result from use of a high pressure air source. Use a handoperated air pump only.

While applying vacuum to the EVAP CAV control valve vacuum port, pump air through the open air port.

Air should flow through the EVAP CAV control valve and out the air vent port that goes to the carburetor air vent joint.





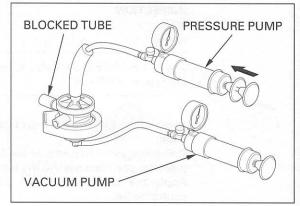


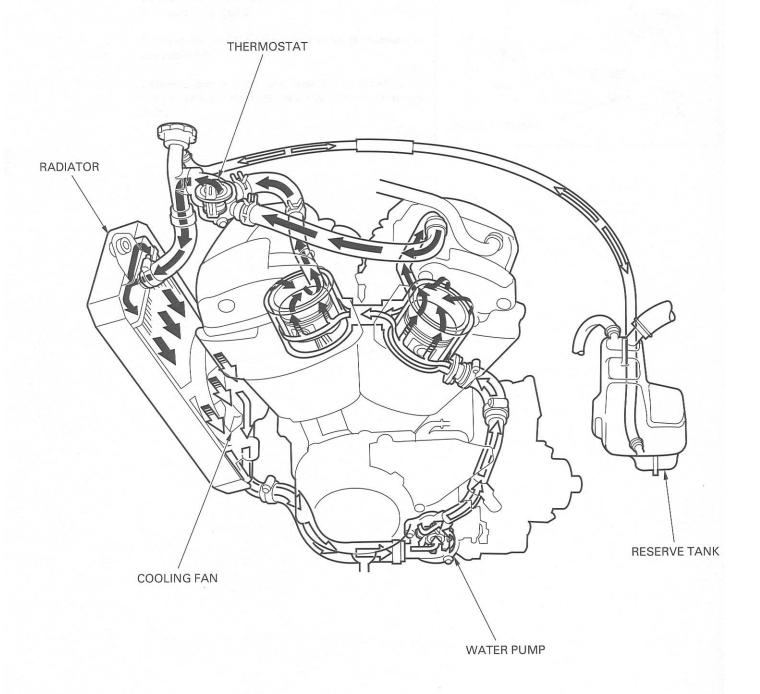
Plug the air vent port (No. 6 tube fitting) that goes to the carburetor air vent joint.

While applying vacuum to the vacuum port, apply air pressure to the open air port. It should hold steady.

Replace the EVAP CAV control valve if pressure is not retained.

Remove the pumps and install the EVAP CAV control valve in the reverse order of removal (page 5-26).





7100

6. COOLING SYSTEM

SERVICE INFORMATION	6-1	THERMOSTAT	6-6
TROUBLESHOOTING	6-2	RADIATOR/COOLING FAN	6-9
SYSTEM TESTING	6-3	WATER PUMP	6-11
COOLANT REPLACEMENT	6-4	RADIATOR RESERVE TANK	6-13

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

▲WARNING

- Wait until the engine is cool before slowly removing the radiator cap. Removing the cap while the engine is hot and the coolant is under pressure may cause serious scalding.
- Radiator coolant is toxic. Keep it away from eyes, mouth, skin and clothes.
 - If any coolant gets in your eyes, rinse them with water and consult a doctor immediately.
 - If any coolant is swallowed, induce vomiting, gargle and consult a physician immediately.
 - If any coolant gets on your skin or clothes, rinse thoroughly with plenty of water.
- KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

CAUTION:

Using coolant with silicate corrosion inhibitors may cause premature wear of water pump seals or blockage of radiator passages. Using tap water may cause engine damage.

- Add coolant at the reserve tank. Do not remove the radiator cap except to refill or drain the system.
- All cooling system service can be done with the engine in the frame.
- Avoid spilling coolant on painted surfaces.
- After servicing the system, check for leaks with a cooling system tester.
- Refer to section 19 for fan motor switch and thermosensor information.

SPECIFICATIONS

ITEM		SPECIFICATIONS			
Coolant capacity radiator and e		2.0 g (2.1 US qt , 1.8 lmp qt)			
	reserve tank	0.39 l (0.41 US qt , 0.34 lmp qt)			
Radiator cap relief pressure		108-137 kPa (1.1-1.4 kgf/cm ² , 16-20 psi)			
Thermostat	begins to open	80 - 84 °C (176 - 183 °F)			
	fully open	95 °C (203 °F)			
	valve lift	8 mm (0.3 in) minimum			
Recommended antifreeze		Pro Honda HP coolant or an equivalent high quality ethylene glycol antifreeze containing silicate-free corrosion inhibitors			

TORQUE VALUES

 $\begin{array}{lll} \mbox{Coolant drain bolt} & \mbox{13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)} \\ \mbox{Water pump assembly bolt} & \mbox{13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)} \\ \mbox{Water pump mounting bolt} & \mbox{12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)} \\ \end{array}$

Fan motor switch 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft) (page 19-12)

Thermosensor 8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m , 6.5 lbf·ft) Apply sealant to the threads.

(Do not apply sealant to the sensor head.) (page 19-16)

TROUBLESHOOTING

Engine temperature too high

- Faulty temperature unit (indicator) or thermosensor
- Thermostat stuck closed
- Faulty radiator cap
- Insufficient coolant
- Passages blocked in radiator, hoses or water jacket
- Air in system
- Faulty cooling fan motor
- Faulty fan motor switch
- Faulty water pump

Coolant leaks

- Faulty pump mechanical seal
- Deteriorated O-rings
- Faulty radiator cap
- Damaged or deteriorated cylinder gasket
- Loose hose connection or clamp
- Damaged or deteriorated hoses

SYSTEM TESTING

▲WARNING

The engine must be cool before removing the radiator cap, or severe scalding may result.

COOLANT (HYDROMETER TEST)

Remove the right steering cover (page 2-6).

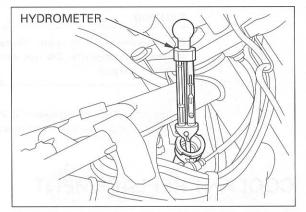
Remove the radiator cap.

Test the coolant mixture with a hydrometer (see below for "Coolant specific gravity chart").

For maximum corrosion protection, a 50-50 solution of ethylene glycol and distilled water is recommended (page 6-4).

Lock for contamination and replace the coolant if necessary.





Coolant specific gravity chart

Coolant temperature °C (°F)	Description of		244				Let a UNES				
	0	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Coolant ratio %	(32)	(41)	(50)	(59)	(68)	(77)	(86)	(95)	(104)	(113)	(122)
5	1.009	1.009	1.008	1.008	1.007	1.066	1.005	1.003	1.001	0.999	0.997
10	1.018	1.017	1.017	1.016	1.015	1.014	1.013	1.011	1.009	1.007	1.005
15	1.028	1.027	1.026	1.025	1.024	1.022	1.020	1.018	1.016	1.014	1.012
20	1.036	1.035	1.034	1.033	1.031	1.029	1.027	1.025	1.023	1.021	1.019
25	1.045	1.044	1.043	1.042	1.040	1.038	1.036	1.034	1.031	1.028	1.025
30	1.053	1.052	1.051	1.049	1.047	1.045	1.043	1.041	1.038	1.035	1.032
35	1.063	1.062	1.060	1.058	1.056	1.054	1.052	1.049	1.046	1.043	1.040
40	1.072	1.070	1.068	1.066	1.064	1.062	1.059	1.056	1.053	1.050	1.047
45	1.080	1.078	1.076	1.074	1.072	1.069	1.066	1.063	1.060	1.057	1.054
50	1.086	1.084	1.082	1.080	1.077	1.074	1.071	1.068	1.065	1.062	1.059
55	1.095	1.093	1.091	1.088	1.085	1.082	1.079	1.076	1.073	1.070	1.067
60	1.100	1.098	1.095	1.092	1.089	1.086	1.083	1.080	1.077	1.074	1.071

RADIATOR CAP/SYSTEM PRESSURE INSPECTION

Remove the radiator cap (see previous page).

Before installing the cap in the tester, wet the sealing surfaces. Pressure test the radiator cap. Replace the radiator cap if it does not hold pressure, or if relief pressure is too high or too low. It must hold specified pressure for at least 6 seconds.

RADIATOR CAP RELIEF PRESSURE:

108-137 kPa (1.1-1.4 kgf/cm², 16-20 psi)

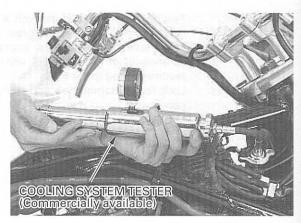
Pressure test the radiator, engine and hoses, and check for leaks.

CAUTION:

Excessive pressure can damage the cooling system components. Do not exceed 137 kPa (1.4 kgf/cm², 20 psi).

Repair or replace components if the system will not hold specified pressure for at least 6 seconds.





COOLANT REPLACEMENT

PREPARATION

AWARNING

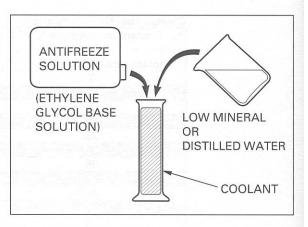
- Radiator coolant is toxic. Keep it away from eyes, mouth, skin and clothes.
 - If any coolant gets in your eyes, rinse them with water and consult a doctor immediately.
 - If any coolant is swallowed, induce vomiting, gargle and consult a physician immediately.
 - If any coolant gets on your skin or clothes, rinse thoroughly with plenty of water.
- KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

CAUTION:

Using coolant with silicate corrosion inhibitors may cause premature wear of water pump seals or blockage of radiator passages. Using tap water may cause engine damage.

NOTE:

- The effectiveness of coolant decreases with the accumulation of rust or if there is a change in the mixing proportion during usage. Therefore, for best performance change the coolant regularly as specified in the maintenance schedule.
- Mix only distilled, low mineral water with the antifreeze.



RECOMMENDED ANTIFREEZE:

Pro Honda HP coolant or an equivalent high quality ethylene glycol antifreeze containing silicate-free corrosion inhibitors

RECOMMENDED MIXTURE:

50-50 (Distilled water and recommended antifreeze)

REPLACEMENT/AIR BLEEDING

▲WARNING

The engine must be cool before servicing the cooling system, or severe scalding may result.



NOTE:

When filling the system or reserve tank with a coolant (checking the coolant level), place the motorcycle in a vertical position on a flat, level surface.

Remove the right steering side cover (page 2-6).

Remove the radiator cap.

Remove the drain bolt on the water pump and drain the system coolant.

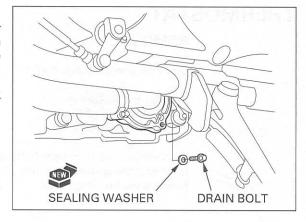
Reinstall the drain bolt with a new sealing washer.

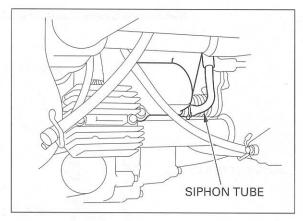
Place a suitable container under the siphon tube joint of the reserve tank.

Disconnect the siphon tube from the reserve tank and drain the reserve coolant.

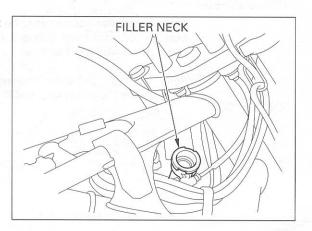
Empty the coolant and rinse the inside of the reserve tank with water.

Reconnect the siphon tube.





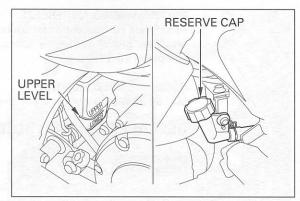
Fill the system with the recommended coolant through the filler opening up to the filler neck.



Remove the reserve cap and fill the reserve tank to the upper level line.

Bleed air from the system as follows:

- Shift the transmission into neutral.
 Start the engine and let it idle for 2-3 minutes.
- 2. Snap the throttle 3-4 times to bleed air from the system.
- 3. Stop the engine and add coolant up to the proper level if necessary. Reinstall the radiator cap.
- 4. Check the level of coolant in the reserve tank and fill to the upper level if it is low.



THERMOSTAT

REMOVAL

Drain the coolant (page 6-4).

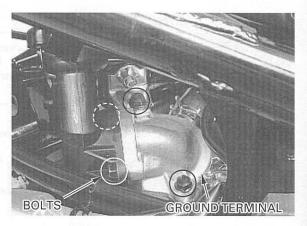
Remove the following:

- -fuel tank (page 2-6)
- -ignition coils (page 17-7)

Remove the two filler neck bolts and housing cover bolts with the ground terminal.

Remove the housing cover.

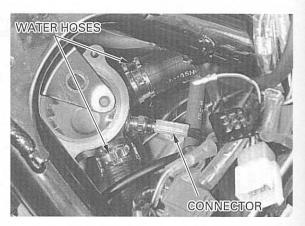
Remove the thermostat from the housing.





If the thermostat housing is to be removed, disconnect the thermosensor connector and remove the water hoses from the housing.

Refer to page 19-15 for thermosensor (Coolant temperature indicator) information.



INSPECTION

▲WARNING

- Wear insulated gloves and adequate eye protection.
- Keep flammable materials away from the electric heating element.

Visually inspect the thermostat for damage.

Heat the water with an electric heating element to operating temperature for 5 minutes. Suspend the thermostat in heated water to check its operation.

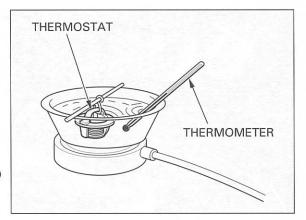
NOTE:

Do not let the thermostat or thermometer touch the pan, or you will get false readings.

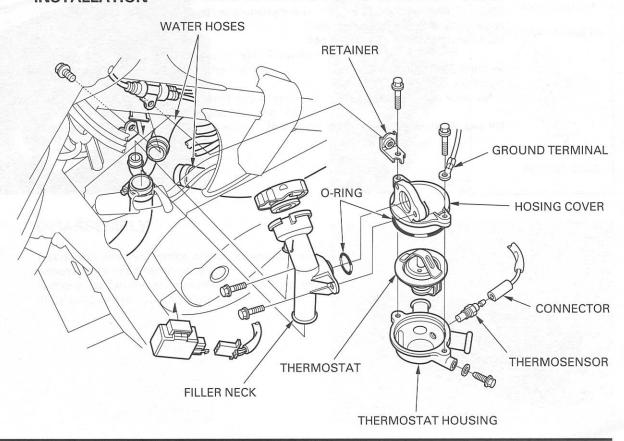
Replace the thermostat if the valve stays open at room temperature, or if it responds at temperatures other than those specified.

Thermostat begins to open: 80 – 84 °C (176 – 183 °F) valve lift: 8 mm (0.3 in) minimum

at 95 °C (203 °F)

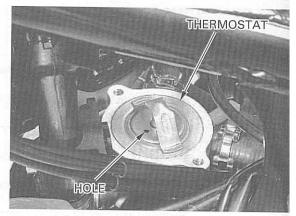


INSTALLATION



Install the thermostat into the housing with its hole facing the front side.

Align the thermostat flange with the groove of the housing upper surface. Make sure the thermostat is securely installed.



Install new O-rings on the thermostat housing cover and filler neck.



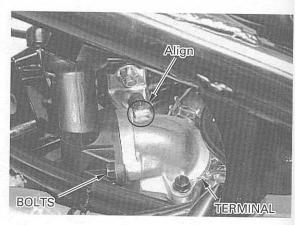
Install the thermostat housing cover by aligning the cover groove with retainer tab and tighten the cover bolts with the ground terminal.

Install and tighten the filler neck bolt.

Install the following:

- -ignition coil (page 17-7)
- -fuel tank and seat (section 2)

Fill and bleed the cooling system (page 6-4).



RADIATOR/COOLING FAN

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the radiator fins while servicing the radiator and fan.

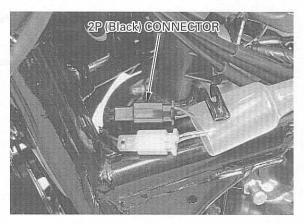
REMOVAL

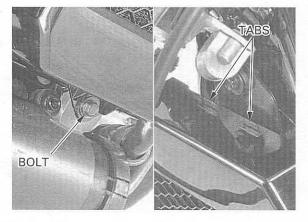
Drain the coolant (page 6-4). Remove the left steering side cover (page 2-6).

Disconnect the fan motor switch connector.

Remove the radiator grill bolt from the radiator bottom.

Slide the grill upward and remove the grill from the radiator tabs.

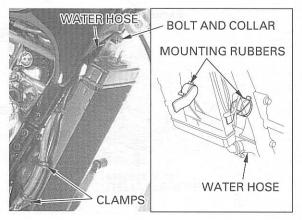




Remove the No. 4 tube (California only), horn and rear brake light switch wires from the clamps on the radiator.

Disconnect the lower radiator hose from the water pump and the upper hose from the radiator.

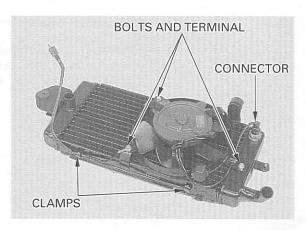
Remove the radiator mounting bolt and collar then remove the radiator by releasing the lower mounting rubbers from the frame stays.



DISASSEMBLY

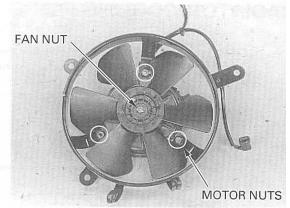
Disconnect the fan motor switch connector and remove the wires from the clamps.

Remove the fan motor assembly by removing the three bolts and the ground terminal.

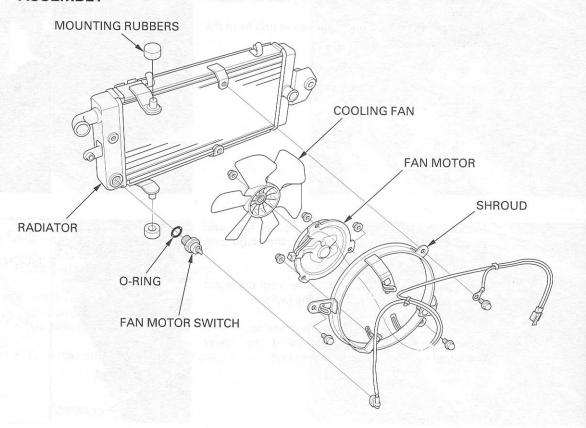


Remove the nut and the cooling fan. Remove the nuts and fan motor.

For fan motor switch information, refer to page 19-12.

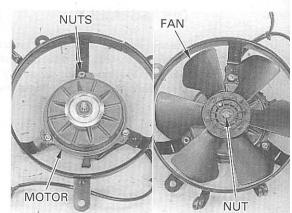


ASSEMBLY



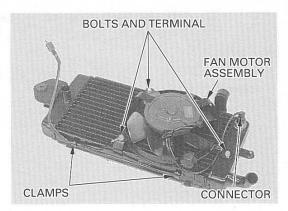
Install the fan motor onto the shroud and tighten the nuts.

Install the cooling fan onto the motor shaft by aligning the flat surfaces. Tighten the fan nut.



Install the fan motor assembly onto the radiator and tighten the mounting bolts with the ground terminal.

Route the wires properly, clamp the wires and connect the switch connector.



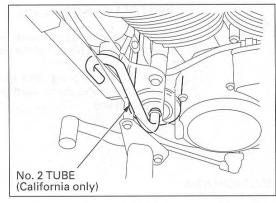
INSTALLATION

Install the radiator in the reverse order of removal.

only:

California type After installing the radiator, insert the No. 2 tube between the radiator body and grill. Make sure the No. 2 tube is not bent or clogged.

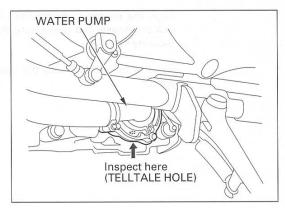
Fill and bleed the cooling system (page 6-4).



WATER PUMP

MECHANICAL SEAL INSPECTION

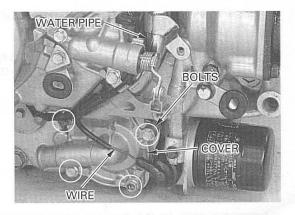
Inspect the telltale hole for signs of coolant leakage. If there is leakage, the mechanical seal is defective and replace the water pump as an assembly.



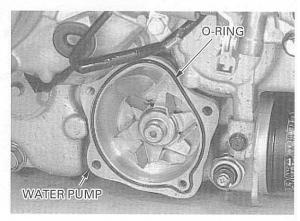
REMOVAL

Remove the engine from the frame (section 7).

Remove the water pipe from the pump. Disconnect the oil pressure switch wire. Remove the four bolts and water pump cover.



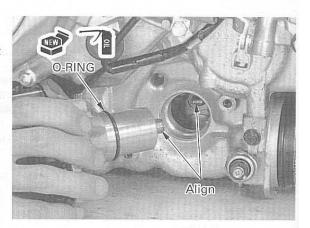
Remove the O-ring and water pump from the crankcase.



INSTALLATION

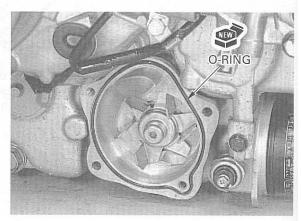
Apply the engine oil to a new O-ring and install it onto the stepped portion of the water pump.

Install the water pump into the crankcase while aligning the water pump shaft groove with the oil pump shaft end.



Align the mounting bolt holes in the water pump and crankcase and make sure the water pump is securely installed.

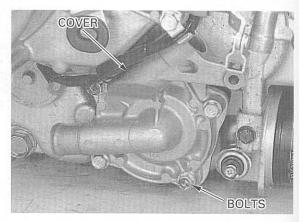
Install a new O-ring into the groove in the water pump.



Install the water pump cover and tighten the four bolts.

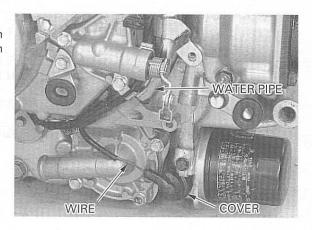
TORQUE: Cover bolt: 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)

Mounting bolt: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)



Install the water pipe with a new O-ring. Connect the oil pressure switch wire to the switch and install the terminal cover over the switch securely.

Install the engine in the frame (section 7).



RADIATOR RESERVE TANK

REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

Remove the swingarm (page 14-27). Drain the coolant from the reserve tank (page 6-5). Remove the right side cover (page 2-3). Remove the fuel pump breather tube from the frame clamp.

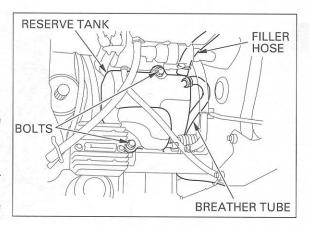
Remove the two mounting bolts.

Disconnect the filler tube and remove the breather tube from the frame clamp.

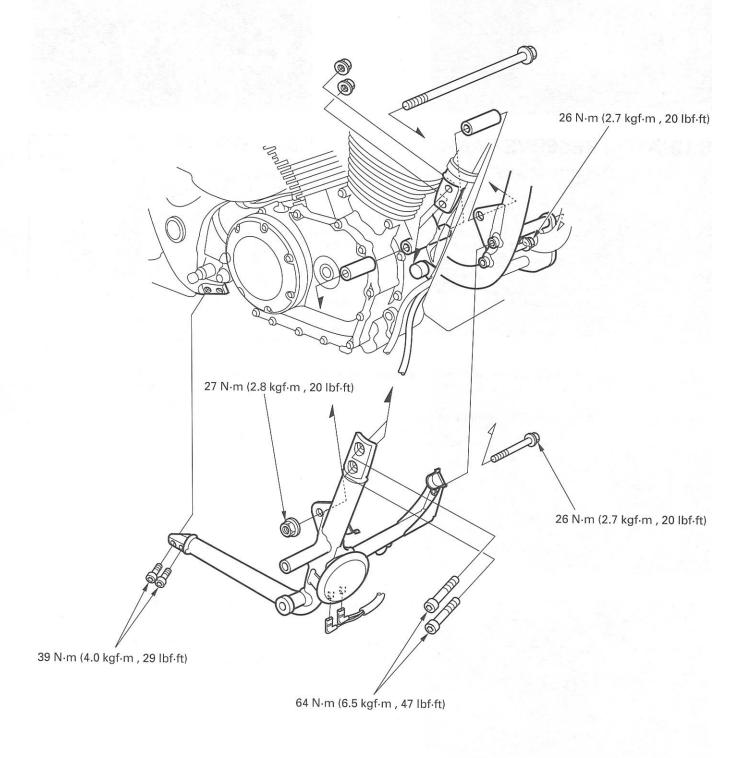
Remove the reserve tank out of the frame to the rear.

Install the removed parts in the reverse order of removal.

Fill the tank with coolant (page 6-4).



VT1100C (Sub-frame):

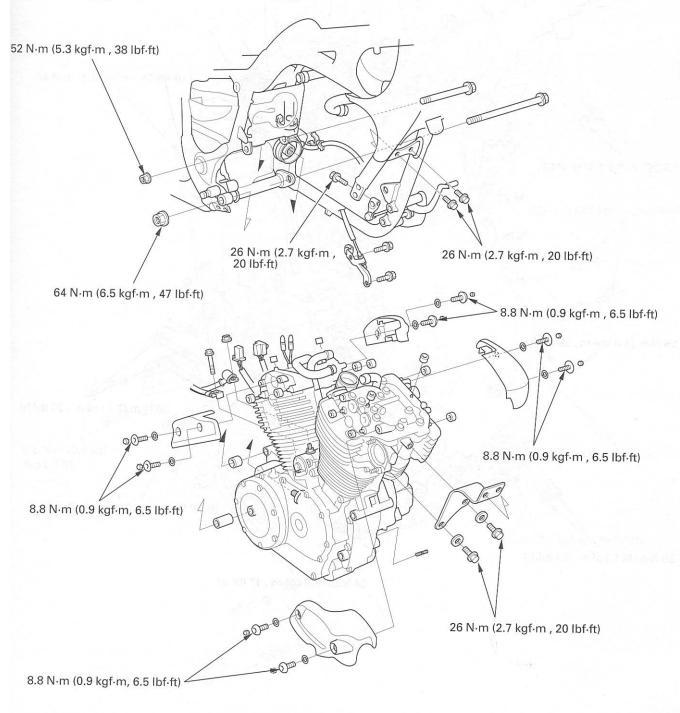


7

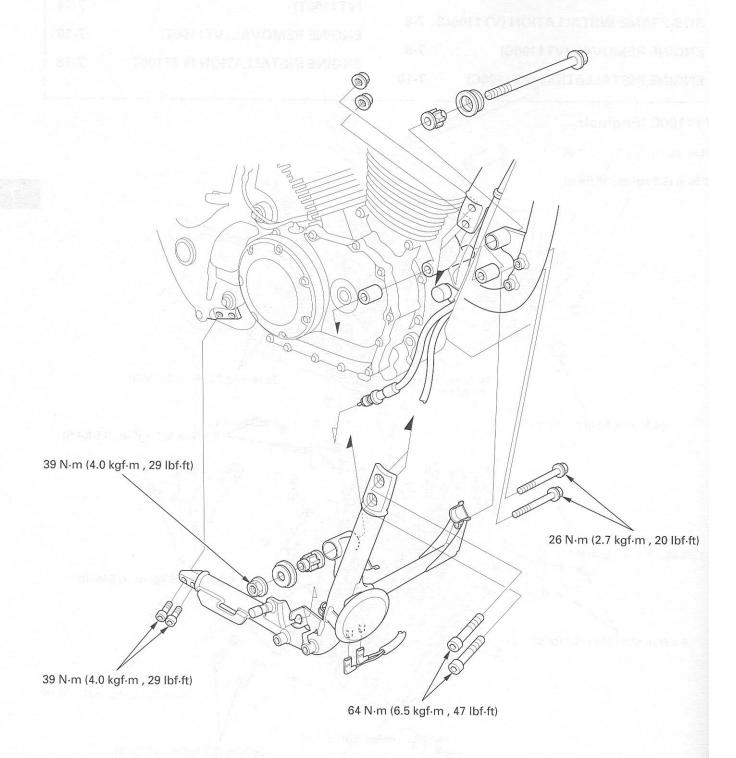
7. ENGINE REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

SERVICE INFORMATION	7-4	SUB-FRAME REMOVAL (VT1100T)	7-13
SUB-FRAME REMOVAL (VT1100C)	7-5	SUB-FRAME INSTALLATION	
SUB-FRAME INSTALLATION (VT1100C)	7-6	(VT1100T)	7-14
ENGINE REMOVAL (VT1100C)	7-8	ENGINE REMOVAL (VT1100T)	7-16
ENGINE INSTALLATION (VT1100C)	7-10	ENGINE INSTALLATION (VT1100T)	7-18

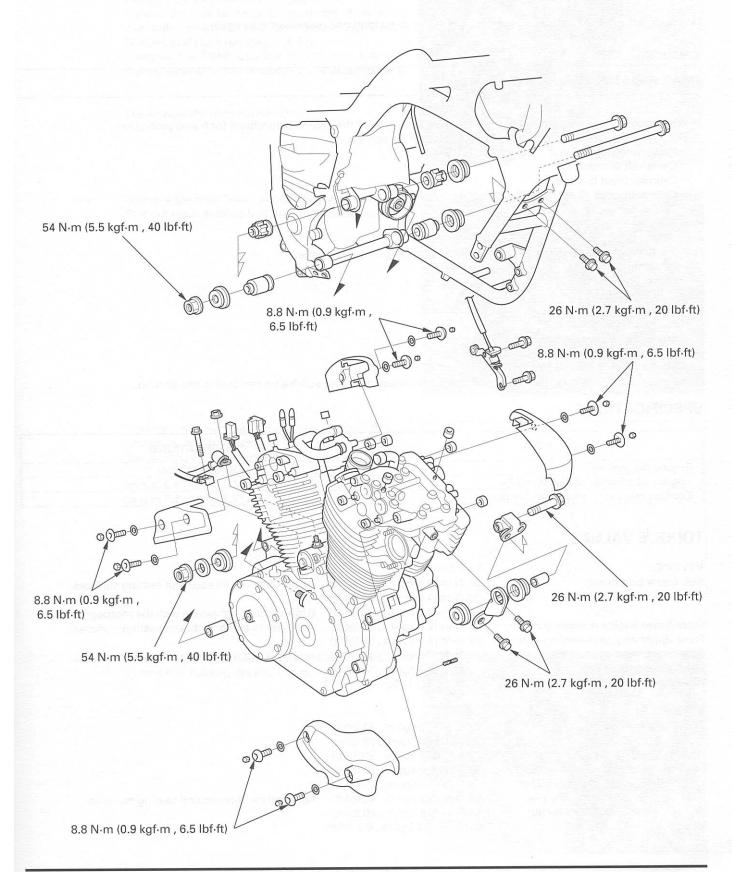
VT1100C (Engine):



VT1100T (Sub-frame):



VT1100T (Engine):



SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

• A floor jack or other adjustable support is required to support and maneuver the engine.

CAUTION:

Do not support the engine using the oil filter.

- When removing/installing the engine, tape the frame around the engine beforehand for frame protection.
- The following components require engine removal for service.
 - -Water pump (Section 6)
- -Camshaft (Section 8)
- -Cylinder head (Section 8)
- -Cylinder/piston (Section 9)
- -Crankshaft (Section 11)
- -Transmission/gearshift drum/shift fork (Section 11)
- -Output gear case (Section 11)
- The following components can be serviced with the engine in the frame.
- -Oil pump (Section 4)
- -Carburetor (Section 5)
- -Clutch (Section 10)
- -Gearshift linkage (Section 10)
- -Alternator (Section 16)
- Starter clutch/flywheel (Section 18)
- -Ignition pulse generator (Section 17)
- -Starter motor (Section 18)

However, the clutch outer, oil pump and gearshift linkage requiring sub-frame removal in this section.

SPECIFICATIONS

ITEM	SPECIFICATIONS
Engine dry weight	96 kg (212 lbs)
Engine oil capacity at disassembly	3.8 l (4.0 US gt , 3.3 Imp gt)
Coolant capacity (radiator and engine)	2.0 l (2.1 US qt , 1.8 Imp qt)

TORQUE VALUES

VT1100C:

Sub-frame bolt (front)	64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surfaces.
(rear)	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)	# Y triad 6 0 m
(left)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	(Upper bolt is tightening with the footpeg)
Front lower engine mounting nut	27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surfaces.
Front upper engine mounting bolt	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
Rear lower engine mounting nut	64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surfaces.
Rear upper engine mounting nut	52 N·m (5.3 kgf·m , 38 lbf·ft)	
Head cover shroud bolt	8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m , 6.5 lbf·ft)	

VT1100T:

Sub-frame bolt (front)

Head cover shroud bolt

(rear)	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)	
(left)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)	
Front lower engine mounting nut	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft)	
Front upper engine mounting bolt	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)	
Rear lower engine mounting nut	54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m , 40 lbf·ft)	Apply oil the threads and seating surfaces.
Rear upper engine mounting nut	54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m , 40 lbf·ft)	

8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m , 6.5 lbf·ft)

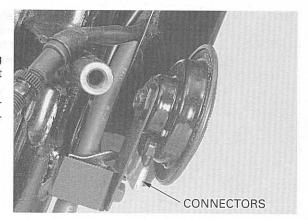
64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)

SUB-FRAME REMOVAL (VT1100C)

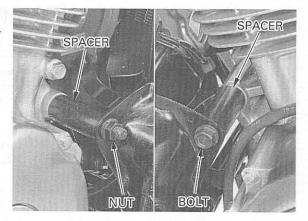
Remove the exhaust system (page 2-9). Loosen the rear brake pedal assembly. If replacing the sub-frame, remove the pedal, right front footpeg and push rod (page 14-23).

Remove the EVAP canister if replacing the subframe; otherwise just disconnect the tubes (page 5-25).

Disconnect the horn connectors.

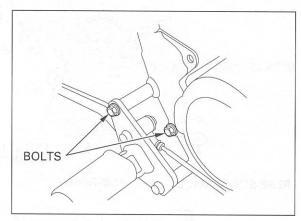


Remove the front lower engine mounting nut.
Pull out the mounting bolt then remove the spacers.

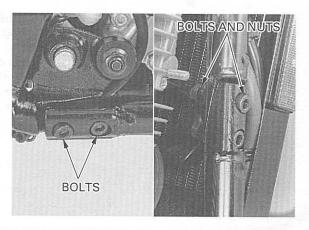


Remove the left sub-frame bolt (upper bolt is attached with the footpeg).

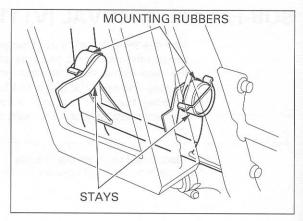
Loosen the left sub-frame bolt on the down tube.



Remove the front and rear sub-frame bolts and nuts while holding the sub-frame.



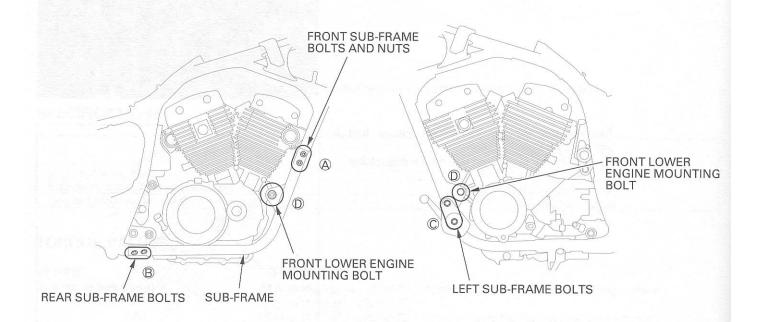
Remove the sub-frame while carefully releasing the radiator mounting stays of the sub-frame from the radiator lower mounting rubbers by slightly pulling down the front side of the sub-frame.



SUB-FRAME INSTALLATION (VT1100C)

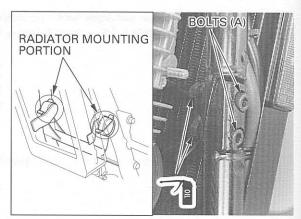
CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the frame and radiator.



Set the sub-frame onto the frame while carefully aligning the radiator mounting stays with the radiator lower mounting rubbers.

Be sure to align the radiator mounting portions, and all sub-frame connecting portions and temporarily install the front sub-frame bolts (A) [upper: long/lower: short] while holding the sub-frame in place.



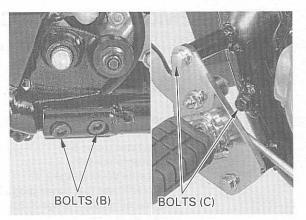
CAUTION:

Be careful not to cross-thread the sub-frame bolts.

Temporarily install the rear sub-frame bolts (B) by threading the ends slightly.

Temporarily install the left sub-frame bolts (C) by threading the ends slightly.

Apply oil to the threads of the front sub-frame nuts (A) and loosely install them.



SPACER

Insert the front lower engine mounting bolt (D) through the frame and engine with the spacers by aligning the bolt holes. Apply oil to the threads of the nut (D) and loosely install it.

Tighten the all bolts and nuts alternately and gradually until seating the bolts and nuts, and tighten them to the specified torque.

TORQUE:

Front lower engine mounting nut:

27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft) Apply oil to the

threads and seating

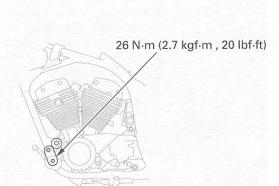
surface.

Sub-frame bolt (front): 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)

Apply oil to the threads and

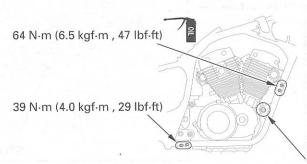
seating surface.

(rear): 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft) (left): 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)



27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

BOLT (D)



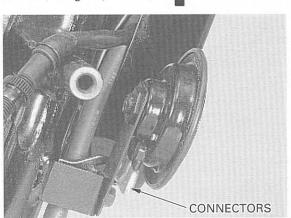
Connect the horn wires.

Install the removed/loosend parts:

- -EVAP canister (page 5-25)
- rear brake pedal, right front footpeg and push rod (page 14-24)
- exhaust system (page 2-9)

Connect the starter motor and ground cables, if removed.

Perform the rear brake light switch adjustment (page 3-20).





ENGINE REMOVAL (VT1100C)

Drain the engine oil (page 3-11) and coolant (page 6-4).

Support the motorcycle securely.

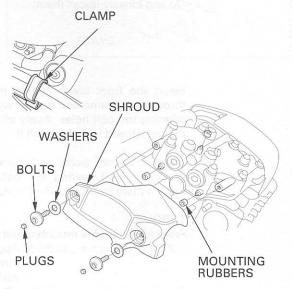
Remove the following:

- -battery holder (page 5-22)
- -carburetor (page 5-4)
- -radiator (page 6-9)
- right side cover (page 2-4)
- -left crankcase rear cover (page 2-15)
- -engine oil dipstick (page 3-10)
- -spark plug caps
- -sub-frame (page 7-5)
- right side lower cover (page 2-4)

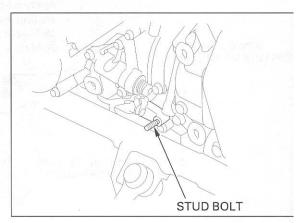
Remove the cable clamp from the rear cylinder head fin by removing the screw.

Remove the rubber plugs from the shroud bolt heads and remove the shroud bolts with the washers and the head cover shrouds.

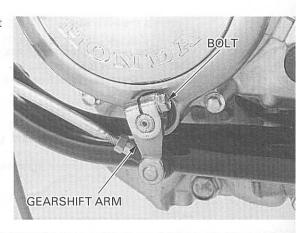
Remove the twelve mounting rubbers from each cylinder head.



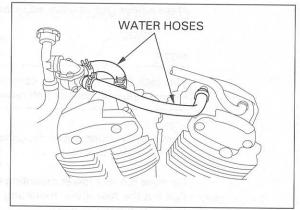
Remove the stud bolt from the water pump cover to prevent damaging its threads. To remove the stud, thread two nuts onto the stud, tighten them together, and use a wrench on them to turn the stud bolt out.



Remove the bolt and gearshift arm from the shift spindle.



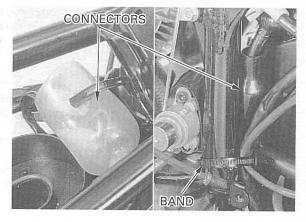
Disconnect the water hoses from the cylinder head covers.



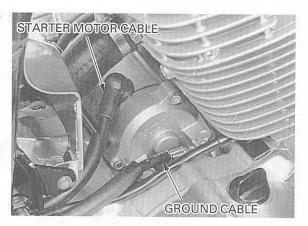
Release the wire band.

Disconnect the ignition pulse generator (2P White) and alternator (3P White) connectors.

Disconnect the oil pressure switch and neutral switch connectors.



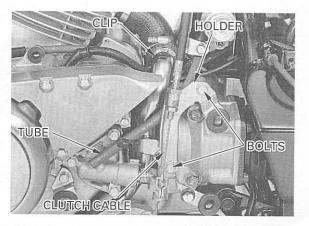
Remove the bolt and nut and disconnect the starter motor and ground cables.



Disconnect the clutch cable and remove the cable holder bolts, and holder.

Remove the carburetor air vent tube (California: EVAP CAV control valve air vent tube) from the clamp.

California type Remove tube clip from the water pipe and No. 1 only: tube.



Place a floor jack or other adjustable support under the engine.

NOTE:

The jack height must be continually adjusted to relieve stress for ease of bolt removal.

Remove the front upper mounting bolts, washers and mounting bracket.

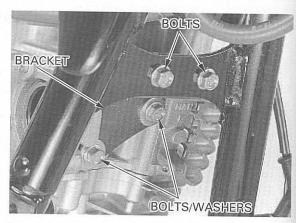
Remove the rear lower mounting nut. Pull out the rear lower mounting bolt to remove it, then remove the spacer.

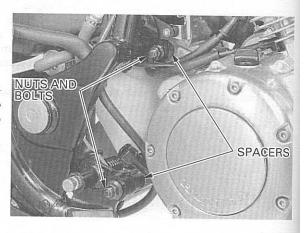
Remove the rear upper mounting nut. Pull out the rear upper mounting bolt to remove it, then remove the spacer.

CAUTION:

During engine assembly removal, hold the engine securely and be careful not to damage the frame and engine.

Remove the engine from the frame by releasing the output driven gear shaft from the universal joint in the swingarm.

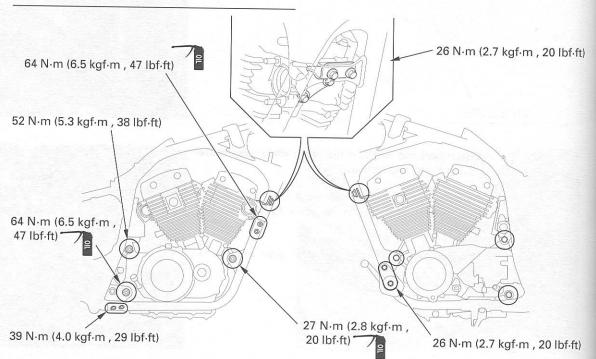




ENGINE INSTALLATION (VT1100C)

NOTE:

Before installing the engine, route the wires and tubes properly.

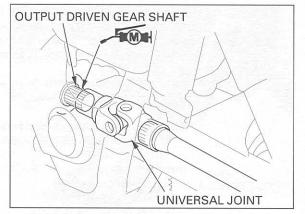


CAUTION:

Carefully align mounting points with the jack to prevent damage to engine, frame, wires and cables.

Apply 1 g (0.04 oz) of molybdenum disulfide grease to the output driven gear shaft spline.

Use a floor jack or other adjustable support to carefully maneuver the engine into place and insert the output driven gear shaft into the universal joint in the swingarm.

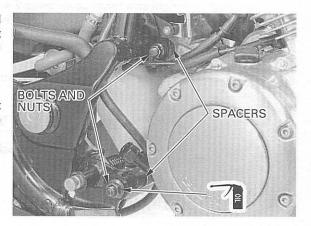


Carefully align the bolt holes in the frame and engine then insert the rear upper mounting bolt from the left side and install the spacer (short one) between the right side frame stay and engine.

Loosely install the rear upper mounting nut.

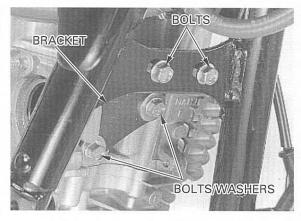
Insert the rear lower mounting bolt from the left side and install the spacer (long one) between the right side frame stay and engine.

Apply oil to the rear lower mounting nut and loosely install it.



Place the front upper mounting bracket into place and loosely install the mounting bolts with the washers.

Install the sub-frame and tighten all sub-frame fasteners to the specified torque (page 7-6).



After installing the sub-frame, tighten all engine mounting bolts and nuts to the specified torque.

TORQUE:

Front lower engine mounting bolt:

27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft) Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.

Front upper engine mounting bolt: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)

Rear lower engine mounting nut:

64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft) Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.

Rear upper engine mounting nut: 52 N·m (5.3 kgf·m , 38 lbf·ft)

ENGINE REMOVAL/INSTALLATION

Clean the water pump cover stud bolt threads with contact cleaner, then install it. After installing, be sure to verify the distance from top of stud to the water pump cover surface as shown.

Install the removed parts from engine removal in the reverse order of removal.

TORQUE: Head cover shroud bolt:

8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m , 6.5 lbf·ft)

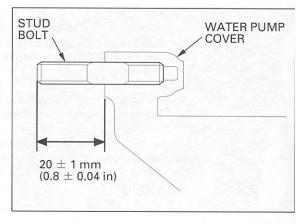
Install the following:

- -carburetor (page 5-16)
- -radiator (page 6-11)
- battery holder (page 5-22)
- right side lower cover (page 2-4)
- -left and right side cover (page 2-4)
- gearshift arm (page 16-11)
 spark plug caps

Install the removed parts from sub-frame removal (page 7-7).

Fill the crankcase with engine oil (page 3-11).

Perform the clutch inspection (page 3-21).



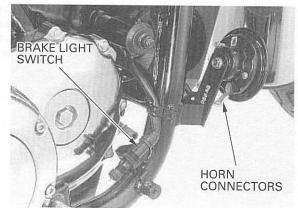
SUB-FRAME REMOVAL (VT1100T)

Remove the following:

- -exhaust system (page 2-11)
- -rear brake pedal (page 15-24)
- rear master cylinder (page 15-17)
- -EVAP canister if replacing the sub-frame; otherwise just disconnect the tubes (page 5-25).

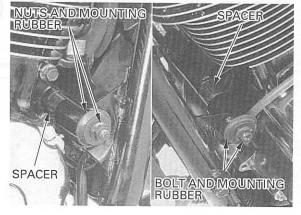
Remove the rear brake light switch from the stay and clamp.

Disconnect the horn connectors.

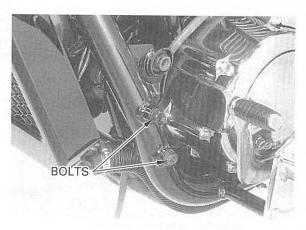


Remove the front lower engine mounting nut and mounting rubber.

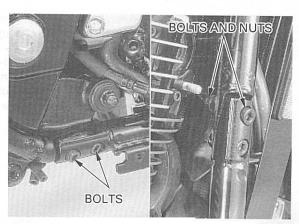
Pull out the mounting bolt with the mounting rubber then remove the spacers.



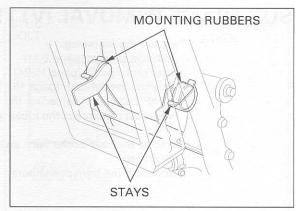
Remove the left sub-frame bolts from the down tube.



Remove the front and rear sub-frame bolts and nuts while holding the sub-frame.



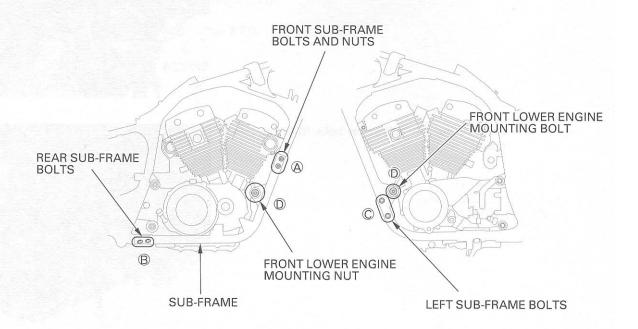
Remove the sub-frame while carefully releasing the radiator mounting stays of the sub-frame from the radiator lower mounting rubbers by slightly pulling down the front side of the sub-frame.



SUB-FRAME INSTALLATION (VT1100T)

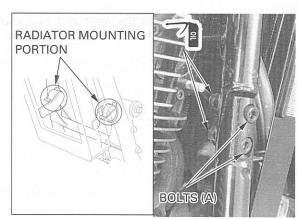
CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the frame and radiator.



Set the sub-frame onto the frame while carefully aligning the radiator mounting stays with the radiator lower mounting rubbers.

Be sure to align the radiator mounting portions, and all sub-frame connecting portions and temporarily install the front sub-frame bolts (A) [upper: long/lower: short] while holding the sub-frame in place.



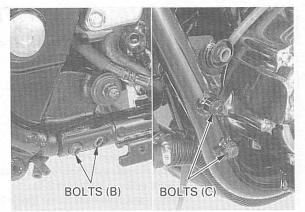
CAUTION:

Be careful not to cross-thread the sub-frame bolts.

Temporarily install the rear sub-frame bolts (B) by threading the ends slightly.

Temporarily install the left sub-frame bolts (C) by threading the ends slightly.

Apply oil to the threads of the front sub-frame nuts (A) and loosely install them.



Insert the front lower engine mounting bolt (D) through the frame and engine with the mounting rubber and spacers by aligning the bolt holes. Loosely install the nut (D) with the mounting rubber.

Tighten the all bolts and nuts alternately and gradually until seating the bolts and nuts, and

TORQUE:

Front lower engine mounting nut:

39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft)

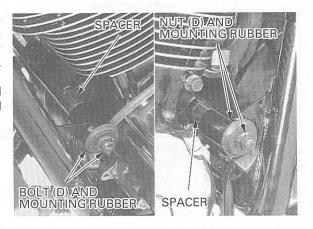
tighten them to the specified torque.

Sub-frame bolt (front): 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf·ft)

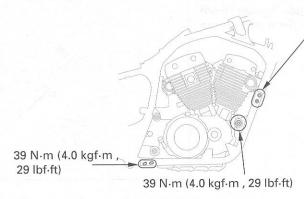
Apply oil to the threads and

seating surface.

(rear): 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft) (left): 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)









Connect the horn wires.

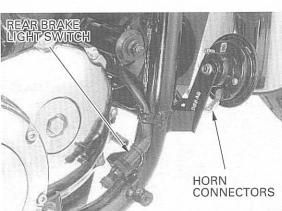
Install the brake light switch and secure the wire with the clamp.

Install the removed parts:

- -EVAP canister (page 5-25)
- -rear master cylinder (page 15-18)
- -rear brake pedal (page 15-25)
- exhaust system (page 2-11).

Connect the starter motor and ground cables, if

Perform the rear brake light switch adjustment (page 3-20).



ENGINE REMOVAL (VT1100T)

Drain the engine oil (page 3-11) and coolant (page 6-4).

Support the motorcycle securely.

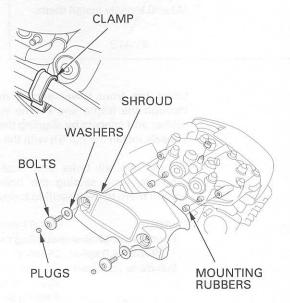
Remove the following:

- battery holder (page 5-22)
- -carburetor (page 5-4)
- -radiator (page 6-9)
- -rear master cylinder reservoir (page 15-20)
- right side cover (page 2-5)
- -left crankcase rear cover (page 2-15)
- engine oil dipstick (page 3-10)
- -spark plug caps
- -sub-frame (page 7-13)

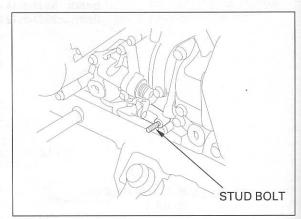
Remove the cable clamp from the rear cylinder head fin by removing the screw.

Remove the rubber plugs from the shroud bolt threads and remove the shroud bolts with the washers and the head cover shrouds.

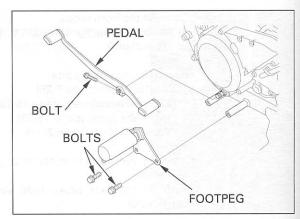
Remove the twelve mounting rubbers from each cylinder head.



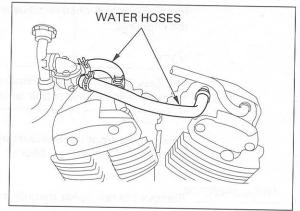
Remove the stud bolt from the water pump cover to prevent damaging its threads. To remove the stud, thread two nuts onto the stud, tighten them together, and use a wrench on them to turn the stud bolt out.



Remove the two bolts and the left footpeg. Remove the pedal pinch bolt and remove the gearshift pedal.



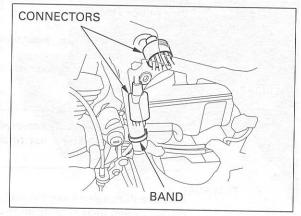
Disconnect the water hoses from the cylinder head covers.



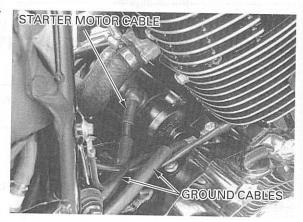
Release the wire band.

Disconnect the ignition pulse generator (2P White) and alternator (3P White) connectors.

Disconnect the oil pressure switch and neutral switch connectors.

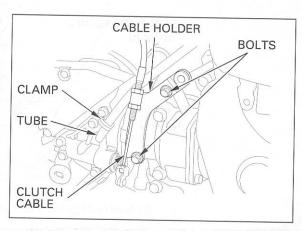


Remove the bolt and nut and disconnect the starter motor and ground cables.



Disconnect the clutch cable and remove the cable holder bolts, and holder.

Remove the carburetor air vent tube (California: EVAP CAV control valve air vent tube) from the clamp.



Place a floor jack or other adjustable support under the engine.

NOTE:

The jack height must be continually adjusted to relieve stress for ease of bolt removal.

Remove the front upper mounting bolts, mounting brackets and mounting rubbers.

Remove the rear lower mounting nut and mounting rubber.

Pull out the rear lower mounting bolt to remove it, then remove the spacer.

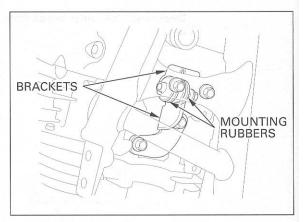
Remove the rear upper mounting nut, washer and mounting rubber.

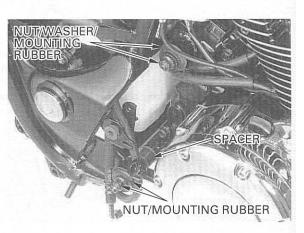
Pull out the rear upper mounting bolt to remove it.

CAUTION:

During engine assembly removal, hold the engine securely and be careful not to damage the frame and engine.

Remove the engine from the frame by releasing the output driven gear shaft from the universal joint in the swingarm.

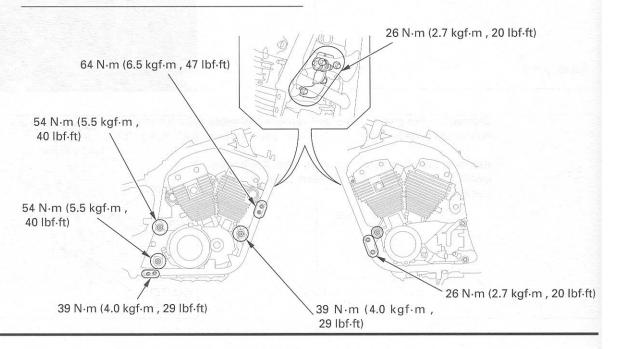




ENGINE INSTALLATION (VT1100T)

NOTE:

Before installing the engine, route the wires and tubes properly.



CAUTION:

Carefully align mounting points with the jack to prevent damage to engine, frame, wires and cables.

Apply 1 g (0.04 oz) of molybdenum disulfide grease to the output driven gear shaft spline.

Use a floor jack or other adjustable support to carefully maneuver the engine into place and insert the output driven gear shaft into the universal joint in the swingarm.

OUTPUT DRIVEN GEAR SHAFT

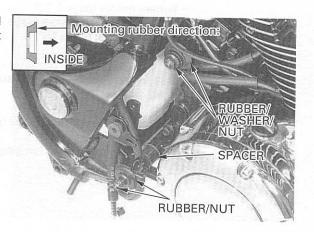
UNIVERSAL JOINT

Carefully align the bolt holes in the frame and engine then insert the rear upper mounting bolt with the mounting rubber from the left side.

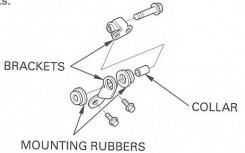
Loosely install the rear upper mounting nut with the mounting rubber and washer.

Insert the rear lower mounting bolt with the mounting rubber from the left side and install the spacer between the right side frame stay and engine.

Loosely install the rear upper mounting nut with the mounting rubber.



Place the front upper mounting brackets, collars and mounting rubbers (large I. D. side toward inside) into place and loosely install the mounting bolts.

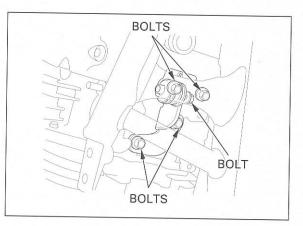


Install the sub-frame and tighten all sub-frame fasteners to the specified torque (page 7-14).

After installing the sub-frame, tighten all engine mounting bolts and nuts to the specified torque.



Front lower engine mounting bolt: 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)
Front upper engine mounting bolt: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)
Rear lower engine mounting nut: 54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m , 40 lbf·ft)
Rear upper engine mounting nut: 54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m , 40 lbf·ft)



Clean the water pump cover stud bolt threads with contact cleaner, then install it. After installing, be sure to verify the distance from top of stud to the water pump cover surface as shown.

Install the removed parts from engine removal in the reverse order of removal.

TORQUE: Head cover shroud bolt: 8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m , 6.5 lbf·ft)

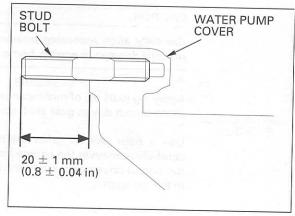
Install the following:

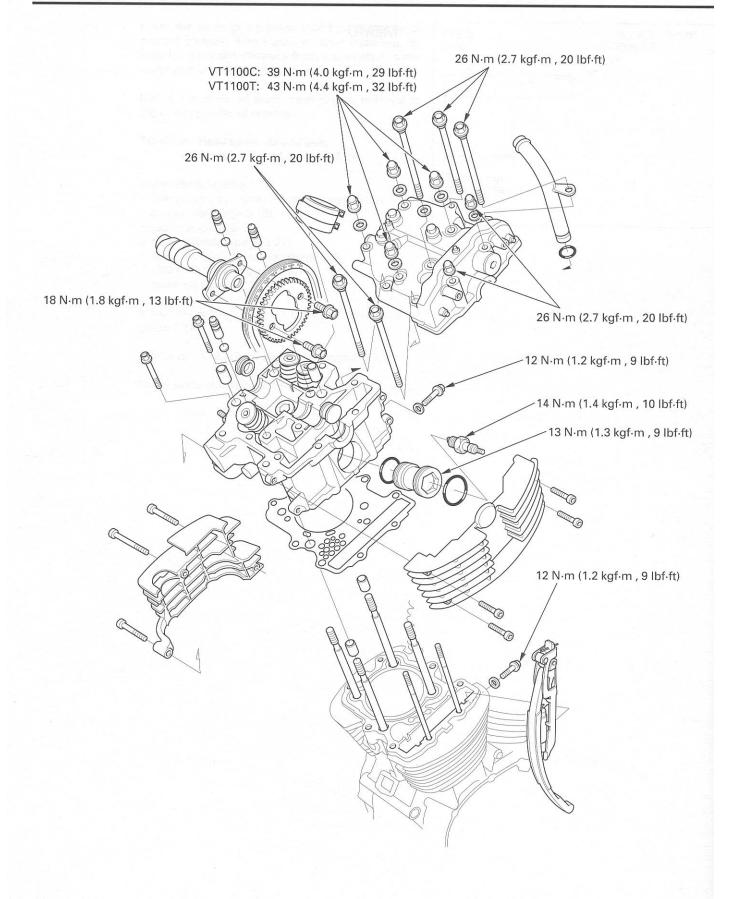
- -rear master cylinder reservoir (page 15-21)
- -carburetor (page 5-16)
- -radiator (page 6-11)
- -battery holder (page 5-22)
- -left and right side covers (page 2-5)
- gearshift pedal (page 16-11)
- -spark plug caps.

Install the removed parts from sub-frame removal (page 7-14).

Fill the crankcase with engine oil (page 3-11).

Perform the clutch inspection (page 3-21).





8

8. CYLINDER HEAD/VALVE

- [- 1
	SERVICE INFORMATION	8-1	VALVE GUIDE REPLACEMENT	8-14	
1	TROUBLESHOOTING	8-3	VALVE SEAT INSPECTION/REFACING	8-15	
	CYLINDER COMPRESSION	8-4	CYLINDER HEAD ASSEMBLY	8-19	
	CYLINDER HEAD COVER REMOVAL	8-5	CYLINDER HEAD INSTALLATION	8-20	
	CAMSHAFT REMOVAL	8-5	CAMSHAFT INSTALLATION	8-22	
	CYLINDER HEAD COVER	8-8	CYLINDER HEAD COVER ASSEMBLY	8-25	
	DISASSEMBLY		CYLINDER HEAD COVER	0.07	
	CYLINDER HEAD REMOVAL	8-10	INSTALLATION	8-27	
	CYLINDER HEAD DISASSEMBLY	8-11			

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

- This section covers service of the cylinder head, valves, camshafts and rocker arms. To service these parts, the engine must be removed from the frame.
- When disassembling, mark and store the disassembled parts to ensure that they are reinstalled in their original locations.
- Clean all disassembled parts with cleaning solvent and dry them by blowing them off with compressed air before inspection.
- Camshaft and rocker arm lubricating oil is fed through oil passages in the cylinder head and head cover. Clean the oil passages before assembling cylinder head and head cover.
- Pour clean engine oil into the oil pockets in the cylinder head during assembly to lubricate the camshaft.
- Be careful not to damage the mating surfaces when removing the head cover and cylinder head.

SPECIFICATIONS

Unit: mm (in)

Cylinder compression		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
		1,275 \pm 196 kPa (13.0 \pm 2.0 kgf/cm², 185 \pm 28 psi) $-$ 300 rpm		
Cylinder head	Warpage	Feath Part	0.05 (0.002	
Camshaft	Cam lobe height	IN	38.021 - 38.181 (1.4969 - 1.5032)	37.99 (1.496)
R	10.531-51-0-7	EX	38.027 - 38.187 (1.4971 - 1.5034)	38.00 (1.496)
	Runout		(0.05 (0.002)
		A/B	0.050 - 0.111 (0.0020 - 0.0044)	0.130 (0.0051)
		С	0.065-0.126 (0.0026-0.0050)	0.145 (0.0057)
	Journal O. D. A	A/B	23.949 - 23.970 (0.9429 - 0.9437)	23.92 (0.942)
	and the settlement of the sett	С	23.934 - 23.955 (0.9423 - 0.9431)	23.90 (0.941)
tappet Rocker arm-to-rocke arm shaft clearance Tappet adjuster assis	Rocker arm I. D.	IN/EX	13.750 - 13.768 (0.5413 - 0.5420)	13.778 (0.5424)
	Rocker arm shaft O. D.	IN/EX	13.716 - 13.734 (0.5400 - 0.5407)	13.706 (0.5396)
	Rocker arm-to-rocker arm shaft clearance	IN/EX	0.016-0.052 (0.0006-0.0020)	0.072 (0.0028)
	Tappet adjuster assist sp length	ring free	18.57 (0.731)	17.80 (0.701)
	Tappet adjuster compres with kerosene	sion stroke	- Parker D Parker D. Salarak A	0.2 (0.01)

— (cont'd) ——	753 823-24 1-1-1-1			I	Unit: mm (
	ITEM			STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Valve and	alve and Valve clearance		W. A. 1811	Hydraulic adjusting	J. Shire - Labert 1
Valve guide Valve guide I. D.	79 17 18-1-17	IN	6.575-6.590 (0.2589-0.2594)	6.57 (0.259)	
	H HEOMES	EX	6.555 - 6.570 (0.2581 - 0.2587)	6.54 (0.257)	
	Valve guide I. D.		IN	6.600 - 6.615 (0.2598 - 0.2604)	6.635 (0.2612)
	H. ABOLA S	EX	6.600 - 6.615 (0.2598 - 0.2604)	6.655 (0.2620)	
	Stem-to-guide cleara	rance	IN	0.010-0.040 (0.0004-0.0016)	0.08 (0.003)
Valve guide projecti above cylinder head Valve seat width	TRANSFER OF	EX	0.030-0.060 (0.0012-0.0024)	0.12 (0.005)	
	tion	IN	14.5 (0.57)		
	d	EX	15.5 (0.61)	ABH FURNITO	
	Valve seat width		IN/EX	0.90 - 1.10 (0.035 - 0.043)	1.50 (0.059)
Valve spring	/alve spring Free length	Inner	IN/EX	41.37 (1.629)	39.9 (1.57)
12.8	Outer	IN	45.70 (1.799)	43.90 (1.728)	
			EX	43.50 (1.713)	41.80 (1.646)

TORQUE VALUES

V	Гα	4	^	^	0	

V11100C.		
Spark plug	14 N·m (1.4 kgf·m , 10 lbf·ft)	
Spark plug sleeve	13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	Apply molybdenum oil solution to the threads.
Assist shaft cap	22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m , 16 lbf·ft)	
Cylinder head cover bolt	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
cap nut (8 mm)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
(10 mm)	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)	
Rocker arm shaft hole plug	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)	
Cam sprocket bolt	18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft)	Apply locking agent to the threads.
Cam chain tensioner bolt	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	in the Table on a control or expension by a 4 stamps
Carburetor insulator band screw	2.0 N·m (0.2 kgf·m , 1.4 lbf·ft)	

VT1100T:

Spark plug	14 N·m (1.4 kgf·m , 10 lbf·ft)	
Spark plug sleeve	13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	Apply molybdenum oil solution to the threads.
Assist shaft cap	22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)	
Cylinder head cover bolt	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
cap nut (8 mm)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
(10 mm)	43 N·m (4.4 kgf·m , 32 lbf·ft)	
Rocker arm shaft hole plug	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)	
Cam sprocket bolt	18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft)	Apply locking agent to the threads.
Cam chain tensioner bolt	12 N·m (1.2 kaf·m 9 lbf·ft)	the state of the s

2.0 N·m (0.2 kgf·m , 1.4 lbf·ft)

TOOLS

Carburetor insulator band screw

Fork tube holder attachment	07930-KA50100
Hydraulic tappet bleeder	07973-MJ00000
Valve spring compressor	07757 - 0010000
Valve guide remover, 6.6 mm	07742-0010200 or 07942-6570100 (U. S. A. only)
Valve guide driver	07743 – 0020000 not available in U. S. A.
Valve guide reamer, 6.6 mm	07984-ZE20001 or 07984-ZE2000D (U. S. A. only)
Valve seat cutter holder	07781 – 0010202 — or equivalent commercially available in U. S. A.
Valve seat cutter, 33 mm (45° IN)	07780 - 0010800 -
40 mm (45° EX)	07780 - 0010500
35 mm (32° IN)	07780-0012300-
42 mm (32° EX)	07780-0013000-
37.5 mm (60° IN)	07780-0014100-
42 mm (60° EX)	07780 - 0014400 -

TROUBLESHOOTING

Engine top-end problems usually affect engine performance. These can be diagnosed by a compression test, or by tracing top-end noise with a sounding rod or stethoscope. (See page 8-4 for engine compression testing.)

Compression too low, Hard starting or Poor performance at low speed

- Hydraulic tappet
 - -Incorrect tappet adjustment
 - Hydraulic tappet locked (engine will not start)
 - Collapsed hydraulic tappet (chatter noise)
 - Insufficient air bleeding, noise will stop after about 10 minutes
- Valves
 - -Burned or bent valves
- -Incorrect valve timing
- -Broken valve springs
- -Uneven valve seating
- -Valve stuck open
- Cylinder head
 - -Leaking or damaged cylinder head gasket
 - Wraped or cracked cylinder head
 - -Loose spark plug

Compression too high

Excessive carbon built-up on piston or combustion chamber

Excessive smoke

- Worn valve stem or valve guide
- Damaged stem seal

Excessive noise

- Hydraulic tappet
 - -Worn or damaged tappet
 - -Clogged oil hole or oil passage to cylinder head
 - -Weak or damaged assist spring
 - -Worn or damaged assist shaft
 - -Air in oil passage caused by low oil level
- Valves
 - -Sticking valve or broken valve spring
 - -Excessive worn valve seat
- Cylinder head
 - -Worn or damaged camshaft
- -Worn or damaged rocker arm and/or shaft
- -Worn rocker arm follower or valve stem end
- -Worn or damaged cam sprocket teeth
- -Loose or worn cam chain
- -Worn or damaged cam chain tensioner

CYLINDER COMPRESSION

Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature.

Stop the engine, disconnect the spark plug caps and remove one spark plug at a time.

NOTE:

To measure the cylinder compression of each cylinder, remove only one plug at a time.

Shift the transmission in neutral and turn the engine stop switch OFF.

Insert the compression gauge. Open the throttle all the way and crank the engine with the starter motor. Crank the engine until the gauge reading stops rising. The maximum reading is usually reached within 4-7 seconds.

COMPRESSION PRESSURE:

1,275 \pm 196 kPa (13.0 \pm 2.0 kgf/cm², 185 \pm 28 psi)

If compression is high, it indicates that carbon deposits have accumulated on the combustion chamber and/or the piston crown.

If compression is low, pour 3-5 cc (0.1-0.2 oz) of clean engine oil into the cylinder through the spark plug hole and recheck the compression.

If the compression increases from the previous value, check the cylinder, piston and piston rings. If compression is the same as the previous value, check the valves for leakage.



CYLINDER HEAD COVER REMOVAL

Remove the engine from the frame (page 7-8 or 7-16).

Loosen the two 8 mm, four 10 mm cap nuts and five 8 mm bolts.

Remove the nuts and bolts with the water pipe.

NOTE:

During removal of the head cover, tilt the engine about 45° to the side, away from the cam chain tower, to prevent the hydraulic tappets and shims from falling into the engine.

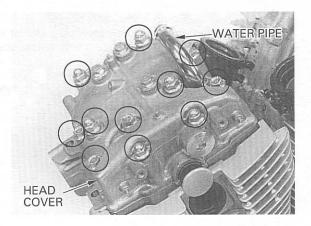
Remove the cylinder head cover gently to prevent dropping the hydraulic tappets and shims.

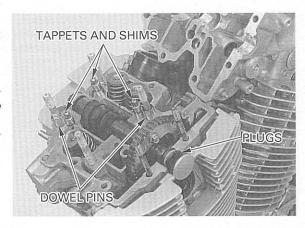
CAUTION:

Do not strike or use excessive force to remove the tappets.

Remove the hydraulic tappets and shims.

Remove the dowel pins and camshaft plugs.





CAMSHAFT REMOVAL

Before releasing the cam chain tensioner, measure the distance the cam chain tensioner projects above the bracket as shown.

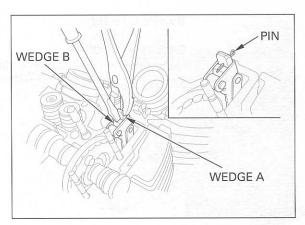
Replace the cam chain with a new one if the projection exceeds 9.0 mm (0.35 in).

To replace the cam chain, remove the following parts:

- -cam sprocket (see below)
- Front cylinder: starter driven gear (section 18)
 Rear cylinder: primary drive gear (section 10)

9 mm (0.35 in)

Release the tensioner by pulling wedge A straight up while holding wedge B down then secure the wedge A with a 2 mm pin as shown.



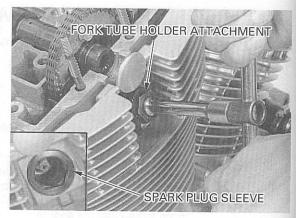
Remove the spark plug.

Remove the spark plug sleeve on the cam chain side using the fork tube holder attachment.

TOOL:

Fork tube holder attachment

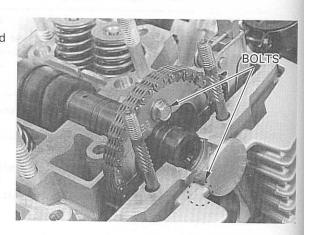
07930-KA50100



into the crankcase.

Be careful not to Remove the cam sprocket bolt. let the cam Rotate the crankshaft clockwise one turn (360°) and

sprocket bolts fall remove the other cam sprocket bolt.

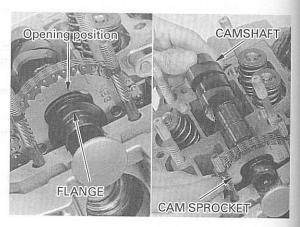


For easy removal, turn the crankshaft clockwise so that the cam sprocket opening is positioned as shown.

Remove the cam sprocket from the cam shaft flange with the cam chain.

Lift the camshaft and remove it from the cam sprocket.

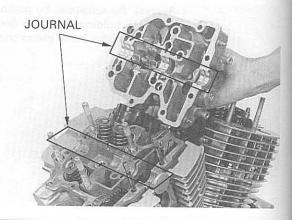
Attach a piece of wire to the cam chain to prevent it from falling into the crankcase and remove the cam sprocket from the cam chain.



INSPECTION

CAMSHAFT JOURNAL

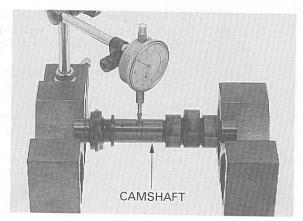
Inspect the camshaft journal surfaces for scoring or evidence of insufficient lubrication.



CAMSHAFT RUNOUT

Support both ends of the camshaft with V-blocks and check the camshaft runout with a dial indicator.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)



CAM LOBE HEIGHT

Measure the height of each cam lobe using a micrometer.

SERVICE LIMITS: IN: 37.99 mm (1.496 in)

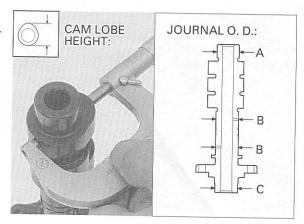
EX: 38.00 mm (1.496 in)

CAMSHAFT JOURNAL O. D.

Measure the O. D. of each camshaft journal.

SERVICE LIMITS: A/B: 23.92 mm (0.942 in)

C: 23.90 mm (0.941 in)



CAMSHAFT OIL CLEARANCE

NOTE:

Do not hook the cam chain suspension wire against the head cover mating surface.

Suspend the cam chain attaching wire through the spark plug sleeve hole and hook it.

Clean off any oil from the journals of the head cover, head and camshaft.

Put the cam shaft onto the cylinder head and lay a strip of plastigauge lengthwise on top of each camshaft journal.

NOTE:

Do not rotate the camshaft during inspection.

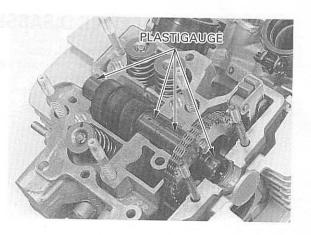
Install the cylinder head cover carefully and tighten the bolts and nuts in a crisscross pattern in 2-3 steps.

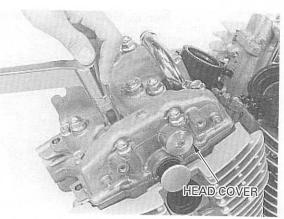
TORQUE:

8 mm bolt and cap nut: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)

10 mm cap nut:

VT1100C: 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft) **VT1100T**: 43 N·m (4.4 kgf·m , 32 lbf·ft)



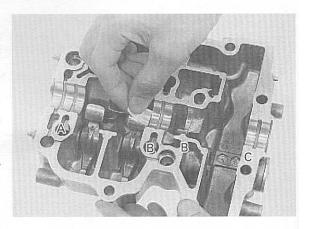


Remove the cylinder head cover. Measure the width of each plastigauge. The widest thickness determines the oil clearance.

SERVICE LIMITS: A/B: 0.130 mm (0.0051 in) **C:** 0.145 mm (0.0057 in)

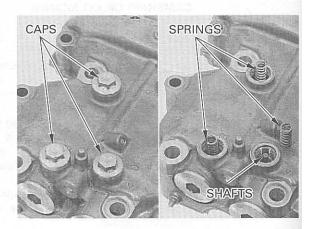
When the service limits are exceeded, replace the camshaft and recheck the oil clearance.

Replace the cylinder head and cover if the clearance still exceeds the service limit.

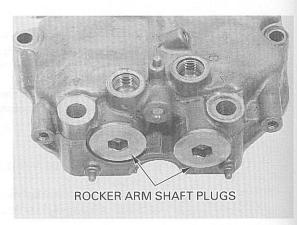


CYLINDER HEAD COVER DISASSEMBLY

Remove the assist shaft caps. Remove the assist springs and assist shafts.

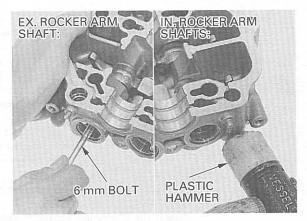


Remove the three rocker arm shaft hole plugs.



Thread a 6 mm bolt into the exhaust rocker arm shaft, and pull out and remove it.

Remove the intake rocker arm shafts from the opposite side by tapping the head cover with a plastic hammer.

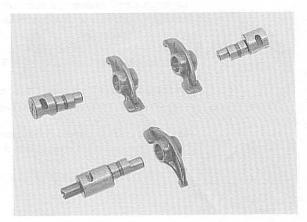


INSPECTION

ROCKER ARM SHAFT/ROCKER ARM

Inspect the rocker arm shafts and rocker arms for wear or damage.

Check the rocker arm shafts and rocker arms for clogged oil holes.



Measure the O. D. of each rocker arm shaft.

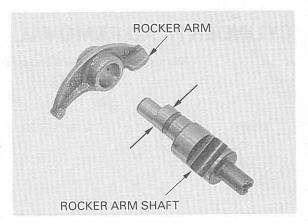
SERVICE LIMIT: 13.706 mm (0.5396 in)

Measure the I. D. of each rocker arm.

SERVICE LIMIT: 13.778 mm (0.5424 in)

Subtract each rocker arm shaft O. D. from the corresponding rocker arm I. D. to obtain the rocker arm-to-rocker arm shaft clearance.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.072 mm (0.0028 in)

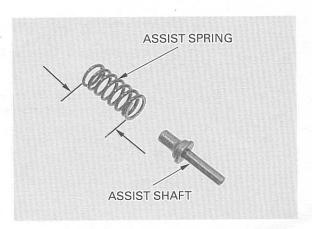


ASSIST SPRING AND SHAFT

Inspect the assist springs and shafts for wear or damage.

Measure the free length of each assist spring.

SERVICE LIMIT: 17.80 mm (0.701 in)



HYDRAULIC TAPPET

Inspect the hydraulic tappet for wear, damage and plugged holes.

NOTE:

- Keep the hydraulic tappet below the surface of the kerosene.
- Hold the hydraulic tappet upright while compressing and extending the tappet.

Measure the free length of each hydraulic tappets as follows:

Attach the Hydraulic Tappet Bleeder to the hydraulic tappet and compress and extend the hydraulic tappet slowly in a jar filled with kerosene.

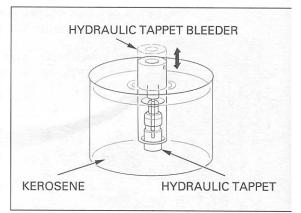
TOOL:

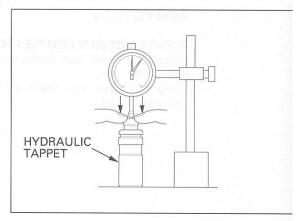
Hydraulic tappet bleeder 07973-MJ00000

Continue operating the hydraulic tappet until the air bubbles stop and the tappet no longer collapses.

Quickly try to compress the tappet by hand. Measure the compression stroke with a dial gauge.

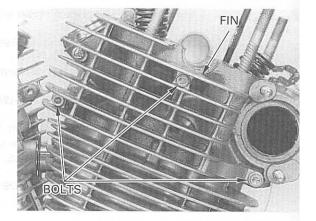
COMPRESSION STROKE: 0-0.2 mm (0.0-0.01 in)





CYLINDER HEAD REMOVAL

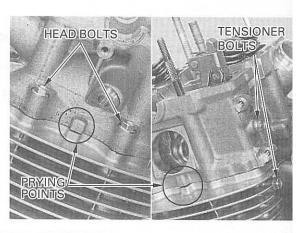
Remove the socket bolts and cylinder head fins.



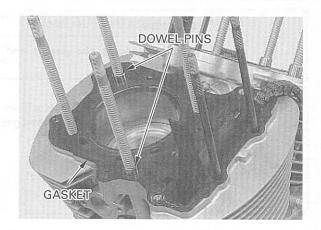
Remove the cylinder head bolts.

Remove the cam chain tensioner bolts, washer and the tensioner.

Pry the cylinder head at the prying points using a screwdriver and remove the cylinder head.



Remove the cylinder head gasket and dowel pins.



CYLINDER HEAD DISASSEMBLY

NOTE:

Mark all parts during disassembly so they can be placed back in their original locations for installation later.

Remove the valve spring cotters using the valve spring compressor.

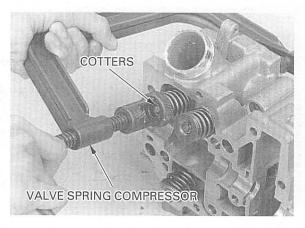
TOOL:

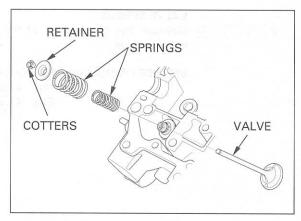
Valve spring compressor 07757 - 0010000



Compressing the valve springs more than necessary will cause loss of valve spring tension.

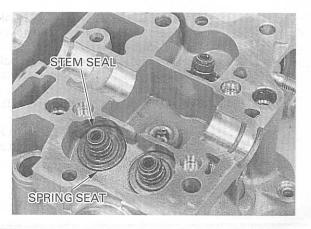
Remove the valve spring compressor, then remove the retainers, springs and valves.





Remove the stem seals and spring seats if necessary.

Do not reuse a removed stem seal.

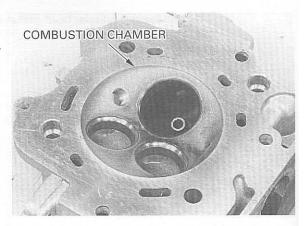


CAUTION:

Avoid damaging the gasket and valve seat surfaces.

Gasket will come off easier if soaked in high flash point cleaning solvent.

Gasket will come Remove the carbon deposits from the combustion off easier if chamber and clean off the head gasket surfaces.



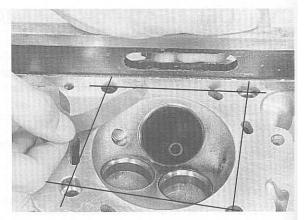
INSPECTION

CYLINDER HEAD

Check the spark plug hole and valve areas for cracks.

Check the cylinder head for warpage with a straight edge and feeler gauge.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)



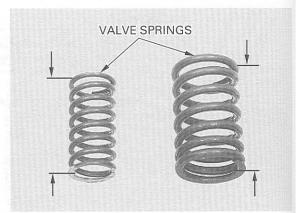
VALVE SPRING

Measure the free length of the inner and outer valve springs.

SERVICE LIMITS: Inner (IN/EX): 39.9 mm (1.57 in)

Outer (IN): 43.90 mm (1.728 in)

(EX): 41.80 mm (1.646 in)



VALVE STEM-TO-GUIDE CLEARANCE

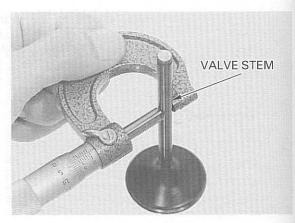
Inspect each valve for bending, burning, scratches or abnormal wear.

Insert the valves in their original positions in the cylinder head. Check that each valve moves up and down smoothly, without binding.

Measure the each valve stem O. D. and record it.

SERVICE LIMITS: IN: 6.57 mm (0.259 in)

EX: 6.54 mm (0.257 in)

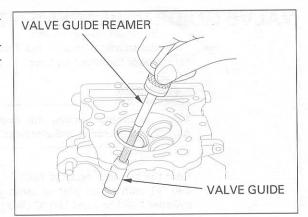


Ream the valve guide to remove any carbon buildup before measuring the guide.

Insert the reamer from the combustion chamber side of the head and always rotate the reamer clockwise.

TOOL:

Valve guide reamer, 6.6 mm 07984 – ZE20001 or 07984 – ZE2000D (U. S. A. only)



Measure each valve guide I. D. and record it.

SERVICE LIMITS: IN: 6.635 mm (0.2612 in)

EX: 6.655 mm (0.2620 in)

Subtract each valve stem O. D. from the corresponding guide I. D. to obtain the stem-to-guide clearance.

SERVICE LIMITS: IN: 0.08 mm (0.003 in) EX: 0.12 mm (0.005 in)

If the stem-to-guide clearance exceeds the service limit, determine if a new guide with standard dimensions would bring the clearance within tolerance. If so, replace any guides as necessary and ream to fit.

If the stem-to-guide clearance exceeds the service limit with new guide, also replace the valve.

NOTE:

Inspect and reface the valve seats whenever the valve guides are replaced (page 8-15).



VALVE GUIDE REPLACEMENT

Chill the valve guides in the freezer section of a refrigerator for about an hour.

AWARNING

Wear insulated gloves to avoid burns when handling the heated cylinder head.

Heat the cylinder head to 130 °C - 140 °C (275 °F - 290 °F) with a hot plat or oven. Do not heat the cylinder head beyond 150 °C (300 °F). Use temperature indicator sticks, available from welding supply stores, to be sure the cylinder head is heated to the proper temperature.

CAUTION:

Using a torch to heat the cylinder head may cause warping.

Support the cylinder head and drive out the old guides from the combustion chamber side of the cylinder head.

TOOL:

Valve guide remover, 6.6 mm 07742 - 0010200 or 07942 - 6570100 (U. S. A. only)



Be careful not to damage the cylinder head.

Drive the new guides in from the camshaft side of the cylinder head while the cylinder head is still heated.

TOOL:

Valve guide driver

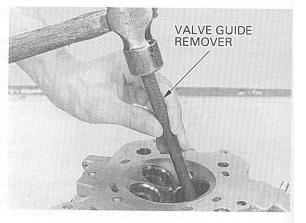
07743 – 0020000 not available in U. S. A.

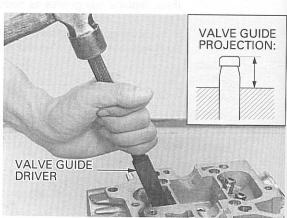
VALVE GUIDE PROJECTION ABOVE CYLINDER HEAD:

IN: 14.5 mm (0.57 in) EX: 15.5 mm (0.61 in)

U. S. A. only procedure:

- using a marker, mark the valve guide with a line at the correct height as specified above.
- -chill the guides.
- -drive in the valve guide as shown to the line.
- check the projection height with calipers to verify they are within specification.





Let the cylinder head cool to room temperature, then ream the new valve guides.

TOOL:

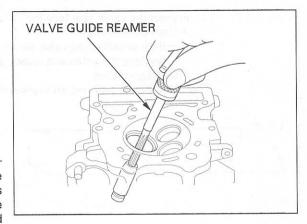
Valve guide reamer, 6.6 mm 07984-ZE20001 or 07984-ZE2000D

(U.S.A. only)

NOTE:

- Take care not to tilt or lean the reamer in the guide while reaming. Otherwise, the valve is installed slanted, that causes oil leaks from the stem seal and improper valve seat contact and results in the valve seat refacing not able to be performed.
- Insert the reamer from the combustion chamber side of the head and always rotate the reamer clockwise.

Clean the cylinder head thoroughly to remove any metal particles after reaming and reface the valve



VALVE SEAT INSPECTION/REFACING

INSPECTION

Clean all intake and exhaust valves thoroughly to remove carbon deposits.

Apply a light coating of Prussian Blue to each valve face.

Tap the valve against the valve seat several times using a hand-lapping tool, without rotating the valve, to make a clear pattern.

Remove the valve and inspect the valve seat face (see following page).

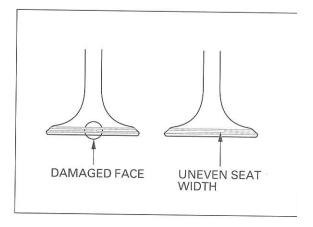
NOTE:

The valve cannot be ground. If the valve face is burned or badly worn or if it contacts the seat unevenly, replace the valve.

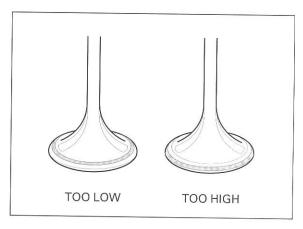


Inspect the valve seat face for:

- Uneven seat width:
 - Bent or collapsed valve stem;
 Replace the valve and reface the valve seat.
- Damaged face:
 - -Replace the valve and reface the valve seat.



- Contact area (too high or too low area):
 - -reface the valve seat

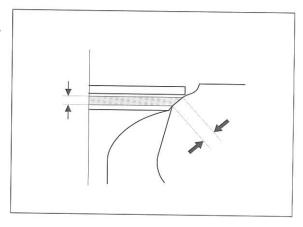


Inspect the width of valve seat.

The valve seat contact should be within the specified width and even all around the circumference.

STANDARD: 0.90 – 1.10 mm (0.035 – 0.043 in) **SERVICE LIMIT:** 1.50 mm (0.059 in)

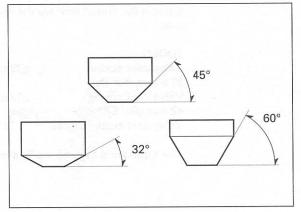
If the valve seat width is not within specification, reface the valve seat.



VALVE SEAT REFACING

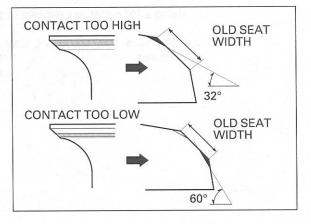
NOTE:

- Follow the refacer manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Be careful not to grind the seat more than necessary.



If the contact area is too high on the valve, the seat must be lowered using a 32° flat cutter.

If the contact area is too low on the valve, the seat must be raised using a 60° inner cutter. Refinish the seat to specifications, using a 45° finish cutter.



Using a 45° cutter, remove any roughness or irregularities from the seat.

TOOLS:

Valve seat cutter,

07780-0010800

33 mm (45° IN) Valve seat cutter,

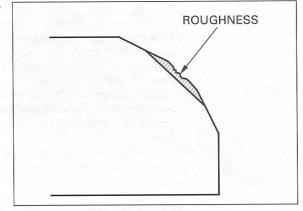
07780-0010500

40 mm (45° EX)

Valve seat cutter holder

07781-0010202

or equivalent commercially available in U.S.A.



Using a 32° cutter, remove 1/4 of the existing valve seat material.

TOOLS:

Valve seat cutter, 35 mm 07

07780 - 0012300

(32° IN)

Valve seat cutter, 42 mm

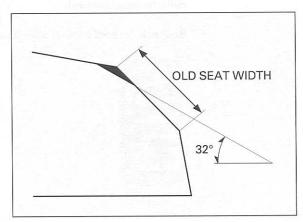
07780 - 0013000

(32° EX)

Valve seat cutter holder

07781-0010202

or equivalent commercially available in U.S.A.



Using a 60° cutter, remove the bottom 1/4 of the old seat.

TOOLS:

Valve seat cutter,

07780-0014100

37.5 mm (60° IN) Valve seat cutter,

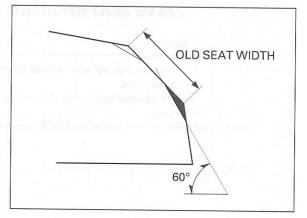
07780-0014400

42 mm (60° EX)

Valve seat cutter holder

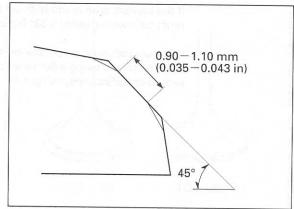
07781 - 0010202

or equivalent commercially available in U.S.A.



Using a 45° cutter, cut the seat to the proper width.

Make sure that all pitting and irregularities are removed.



CAUTION:

- Excessive lapping pressure may deform or damage the seat.
- Change the angle of lapping tool frequently to prevent uneven seat wear.
- Lapping compound can cause damage if it enters between the valve stem and guide.

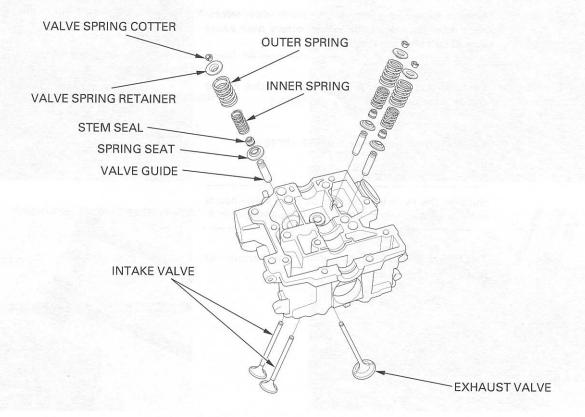
After cutting the seat, apply lapping compound to the valve face, and lap the valve using light pressure.

After lapping, wash any residual compound off the cylinder head and valve.

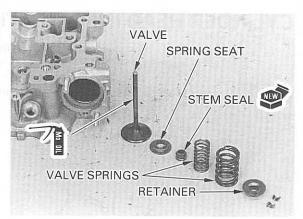
Recheck the seat contact after lapping.



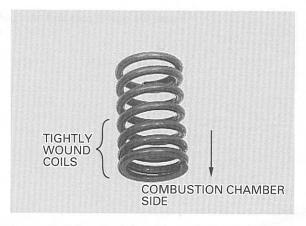
CYLINDER HEAD ASSEMBLY



Install the spring seats and new stem seals. Lubricate each valve stem with molybdenum oil solution and insert the valves into the valve guides. To avoid damage to the stem seal, turn the valve slowly when inserting.



Install the valve springs and retainers. The outer spring's tightly wound coils should face toward the combustion chamber.



CAUTION:

Compressing the valve spring more than necessary when installing the valve cotters may cause loss of valve spring tension.

To ease installation of the cotters, grease them first. TOOL:

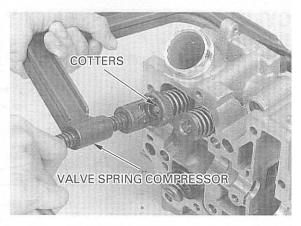
Compress the valve springs with the valve spring compressor and install the valve cotters.

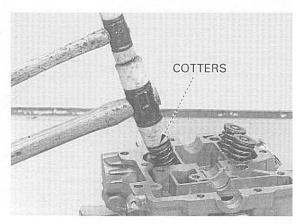
Valve spring compressor 07757 - 0010000

NOTE:

Support the cylinder head so that the valve heads will not contact anything that causes damage.

Tap the valve stems gently with a soft hammer to firmly seat the cotters.

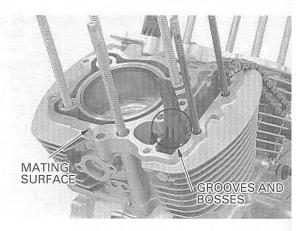




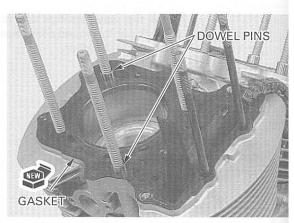
CYLINDER HEAD INSTALLATION

Clean any gasket material from the cylinder mating surfaces.

Make sure that the cam chain guide bosses are in the grooves of the cylinder.



Install the dowel pins and new gasket.

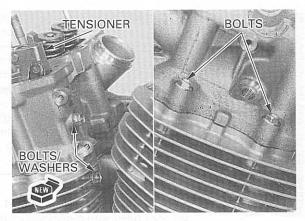


Install the cylinder head onto cylinder.

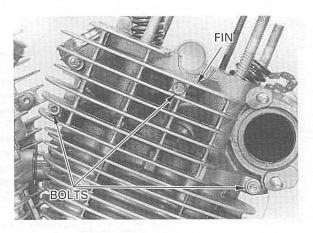
Install the cam chain tensioner with new washers and the bolts.

Install and tighten the cylinder head bolts and tighten the cam chain tensioner bolts.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)



Install the cylinder head fins with the socket bolts.



CAMSHAFT INSTALLATION

NOTE:

- If both front and rear camshafts were removed, start the installation with the front cylinder at the point shown below.
- Even if you are servicing either the front or rear cylinder head, the other cylinder head cover must be removed and the other camshaft position must be checked.

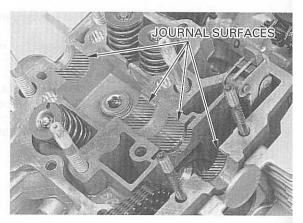
Lubricate the camshaft journal surfaces of the cylinder head with molybdenum oil solution.

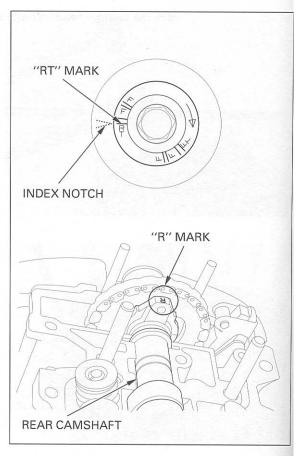
FRONT CYLINDER

The rear cylinder Remove the rear cylinder head cover and check the has not been rear cylinder camshaft position as follows:

serviced begin Remove the timing hole cap, turn the crankshaft here: clockwise and align the "RT" mark on the ignition pulse generator rotor with the index notch on the right crankcase cover, then check the identification mark "R" on the rear camshaft flange.

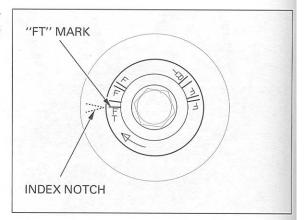
- -If the "R" mark faces up, turn the crankshaft clockwise 1-3/8 (495°) turn (align the "FT" mark on the ignition pulse generator rotor with the index notch) and begin installation of the front
- If the "R" mark faces down (cannot be seen), turn the crankshaft clockwise 3/8 (135°) turn (align the "FT" mark with the index notch) and begin installation of the front camshaft.





serviced, begin cover. installation of the front camshaft here.

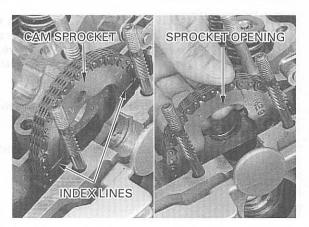
If both camshafts Align the "FT" mark on the ignition pulse generator have been rotor with the index notch on the right crankcase



Install the cam sprocket onto the cam chain with the index lines facing outside and temporarily align the index lines with the upper surface of the cylinder head.

Pressing on the tensioner with a flat blade make sprocket installation easier.

Turn the crankshaft clockwise half a turn (180°) so that the cam sprocket opening is in the position shown (cam sprocket turned a quater of turn [90°]) screwdriver will while holding the sprocket.



NOTE:

The camshafts are identified by marks on their

-"F": Front cylinder camshaft

-"R": Rear cylinder camshaft

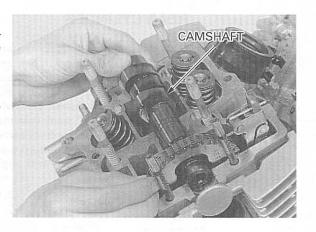
Install the camshaft onto the cylinder head through the cam sprocket.

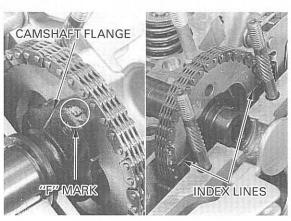
Turn the crankshaft counterclockwise half a turn and realign the index lines with the upper surface of the cylinder head (see above).

Place the camshaft into its correct position with the "F" mark on the flange facing up and install the cam sprocket on the camshaft flange securely.

NOTE:

Be sure that the index lines on the cam sprocket align with the upper surface of the cylinder head when the "FT" mark on the ignition pulse generator rotor is aligned with the index notch on the right crankcase cover (page 8-22).



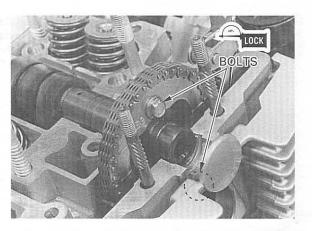


Apply locking agent to the sprocket bolt threads. Align the bolt holes in the sprocket and camshaft flange and install the cam sprocket bolt.

Turn the crankshaft one revolution. Apply locking agent to the remaining sprocket bolt threads and install the cam sprocket bolt. Tighten it to the specified torque.

TORQUE: 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft)

Turn the crankshaft one revolution again and tighten the other bolt to the same torque.



CYLINDER HEAD/VALVE

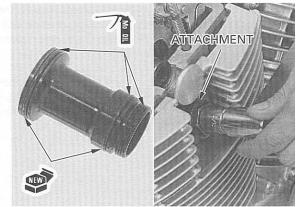
Apply molybdenum oil solution to the spark plug sleeve threads and O-ring grooves.
Install new O-rings into the sleeve grooves.
Install the sleeve using the special tool.

TOOL:

Fork tube holder attachment

07930-KA50100

TORQUE: 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

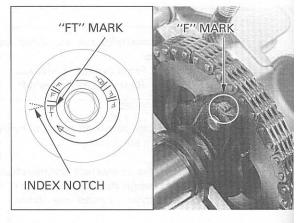


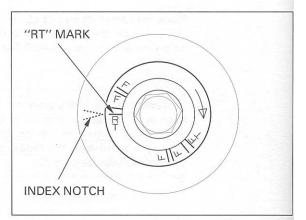
REAR CYLINDER

If the front cylinder has not been serviced, remove the front cylinder head cover and begin installation of the rear camshaft.

If the front Turn the crankshaft clockwise and align the "FT" cylinder has not mark on the ignition pulse generator rotor with the been serviced, index notch on the right crankcase cover.

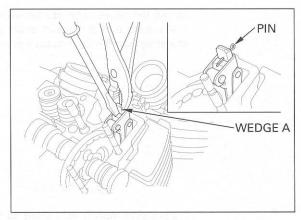
- remove the front camshaft flange faces cylinder head up, turn the crankshaft clockwise 5/8 (225°) turn cover and begin and align the "RT" mark with the index notch.
 - —If the "F" mark on the front camshaft flange faces down (cannot be seen), turn the crankshaft clockwise 1-5/8 (585°) turn and align the "RT" mark with the index notch.

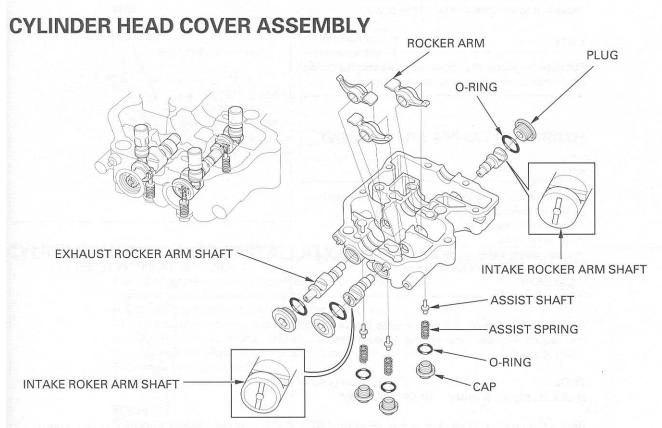




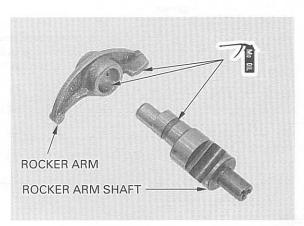
The remainder of the rear cylinder camshaft installation is the same as the procedures described on page 8-23 except the mark on the camshaft flange that should face up should be an "R".

Remove the 2 mm pin holding the cam chain tensioner wedge A for both tensioners.

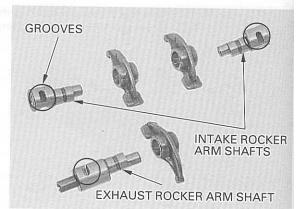




Apply molybdenum oil solution to the rocker arm slipper surfaces and rocker arm shaft sliding surfaces.



Install the rocker arm shafts with the rocker arms, make sure that the assist shaft groove are facing the assist shaft hole side (see previous page).



Rotate each rocker arm shaft so that the arms are moved in toward the center of the cover.

NOTE:

Put your finger on the rocker arms as you rotate the shaft to be sure which way they're removing.

HYDRAULIC TAPPET ADJUSTMENT

NOTE

Whenever replacing the following parts, the hydraulic tappet must be adjusted with shims.

- -Cylinder head cover
- -Cylinder head
- Valve stem, valve guide and valve seat refacing
- -Rocker arm and rocker arm shaft
- -Camshaft

After bleeding the oil in the hydraulic tappets with the tappet bleeder, install the tappets into the cylinder head.

TOOL:

Hydraulic tappet bleeder 07973-MJ00000

Rotate the crankshaft clockwise and align the "FT" mark ("RT" mark for rear cylinder) with the index notch (page 8-22 or 8-24), with the cam lobes facing down.

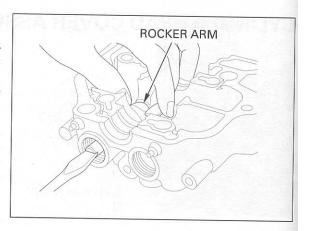
Install the cylinder head cover and tighten the bolts and nuts with the water pipe and washers (Install the washers indicated by the "A" marks.)

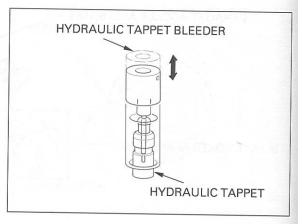
TORQUE:

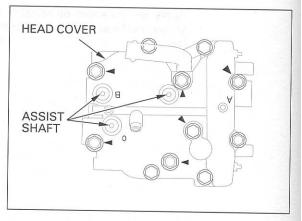
8 mm bolt and nut: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft) 10 mm nut:

VT1100C: 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft) VT1100T: 43 N·m (4.4 kgf·m , 32 lbf·ft)

Install the assist shafts into their holes in the cylinder head cover.







Install a suitable plate to the front or rear cylinder head cover for the magnetic base and place a dial indicator on the assist shaft.

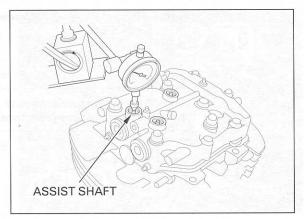
Measure the assist shaft stroke by rotating the crankshaft clockwise two times.

NOTE:

The amount of assist shaft stroke will determine the number of tappet shims needed.

Determine and record the number of shims required for each tappet according to the following chart.

Assist shaft stroke	Number of shims needed 0.5 mm (0.02 in)
0-1.20 mm (0-0.047 in)	0
1.20 - 1.50 mm (0.047 - 0.059 in)	to have 17 instan
1.50-1.80 mm (0.059-0.070 in)	2
1.80-2.10 mm (0.070-0.083 in)	3
2.10-2.40 mm (0.083-0.094 in)	4
2.40-2.70 mm (0.094-0.106 in)	5



CYLINDER HEAD COVER INSTALLATION

Place the tappet in a container filled with kerosene. Place the tappet bleeder into the tappet.

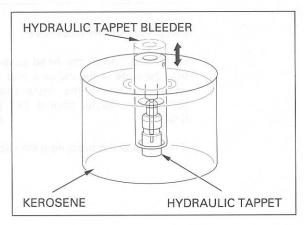
Hold the tappet upright and pump the tappet until air bubbles stop coming out. Remove the tool, try quickly to compress the tappet by hand. You should not be able to compress it more than 0.2 mm (0.008 in) (page 8-10).

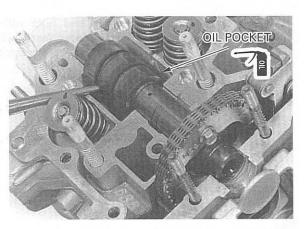
Remove the tappet from the fluid keeping it upright.

TOOL:

Hydraulic tappet bleeder 07973 - MJ00000

Pour engine oil into the oil pocket in the cylinder head until the cam lobes are covered.



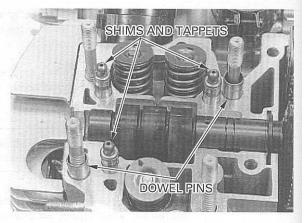


Install the shims into each hydraulic tappet hole in the cylinder head. Install the hydraulic tappets.

CAUTION:

Do not tilt the hydraulic tappets more than necessary; keep them as upright as possible.

Install the dowel pins.



Rotate the crankshaft clockwise and align the "FT" mark ("RT" mark for rear cylinder) with the index notch, that is cam lobes facing down.

Apply liquid sealant to the camshaft plugs where they contact the cylinder head and install them.

Apply liquid sealant to the mating surface (shadowed area) of the cylinder head cover.

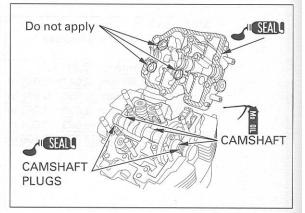
NOTE:

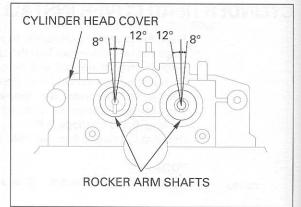
Do not apply sealant around the hydraulic tappet holes. Sealant in these locations could cause a hydraulic tappet failure.

Install the cylinder head cover.

Be sure to install the head cover securely, check that the slots in the exhaust and intake rocker arm shafts are within the limits shown (Both intake rocker arm shafts should fall within the same limits).

If not, repeat the preceding step and recheck.



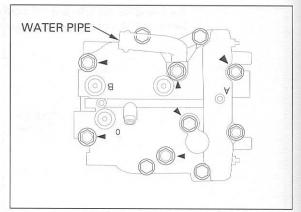


Install the bolts and nuts with water pipe and washers (Install the washers indicated by the " \triangle " marks.) and tighten them in a crisscross pattern in 2-3 steps.

TORQUE:

8 mm bolt and nut: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft) 10 mm nut:

VT1100C: 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft) **VT1100T**: 43 N·m (4.4 kgf·m , 32 lbf·ft)



Install the assist shafts into their holes in the cylinder head cover.

Install the assist springs onto the assist shaft.

Apply engine oil to new O-rings and install the assist shaft caps with the O-rings.

TORQUE: 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)

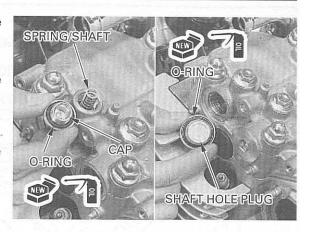
Apply engine oil to new O-rings and install the rocker arm shaft hole plugs with the O-rings.

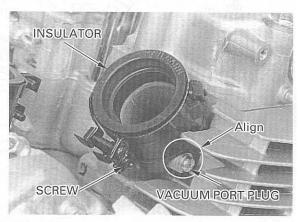
TORQUE: 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft)

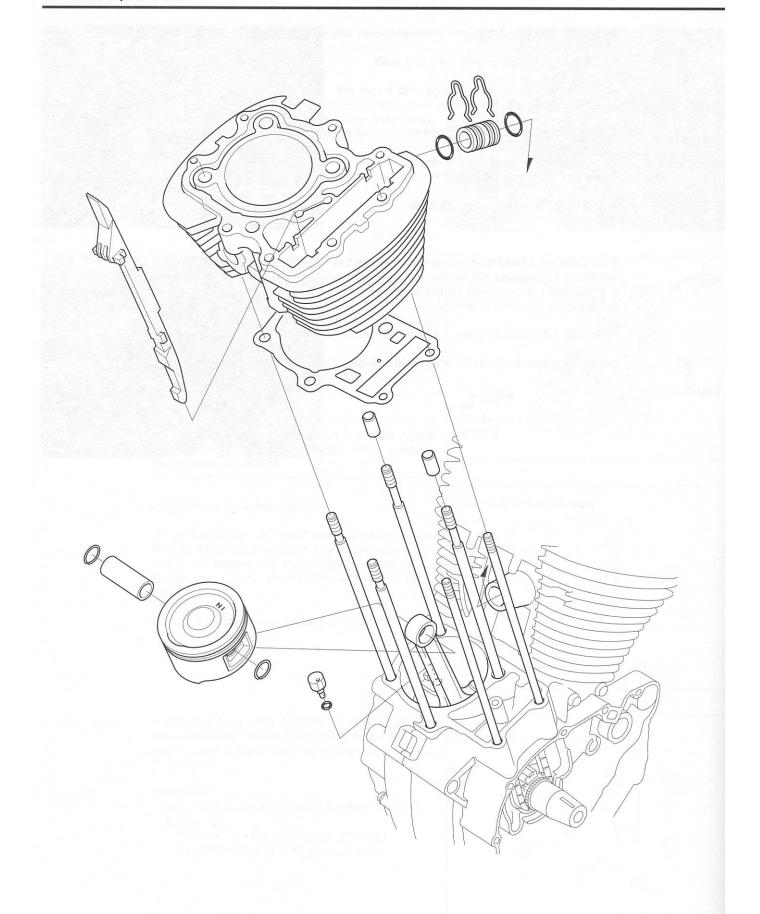
If the carburetor insulators are removed, install the insulators by aligning the groove in the insulator with the vacuum port plug on the intake port and tighten the band screws securely.

TORQUE: 2.0 N·m (0.2 kgf·m , 1.4 lbf·ft)

Install the engine in the frame (page 7-10 or 7-18).







9

9. CYLINDER/PISTON

			Freedom of
SERVICE INFORMATION	9-1	PISTON RING INSTALLATION	9-8
TROUBLESHOOTING	9-2	PISTON INSTALLATION	9-8
CYLINDER REMOVAL	9-3	CYLINDER INSTALLATION	9-9
PISTON REMOVAL	9-4		

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

- To service the cylinder/piston, the engine must be removed from the frame.
- Take care not to damage the cylinder wall and piston.
- Be careful not to damage the mating surfaces when removing the cylinder.
- When removing the piston, clean carbon and sludge from the top of the cylinder.
- When disassembling, mark and store the disassembled parts to ensure that they are reinstalled in their original locations.

SPECIFICATIONS

	ITEM		CT1117.1-1	Unit: mm (i
		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
Cylinder	I. D.		87.500 - 87.515 (3.4449 - 3.4455)	87.545 (3,4466)
	Out of round			0.05 (0.002)
	Taper			0.05 (0.002)
	Warpage		@ 	0.05 (0.002)
Piston,	Pisotn mark direction		"IN" mark toward the intake side	0.03 (0.002)
piston ring and piston	Piston O. D.		87.470 – 87.490 (3.4437 – 3.4445) at 10 (0.4) from the bottom	87.41 (3.441)
pin	Piston pin hole I. D.	1 plans	22.002 – 22.008 (0.8662 – 0.8665)	22.018 (0.8668)
	Piston pin O. D. Connecting rod small end I. D. Cylinder-to-piston clearance Piston-to-piston pin clearance Connecting rod-to-piston pin clearance		21.994 – 22.000 (0.8659 – 0.8661)	21.984 (0.8655)
			22.020 - 22.041 (0.8669 - 0.8678)	22.051 (0.8681)
			0.010-0.045 (0.0004-0.0018)	0.32 (0.013)
			0.002-0.014 (0.0001-0.0006)	0.034 (0.0013)
			0.020-0.047 (0.0008-0.0019)	0.07 (0.003)
	Piston ring-to-groove	Тор	0.020-0.050 (0.0008-0.0020)	0.25 (0.010)
clearance Piston ring end gap	Second	0.015-0.045 (0.0006-0.0018)	0.20 (0.008)	
	Top/Second	0.20-0.35 (0.008-0.014)	0.50 (0.020)	
	Oil (side rail)	0.30-0.90 (0.012-0.035)	1.1 (0.04)	
	Piston ring mark direction	Top/second	Marking facing up	

TROUBLESHOOTING

Compression too low, hard starting or poor performance at low speed

- Leaking cylinder head gasket
- Worn, stuck or broken piston ring
- Worn or damaged cylinder and piston

Compression too high, overheating or knocking

 Excessive carbon built-up on piston or combustion chamber.

Excessive smoke

- Worn cylinder, piston or piston rings
- Improper installation of piston rings
- Scored or scratched piston or cylinder wall

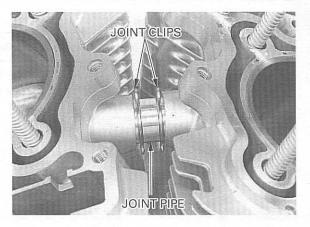
Abnormal noise (piston)

- Worn piston pin or piston pin hole
- Worn cylinder, piston or piston ring
- Worn connecting rod small end

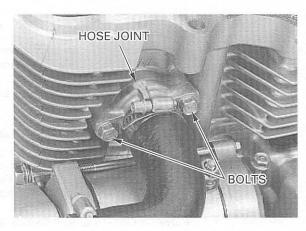
CYLINDER REMOVAL

Remove the cylinder head (page 8-10).

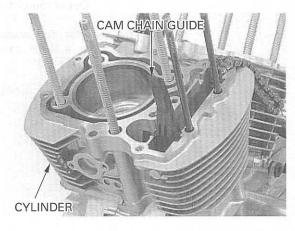
Remove the joint clip and disconnect the water joint pipe by sliding it.



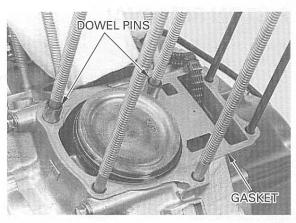
Rear cylinder only: Remove the two bolts and water hose joint.



Remove the cam chain guide. Remove the cylinder.



Remove the gasket and dowel pins.

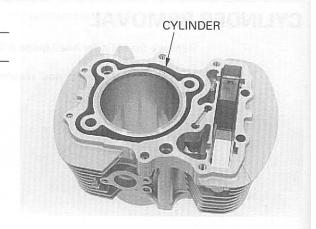


CAUTION:

Avoid damaging the gasket surfaces.

The gasket will come off easier if it is soaked in solvent.

The gasket will Clean the top of the each cylinder thoroughly.



CYLINDER INSPECTION

Inspect the cylinder bore for scratch or wear. Measure the cylinder I. D. at three levels in the \boldsymbol{X} and \boldsymbol{Y} axis.

Take the maximum reading to determine the cylinder wear.

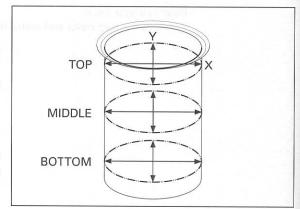
SERVICE LIMIT: 87.545 mm (3.4466 in)

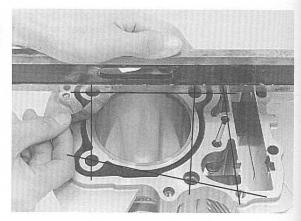
Calculate the cylinder for taper and out of round at three levels in an X and Y axis. Take the maximum reading to determine the taper and out of round.

SERVICE LIMIT: Taper: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)
Out of round: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)

Check the cylinder for warpage by placing a straight edge and a feeler gauge across the stud holes as shown.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)





PISTON REMOVAL

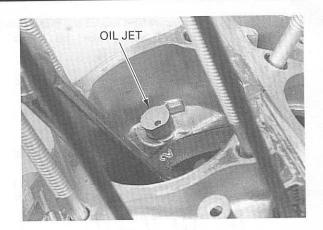
Place a clean shop towel over the crankcase to prevent the clip from falling into the crankcase.

Place a clean shop Remove the piston pin clip using a pair of pliers.

crankcase to Remove the piston pin and remove the piston.



Remove the oil jets and check for clogging.



Inspect the piston rings for movement by rotating the rings. The rings should be able to move in their grooves without catching.

Spread each piston ring and remove it by lifting it up at a point just opposite the gap.

CAUTION:

Do not damage the piston ring by spreading the ends too far.

PISTON RING

(S) HI

Clean carbon deposits from the ring grooves with a ring that will be discarded. Never use the wire brush; it will scratch the groove.

Clean carbon deposits from the piston

PISTON/PISTON RING INSPECTION

Measure and record the piston O. D.

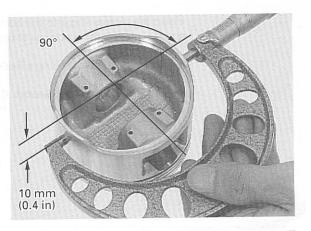
NOTE:

Take measurements 10 mm (0.4 in) from the bottom and at 90° to the piston pin hole.

SERVICE LIMIT: 87.41 mm (3.441 in)

Calculate the cylinder-to-piston clearance (cylinder I. D.: see previous page).

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.32 mm (0.013 in)



Measure and record the piston pin hole I. D. in an X and Y axis. Take the maximum reading to determine the I. D.

SERVICE LIMIT: 22.018 mm (0.8668 in)

Measure and record the piston pin O. D. at three points.

SERVICE LIMIT: 21.984 mm (0.8655 in)

Calculate the piston-to-piston pin clearance by subtracting the piston pin O. D. from the piston pin hole I. D.

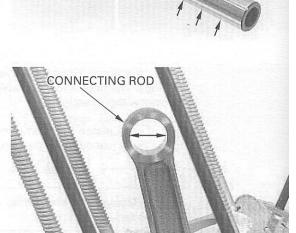
SERVICE LIMIT: 0.034 mm (0.0013 in)

Measure and record the connecting rod small end ${\sf I.\,D.}$

SERVICE LIMIT: 22.051 mm (0.8681 in)

Calculate the connecting rod-to-piston pin clearance by subtracting the piston pin O. D. from the small end I. D.

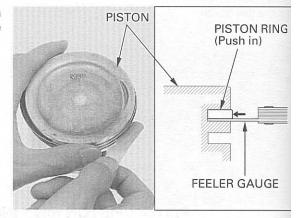
SERVICE LIMIT: 0.07 mm (0.003 in)



Push the ring until the outer surface of the piston ring is nearly flush with the piston and measure the clearance using a feeler gauge.

SERVICE LIMITS: Top: 0.25 mm (0.010 in)

Second: 0.20 mm (0.008 in)



Insert the piston ring into the bottom of the cylinder squarely using the piston as shown.

Measure the end gap using a feeler gauge.

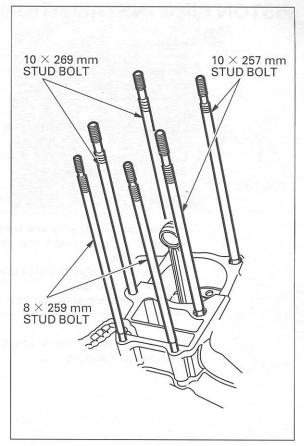
SERVICE LIMITS: Top/Second: 0.50 mm (0.020 in) **Oil:** 1.1 mm (0.04 in)

PISTON RING

PISTON RING

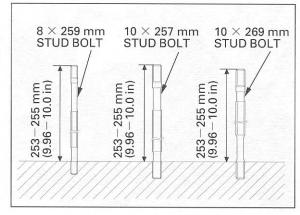
CYLINDER STUD BOLT REPLACEMENT

If you will replace the stud bolts, remove the stud bolts from the crankcase.



Install the stud bolts.

After installing, be sure to measure the distance from top of each stud to the crankcase surface as shown.



PISTON RING INSTALLATION

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the piston and rings during assembly.

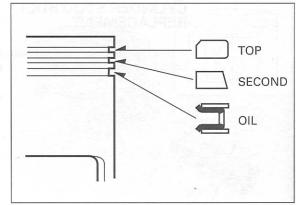
Clean the piston heads, ring lands and skirts.

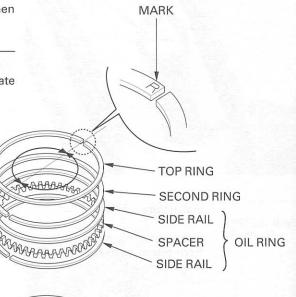
Carefully install the piston rings onto the piston with the markings facing up.

NOTE:

- Do not confuse the top and second rings: The top ring is chrome-coated and second ring is not coated (black).
- To install the oil ring, install the spacer first, then install the side rails.
- Stagger the ring end gaps 180° as shown.

After installing the rings, check that they rotate freely without sticking.





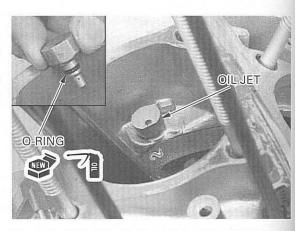


180°

PISTON INSTALLATION

Apply engine oil to new O-rings and install them onto the oil jets.

Install the oil jets into the crankcase properly as shown (jet hole side facing toward the connecting rod side).



NOTE:

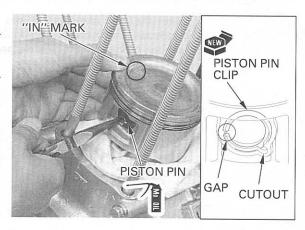
Place a clean shop towel over the crankcase to prevent the clip from falling into the crankcase.

Apply molybdenum oil solution to the piston pin outer surface.

Set the piston over the connecting rod with the "IN" mark facing towards the intake side and install the piston pin through the piston and connecting rod.

Make sure that the piston pin clips are seated properly and their end gaps are not aligned with the cutouts in the position.

Install new piston pin clips.



CYLINDER INSTALLATION

Clean the gasket surface of the crankcase thoroughly, being careful not to damage it, and careful not to allow gasket material into the crankcase.

Install a new gasket and the dowel pins.

Apply engine oil to the cylinder wall, piston and piston ring outer surfaces.

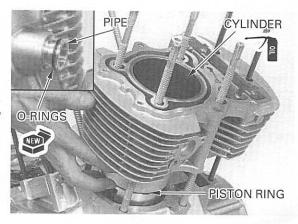


Before installing the cylinder, coat new O-rings with coolant and install them into the end grooves in the water joint pipe and install the joint pipe into the cylinder.

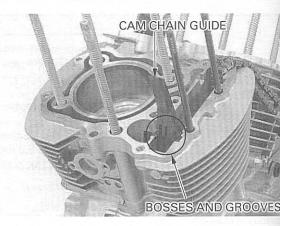
CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the piston rings and cylinder wall.

Route the cam chain through the cylinder and install the cylinder over the piston while compressing the piston rings with your fingers.

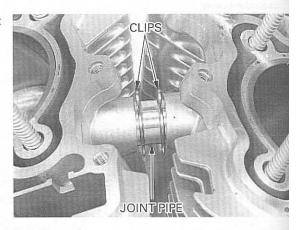


Insert the cam chain guide into the cylinder and crankcase and install it by aligning the its bosses with the grooves in the cylinder securely.



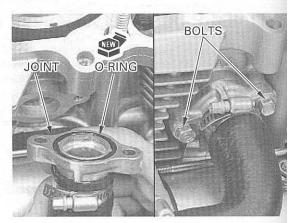
Slide the water joint pipe in position and connect the cylinders.

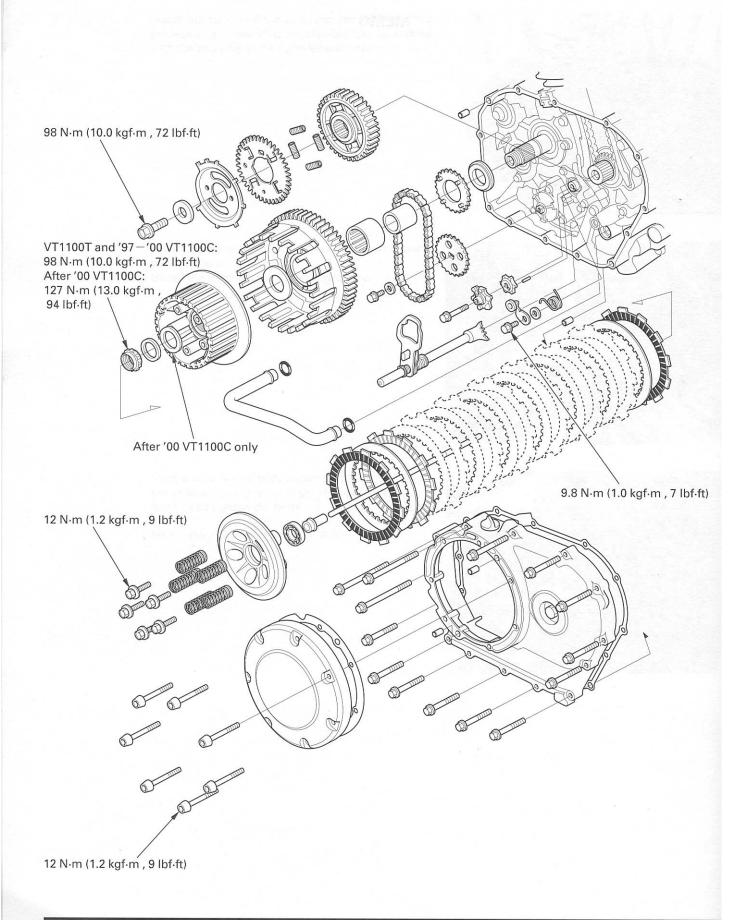
Install the joint clips in the joint grooves.



Coat a new O-ring with coolant and install it in the water hose joint groove of the rear cylinder. Install and tighten the bolts.

Install the cylinder head (page 8-20).





10. CLUTCH/GEARSHIFT LINKAGE

SERVICE INFORMATION	10-1	CLUTCH LIFTER ARM	10-8
TROUBLESHOOTING	10-2	CLUTCH OUTER	10-10
CLUTCH REMOVAL	10-3	PRIMARY DRIVE GEAR	10-13
CLUTCH INSTALLATION	10-6	GEARSHIFT LINKAGE	10-15

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

- The clutch and gearshift linkage parts can be serviced with the engine installed in the frame.
- Engine oil viscosity and level and the use of oil additives have an effect on clutch disengagement. Oil additives of any kind are specifically not recommended. When the clutch does not disengage or the motorcycle creeps with the clutch disengaged, inspect the engine oil viscosity and level before servicing the clutch system.
- The crankcase must be separated when the transmission, shift drum and shift forks require service (section 11).

SPECIFICATIONS

Unit: mm(in)

ITEM	STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT
Clutch lever free play	10-20 (3/8-3/4)	ens vilo e rmane tan te
Clutch spring free length	44.0 (1.73)	42.5 (1.67)
Clutch disc thickness A/B	3.72-3.88 (0.146-0.153)	3.1 (0.12)
Clutch plate warpage		0.30 (0.012)
Clutch outer guide I. D.	27.955 - 28.012 (1.1006 - 1.1028)	28.08 (1.106)
Mainshaft O. D. at clutch outer guide	27.980 - 27.993 (1.1016 - 1.1021)	27.93 (1.100)

TORQUE VALUES

Clutch cover bolt

12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Clutch center lock nut

VT1100T and '97-'00 VT1100C:

98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m, 72 lbf·ft) 127 N·m (13.0 kgf·m, 94 lbf·ft)-

Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.

After '00 VT1100C:

12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Clutch lifter plate bolt Primary drive gear bolt

98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m, 72 lbf·ft)

Shift stopper arm pivot bolt

9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7 lbf·ft) Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.

Stake.

TOOLS

Clutch center holder

07JMB-MN50301 or 07HGB-001000A (U. S. A. only) or

Holder plate

07HGB-001010B or -(U. S. A. only)

07HGB-001010A

and

Holder collars "A"

07HGB-001020B or -

(set of 4)

07HGB-001020A

Gear holder

07724-0010100 not available in U.S.A.

Driver

07749 - 0010000

Attachment, 32 × 35 mm

07746 - 0010100

Pilot, 17 mm

07746 - 0040400

TROUBLESHOOTING

Clutch lever too hard

- Damaged, kinked or dirty clutch cable
- Improperly routed clutch cable
- Damaged clutch lifter mechanism
- Faulty clutch lifter plate bearing

Clutch will not disengage or motorcycle creeps with clutch disengaged

- Too much clutch lever free play
- Warped plate
- Loose clutch lock nut
- Engine oil level too high, improper oil viscosity or oil additive used

Clutch slips

- · Clutch lifter sticking
- Worn clutch discs
- Weak clutch springs
- No clutch lever free play
- · Engine oil level too low or oil additive used

Hard to shift

- Improper clutch operation
- · Incorrect engine oil viscosity
- Incorrect clutch adjustment
- Bent or damaged gearshift spindle
- Damaged shift drum cam grooves
- · Bent shift forks or fork shaft (section 11)

Transmission jumps out of gear

- Broken shift drum stopper arm
- · Broken shift linkage return springs
- Damaged shift drum cam grooves
- · Bent shift fork shaft (section 11)
- Worn or bent shift forks (section 11)
- Worn gear dogs or slots (section 11)

CLUTCH REMOVAL

NOTE:

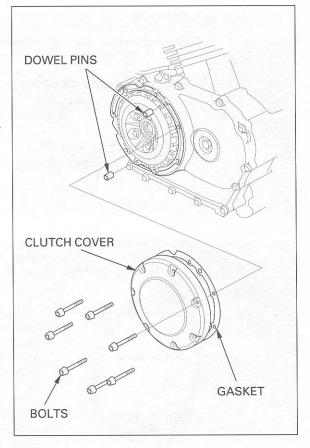
All clutch components except the clutch outer can be serviced by removing the clutch cover. For the clutch outer service, remove the right crankcase cover (page 10-10).

CLUTCH COVER REMOVAL

Drain the engine oil (page 3-11). Remove the exhaust system (page 2-9 or 2-11).

Remove the seven bolts and the clutch cover.

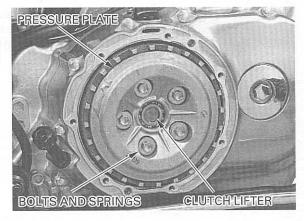
Remove the gasket and dowel pins.



DISASSEMBLY

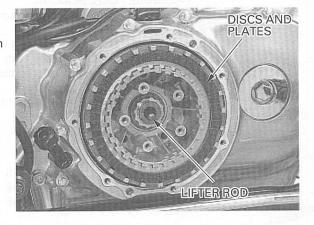
Loosen the pressure plate bolts in a crisscross pattern in 2 or 3 steps, and remove the bolts and clutch springs.

Remove the pressure plate with the clutch lifter.



Remove the lifter rod.

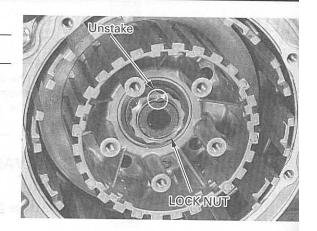
Remove the nine clutch discs and eight clutch plates.



CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the mainshaft threads.

Unstake the clutch lock nut with a drill or grinder.



Hold the clutch center with the clutch center holder and loosen the clutch center lock nut with a commercially available 30 mm 12-point socket.

TOOL:

Clutch center holder 07JMB-MN50301 or

07HGB-001000A

(U. S. A. only) or Holder plate 07HGB - 001010B or

07HGB - 001010A (U. S. A. only)

and

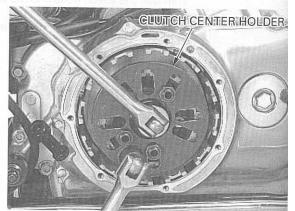
Holder collars "A"

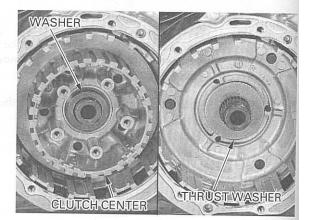
(set of 4)

07HGB-001020B or 07HGB-001020A

(U.S.A. only)

Remove the lock nut and lock washer. After '00 VT1100C only: Remove the plain washer. Remove the clutch center and thrust washer.





INSPECTION

PRESSURE PLATE BEARING

Remove the clutch lifter from the pressure plate.

Check the pressure plate bearing for damage. Turn the bearing inner race with your finger. The bearing should turn smoothly and quietly without play.

Also check that the bearing outer race fits tightly in the plate.

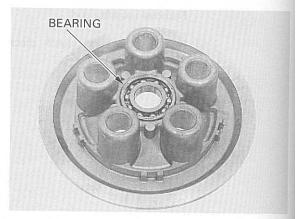
Replace the bearing if necessary.

TOOLS:

 Driver
 07749-0010000

 Attachment, 32 × 35 mm
 07746-0010100

 Pilot, 17 mm
 07746-0040400

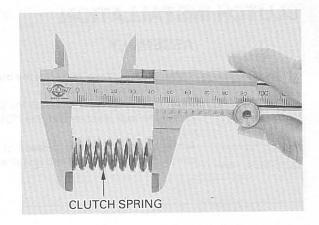


CLUTCH SPRING

Replace the clutch springs as a set.

Measure the spring free length.

SERVICE LIMIT: 42.5 mm (1.67 in)



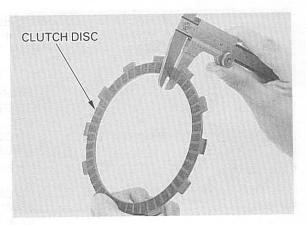
CLUTCH DISC

Check the clutch discs for signs of scoring or discoloration.

Replace the discs and plates as a set.

Replace the discs Measure the thickness of discs A and B.

SERVICE LIMIT: (A/B): 3.1 mm (0.12 in)

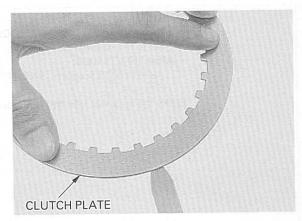


CLUTCH PLATE

Check the plate for excessive warpage or discoloration.

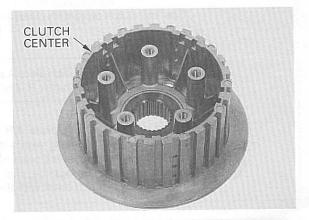
Check the plate warpage on a surface plate using a feeler gauge.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.30 mm (0.012 in)



CLUTCH CENTER

Check the clutch center for nicks, indentations or abnormal wear made by the clutch plates.



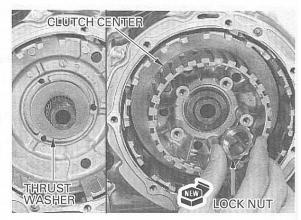
CLUTCH INSTALLATION

ASSEMBLY

Install the thrust washer onto the mainshaft. Install the clutch center.

After '00 VT1100C only: Install the plain washer. Install the lock washer with the "OUT" mark facing outside.

Apply engine oil to the threads of the new clutch center lock nut threads, and install and tighten it.



Hold the clutch center with the clutch center holder and tighten the lock nut with a commercially available 30 mm 12-point socket.

TOOL:

Clutch center holder 07JMB-MN50301 or

07HGB-001000A

(U.S.A. only) or

Holder plate 07HGB-001010B or

07HGB-001010A (U. S. A. only)

and

Holder collars "A"

(set of 4)

07HGB-001020B or 07HGB-001020A

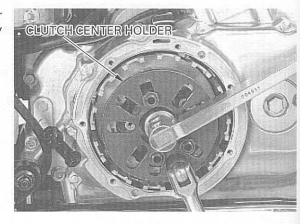
(U.S.A. only)

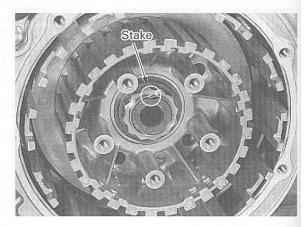


VT1100T and '97 – '00 VT1100C: 98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m , 72 lbf·ft) After '00 VT1100C:

127 N·m (13.0 kgf·m, 94 lbf·ft)

Stake the lock nut into the mainshaft groove.



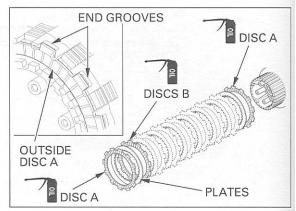


Coat the clutch discs with clean engine oil.

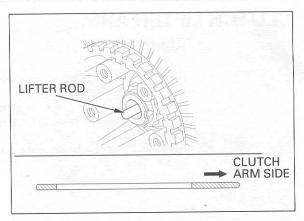
NOTE:

Do not confuse the clutch discs A and B: The disc A is Black and disc B is brown.

Install the nine clutch discs A/B and eight clutch plate alternately, starting with a disc (A), (The two clutch discs A are installed onto each end.) When installing the outside disc A, align the end grooves in the clutch outer with the tabs of disc.



Note the lifter rod installation direction and install it into the mainshaft.

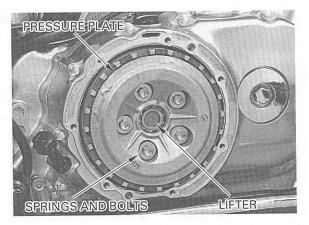


Install the clutch lifter into the pressure plate bearing.

Install the pressure plate and install the bolts with clutch springs.

Tighten the bolts in a crisscross pattern in 2-3 steps.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)



CLUTCH COVER INSTALLATION

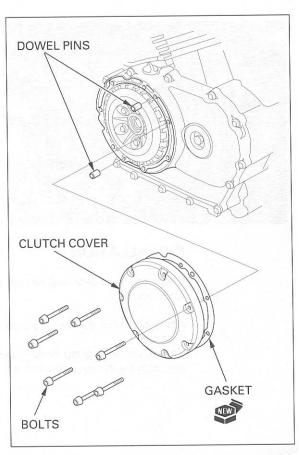
Install the dowel pins and new gasket.

Install the clutch cover and tighten the socket bolts.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)

Install the exhaust system (page 2-9 or 2-11).

After the clutch system service, fill the crankcase with the recommended engine oil (page 3-11) and perform the clutch adjustment (page 3-21).



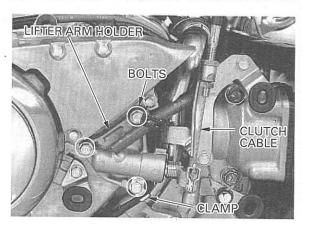
CLUTCH LIFTER ARM

REMOVAL

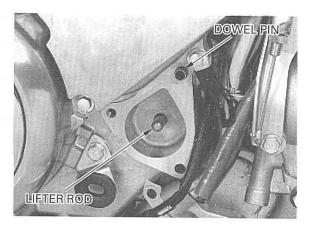
Remove the left crankcase rear cover (page 2-15).

Loosen the clutch cable adjuster lock nuts and disconnect the clutch cable from the lifter arm.

Remove the three bolts, wire clamp and the lifter arm holder.

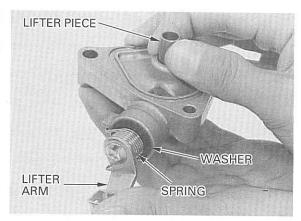


Remove the dowel pin and lifter rod.



Remove the lifter piece by turning the lifter arm clockwise.

Remove the lifter arm with the return spring and washer.

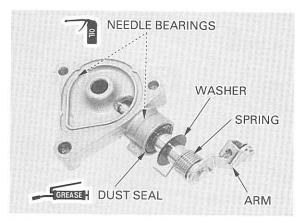


INSTALLATION

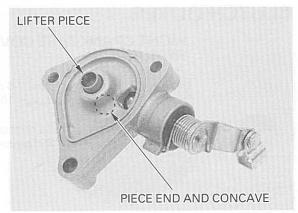
Check the dust seal and needle bearings for wear or damage.

Apply oil to the needle bearings and grease to the dust seal lips.

Note the return spring direction and install the lifter arm with the spring and washer.



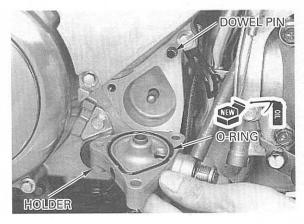
Install the lifter piece with the closed end facing the lifter arm shaft by turning the lifter arm clockwise and align the lifter piece end with the arm shaft concave.



Install the lifter rod (installation direction: page 10-7).

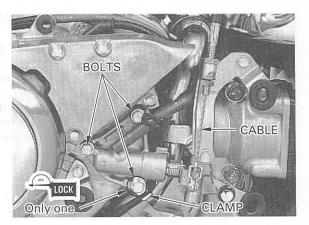
Coat a new O-ring with clean engine oil and install it into the groove in the lifter arm holder.

Install the dowel pin and the clutch arm holder onto the crankcase.



Apply locking agent to the holder bolt threads as shown and tighten the holder bolts with the clamp. Connect the clutch cable to the lifter arm.

After the clutch system service has been made, fill the crankcase with the recommended engine oil (page 3-11) and perform the clutch adjustment (page 3-21).

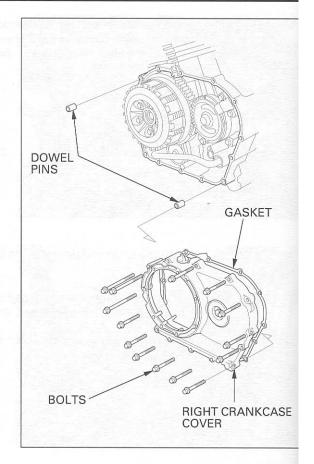


CLUTCH OUTER

RIGHT CRANKCASE COVER REMOVAL

Remove the sub-frame (page 7-5 or 7-13). Remove the clutch cover (page 10-3).

Remove the cover bolt and right crankcase cover. Remove the dowel pins and gasket.

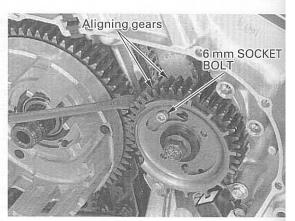


CLUTCH OUTER REMOVAL

Remove the clutch center (page 10-3).

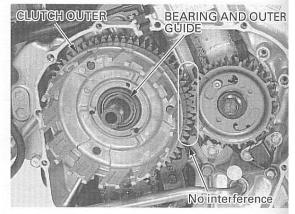
Prepare the no flanged 6 mm socket bolt (threads length 20 mm max.).

Install the 6 mm socket bolt into the scissors gears (primary drive gear and sub-gear) and tighten it while aligning gear teeth by prying the gears.



Turn the primary drive gear until the clutch outer can be removed so that the ignition pulse generator rotor tips do not interfered with the primary driven gear teeth of the clutch outer.

Remove the clutch outer, needle bearing and outer guide.



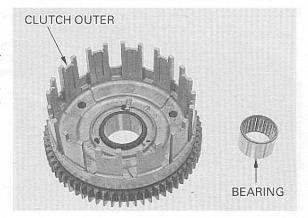
INSPECTION

CLUTCH OUTER

Check the primary driven gear teeth for wear or damage.

Check the slots in the clutch outer for nicks, indentations or abnormal wear made by the clutch discs.

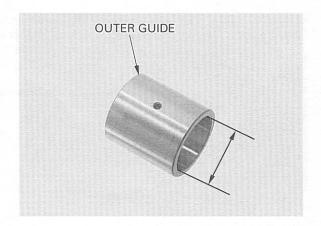
Check the needle bearing for wear or damage.



CLUTCH OUTER GUIDE

Measure the clutch outer guide I. D.

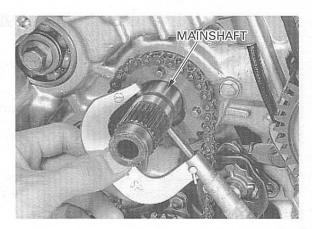
SERVICE LIMIT: 28.08 mm (1.106 in)



MAINSHAFT

Measure the mainshaft O. D. at clutch outer guide.

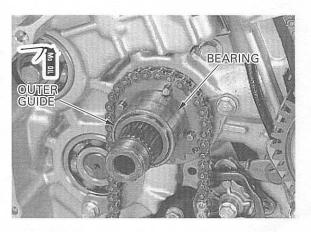
SERVICE LIMIT: 27.93 mm (1.100 in)



CLUTCH OUTER INSTALLATION

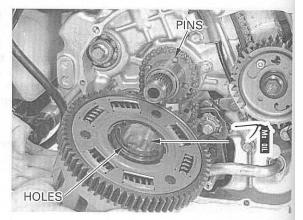
Apply molybdenum oil solution to the outer surface of the clutch outer guide and install it into the oil pump drive sprocket inner diameter securely.

Install the needle bearing onto the outer guide.



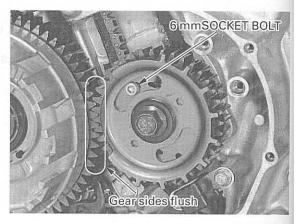
Apply molybdenum oil solution to the sliding surface of the clutch outer.

Install the clutch outer by aligning the holes in the clutch outer with the pins on the oil pump drive sprocket while turning the oil pump driven sprocket.



Be sure to install the clutch outer securely (i.e. aligned side surfaces of the primary drive and driven gears flush) and remove the 6 mm socket bolt.

Assemble the all clutch components (page 10-6).



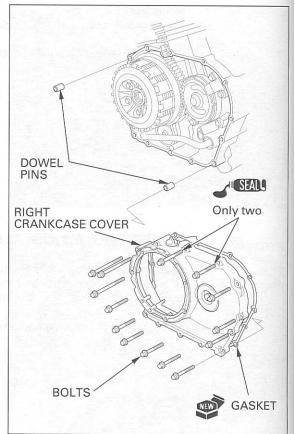
RIGHT CRANKCASE COVER INSTALLATION

Install the dowel pins and new gasket onto the crankcase.

Apply liquid sealant to the crankcase cover bolt threads as shown.

Install the right crankcase cover and tighten the cover bolts securely.

Install the clutch cover (page 10-7). Install the sub-frame (page 7-6 or 7-14).



PRIMARY DRIVE GEAR

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the ignition pulse generator.

REMOVAL

Remove the right crankcase cover (page 10-10).

Use a 6 mm socket bolt without a flange (threads length: 20 mm max.).

Install the 6 mm socket bolt into the scissors gears (primary drive gear and sub-gear) and tighten it while aligning the gear teeth by prying the gears.

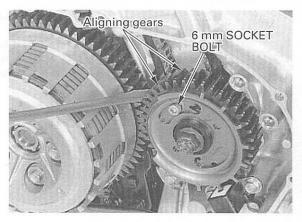
Insert the gear holder as shown.

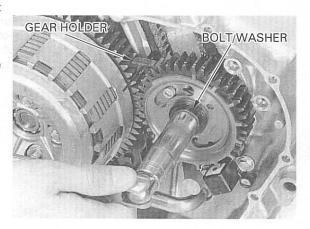
Loosen the primary drive gear bolt and remove the bolt and washer.

TOOL:

Gear holder

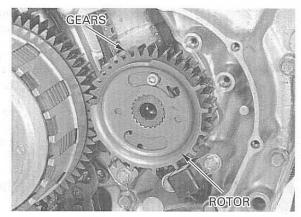
07724-0010100 not available in U. S. A.





Remove the ignition pulse generator rotor and primary drive gear assembly.

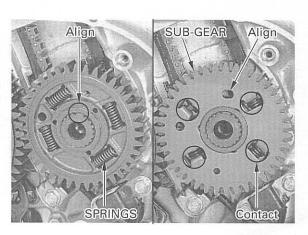
Remove the 6 mm socket bolt and disassemble the primary drive gear.



INSTALLATION

Install the primary drive gear with the springs by aligning the wide groove with the wide tooth.

Be sure to install the springs into the grooves securely and set the sub-gear onto drive gear boss by aligning the threaded hole in the drive gear with the slot in the sub-gear, and contacting the subgear tabs against the springs.



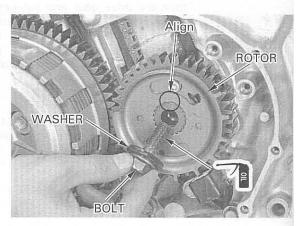
Loosely install the 6 mm socket bolt into the primary drive gears.

Align the primary drive gear with sub-gear teeth by prying the gears, being careful not to come off the springs, then tighten the 6 mm socket bolt.



Install the ignition pulse generator rotor by aligning the wide groove with the wide tooth.

Apply engine oil to the threads of the primary drive gear bolt and install it with the washer.



Insert the gear holder as shown and tighten the primary drive gear bolt to the specified torque.

TOOL:

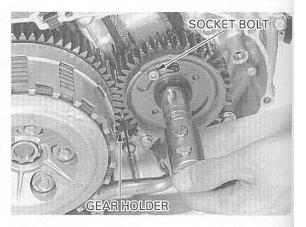
Gear holder

07724-0010100 not available in U. S. A.

TORQUE: 98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m, 72 lbf·ft)

Remove the 6 mm socket bolt from the primary drive gears.

Install the right crankcase cover (page 10-12).

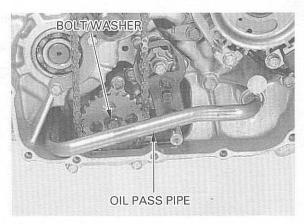


GEARSHIFT LINKAGE

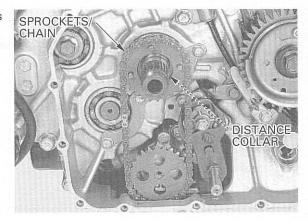
REMOVAL

Shift the transmission into neutral. Remove the clutch outer (page 10-10).

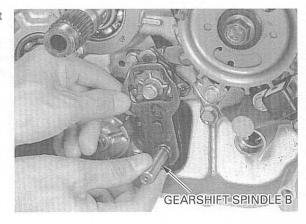
Remove the oil pass pipe with the O-rings. Remove the oil pump driven sprocket bolt and washer.



Remove the oil pump drive and driven sprockets and chain as a set.
Remove the distance collar.



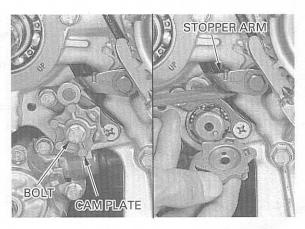
Pull out the spindle shaft and remove the gearshift spindle B.



CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the crankcase.

Remove the cam plate bolt. Lift up the stopper arm using a screw driver and remove the cam plate.

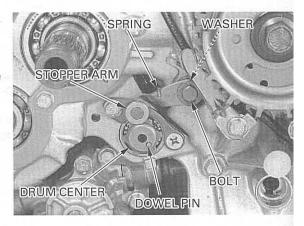


CLUTCH/GEARSHIFT LINKAGE

Remove the stopper arm bolt, return spring, washer and arm.

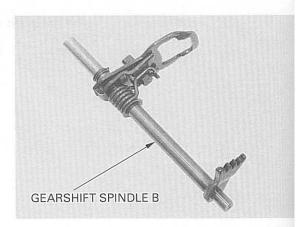
Remove the drum center with dowel pin.

For the gearshift spindle A removal, refer to page 18-10 "Flywheel/Starter Clutch".



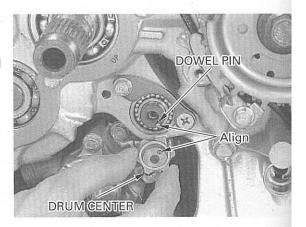
INSPECTION

Check the gearshift spindle for wear or damage.



INSTALLATION

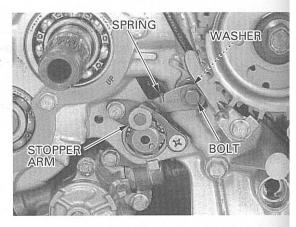
Install the dowel pin into the shift drum. Align the hole in the drum center with the dowel pin and install the drum center to the shift drum.



Install the stopper arm with the washer (between the spring and arm) and return spring and tighten the stopper arm bolt in half-way.

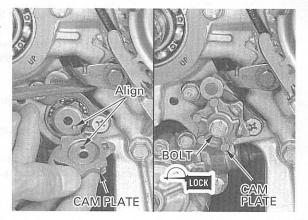
Be sure to hook the return spring to the stopper arm and tighten the bolt.

TORQUE: 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7 lbf·ft)



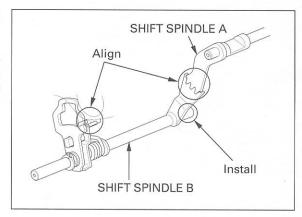
Install the cam plate by aligning the hole in the cam plate with the dowel pin while lift up the stopper arm with a screw driver.

Apply locking agent to the cam plate bolt threads and tighten the cam plate bolt securely.

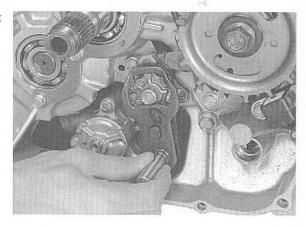


Be sure that the cam plate is shifted into neutral position as shown in the photograph above.

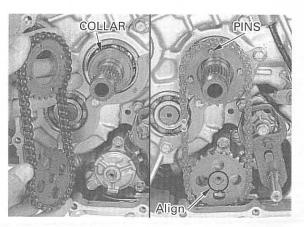
Install the shift spindle B into the hole of the crankcase by aligning the teeth of the spindle A and B, and the return spring ends with the right crankcase lug.



Move the gearshift pedal and check the shift mechanism for smooth operation.



Install the distance collar over the mainshaft. Install the oil pump drive and driven sprocket and chain as an assembly with the long pins side of the drive sprocket facing out. Align the flat surfaces of the driven sprocket hole and oil pump shaft end.



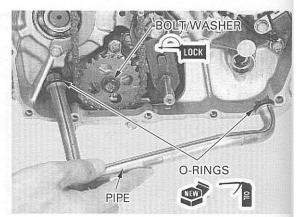
CLUTCH/GEARSHIFT LINKAGE

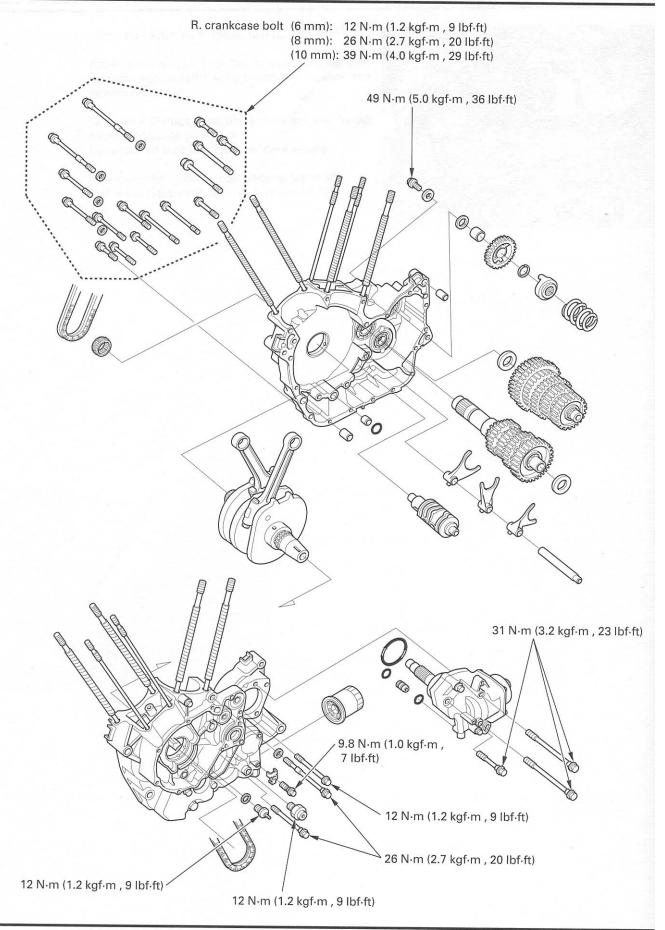
Install the clutch outer (page 10-11).

Apply locking agent to the driven sprocket bolt threads, and install the bolt with the washer and tighten it securely.

Coat new O-rings with the engine oil and install them onto the oil pipe ends.
Install the oil pipe into the crankcase securely.

Assemble the all clutch components (page 10-6). Install the right crankcase cover (page 10-12).





11

11. CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION

SERVICE INFORMATION	11-1	OUTPUT GEAR	11-18
TROUBLESHOOTING	11-4	CRANKCASE BEARING REPLACEMENT	11-34
CRANKCASE SEPARATION	11-5	CRANKCASE ASSEMBLY	11-36
CRANKSHAFT/CONNECTING ROD	11-6	CHANNOAGE AGGEMBET	
TRANSMISSION	11-12		

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

- The crankcase halves must be separated to service the connecting rod, crankshaft, transmission (including the shift fork and shift drum) and output gear. To service these parts, the engine must be removed from the frame (section 7).
- The following parts must be removed before disassembling the crankcase.
 - -Cylinder head (section 8)
 - -Cylinder and piston (section 9)
 - -Clutch, primary drive gear and gearshift linkage (section 10)
 - -Ignition pulse generator (section 17)
 - -Oil pump (section 4)
 - -Water pump (section 6)
 - -Starter motor and starter drive gear (section 18)
 - Flywheel and starter clutch (section 18)
- Be careful not to damage the crankcase mating surfaces when servicing.
- Mark and store the connecting rod and bearings to be sure of their correct locations. If the bearings are improperly
 installed they will block the oil holes, causing insufficient lubrication and eventual engine seizure.
- Be careful not to damage the main journal bearing inserts during crankshaft removal and installation.
- Connecting rod bearing inserts are select fitted and are identified by color code. Select replacement bearings from the code table. Check the oil clearance using a plastigauge after replacing bearing inserts.
- Prior to assembling the crankcase halves, apply sealant to their mating surfaces. Wipe off excess sealant thoroughly.
- Replace the output drive gear and driven gear as a set.
- Whenever you replace the output driven/drive gears, bearings, bearing holder or gear case, perform the gear contact pattern and backlash inspection and adjust the shim. The extension lines from the gear engagement surfaces should intersect at one point.
- When using the lock nut wrench for the output gear case, use a deflecting beam type torque wrench 20 inches long. The lock nut wrench increases the torque wrench's leverage, so the torque wrench reading will be less than the torque actually applied to the lock nut. The specification given is the actual torque applied to the lock nut, not the reading on the torque wrench. Do not over tighten the lock nuts. The specification later in the text gives both actual and indicated.
- Protect the output gear case with a shop towel or soft jaws while holding it in vise. Do not clamp it too tight as it could damage the gear case.

CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION

SPECIFICATIONS

Unit: mm (in

connecting rod Mai Cra Mai Cra Transmission Gea Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	annecting rod big end signkpin oil clearance in journal oil clearance in journal oil clearance ankshaft runout ar I. D. ar bushing O. D. ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance		$\begin{array}{c} 0.10-0.25 (0.004-0.010) \\ 0.038-0.062 (0.0015-0.0024) \\ 0.030-0.046 (0.0012-0.0018) \\ \hline \\ 31.000-31.025 (1.2205-1.2215) \\ 33.000-33.025 (1.2992-1.3002) \\ 30.970-30.995 (1.2193-1.2203) \\ 30.950-30.975 (1.2185-1.2195) \\ 32.950-32.975 (1.2972-1.2982) \\ 32.955-32.980 (1.2974-1.2984) \\ 28.000-28.021 (1.1024-1.1032) \\ 29.985-30.006 (1.1805-1.1813) \\ 27.959-27.980 (1.1007-1.1016) \\ 29.950-29.975 (1.2197-1.1801) \\ 27.967-27.980 (1.1011-1.1016) \\ 0.005-0.055 (0.0002-0.0022) \\ 0.025-0.075 (0.0010-0.0030) \\ \hline \end{array}$	0.28 (0.011) 0.070 (0.0028) 0.060 (0.0024) 0.05 (0.002) 31.035 (1.2218) 33.035 (1.3006) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030) 0.095 (0.0037)
rod Mai Cra Transmission Gea Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive Cra Mai Cou	in journal oil cleara ankshaft runout ar I. D. ar bushing O. D. ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	M3, M5, C4 C1, C2 M3, C4 M5 C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	0.030 - 0.046 (0.0012 - 0.0018) 31.000 - 31.025 (1.2205 - 1.2215) 33.000 - 33.025 (1.2992 - 1.3002) 30.970 - 30.995 (1.2193 - 1.2203) 30.950 - 30.975 (1.2185 - 1.2195) 32.950 - 32.975 (1.2972 - 1.2982) 32.955 - 32.980 (1.2974 - 1.2984) 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	0.070 (0.0028) 0.060 (0.0024) 0.05 (0.002) 31.035 (1.2218) 33.035 (1.3006) 30.94 (1.218) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Cra Transmission Gea Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive Gea	ar l. D. ar bushing O. D. ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	M3, M5, C4 C1, C2 M3, C4 M5 C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	0.030 - 0.046 (0.0012 - 0.0018) 31.000 - 31.025 (1.2205 - 1.2215) 33.000 - 33.025 (1.2992 - 1.3002) 30.970 - 30.995 (1.2193 - 1.2203) 30.950 - 30.975 (1.2185 - 1.2195) 32.950 - 32.975 (1.2972 - 1.2982) 32.955 - 32.980 (1.2974 - 1.2984) 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	0.060 (0.0024) 0.05 (0.002) 31.035 (1.2218) 33.035 (1.3006) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Transmission Gea Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive Gea	ar I. D. ar bushing O. D. ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	C1, C2 M3, C4 M5 C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	$\begin{array}{c} 31.000-31.025 (1.2205-1.2215) \\ 33.000-33.025 (1.2992-1.3002) \\ 30.970-30.995 (1.2193-1.2203) \\ 30.950-30.975 (1.2185-1.2195) \\ 32.950-32.975 (1.2972-1.2982) \\ 32.955-32.980 (1.2974-1.2984) \\ 28.000-28.021 (1.1024-1.1032) \\ 29.985-30.006 (1.1805-1.1813) \\ 27.959-27.980 (1.1007-1.1016) \\ 29.950-29.975 (1.1791-1.1801) \\ 27.967-27.980 (1.1011-1.1016) \\ 0.005-0.055 (0.0002-0.0022) \\ 0.025-0.075 (0.0010-0.0030) \\ \end{array}$	0.05 (0.002) 31.035 (1.2218) 33.035 (1.3006) 30.94 (1.218) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive Output drive	ar bushing O. D. ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	C1, C2 M3, C4 M5 C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	$\begin{array}{c} 33.000 - 33.025 \ (1.2992 - 1.3002) \\ 30.970 - 30.995 \ (1.2193 - 1.2203) \\ 30.950 - 30.975 \ (1.2185 - 1.2195) \\ 32.950 - 32.975 \ (1.2972 - 1.2982) \\ 32.955 - 32.980 \ (1.2974 - 1.2984) \\ 28.000 - 28.021 \ (1.1024 - 1.1032) \\ 29.985 - 30.006 \ (1.1805 - 1.1813) \\ 27.959 - 27.980 \ (1.1007 - 1.1016) \\ 29.950 - 29.975 \ (1.1791 - 1.1801) \\ 27.967 - 27.980 \ (1.1011 - 1.1016) \\ 0.005 - 0.055 \ (0.0002 - 0.0022) \\ 0.025 - 0.075 \ (0.0010 - 0.0030) \\ \end{array}$	31.035 (1.2218 33.035 (1.3006 30.94 (1.218) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ Shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive Out	ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing	M3, C4 M5 C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	$\begin{array}{c} 33.000 - 33.025 \ (1.2992 - 1.3002) \\ 30.970 - 30.995 \ (1.2193 - 1.2203) \\ 30.950 - 30.975 \ (1.2185 - 1.2195) \\ 32.950 - 32.975 \ (1.2972 - 1.2982) \\ 32.955 - 32.980 \ (1.2974 - 1.2984) \\ 28.000 - 28.021 \ (1.1024 - 1.1032) \\ 29.985 - 30.006 \ (1.1805 - 1.1813) \\ 27.959 - 27.980 \ (1.1007 - 1.1016) \\ 29.950 - 29.975 \ (1.1791 - 1.1801) \\ 27.967 - 27.980 \ (1.1011 - 1.1016) \\ 0.005 - 0.055 \ (0.0002 - 0.0022) \\ 0.025 - 0.075 \ (0.0010 - 0.0030) \\ \end{array}$	33.035 (1.3006 30.94 (1.218) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Gea Mai Cou Gea clea Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive Out	ar bushing I. D. inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing	M5 C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	$\begin{array}{c} 30.970 - 30.995 (1.2193 - 1.2203) \\ 30.950 - 30.975 (1.2185 - 1.2195) \\ 32.950 - 32.975 (1.2972 - 1.2982) \\ 32.955 - 32.980 (1.2974 - 1.2984) \\ 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) \\ 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) \\ 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) \\ 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) \\ 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) \\ 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) \\ 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030) \end{array}$	30.94 (1.218) 30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	C1 C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	$\begin{array}{c} 30.950 - 30.975 (1.2185 - 1.2195) \\ 32.950 - 32.975 (1.2972 - 1.2982) \\ 32.955 - 32.980 (1.2974 - 1.2984) \\ 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) \\ 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) \\ 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) \\ 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) \\ 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) \\ 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) \\ 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030) \end{array}$	30.94 (1.218) 32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	C2 M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	$\begin{array}{c} 32.950 - 32.975 (1.2972 - 1.2982) \\ 32.955 - 32.980 (1.2974 - 1.2984) \\ 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) \\ 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) \\ 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) \\ 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) \\ 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) \\ 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) \\ 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030) \end{array}$	32.94 (1.297) 32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	M3, C4 C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	32.955 - 32.980 (1.2974 - 1.2984) 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	32.94 (1.297) 28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	inshaft O. D. untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) 29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	28.04 (1.104) 30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Cea clea Gea shaft Fork Fork Sha Drui Output drive	untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	C2 at M3 at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	29.985 - 30.006 (1.1805 - 1.1813) 27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	30.03 (1.182) 27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Cea clea Gea shaft Fork Fork Sha Drui Output drive	untershaft O. D. ar-to-bushing arance	at C2 at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	27.959 - 27.980 (1.1007 - 1.1016) 29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	27.94 (1.100) 29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Gea clea Gea shat Shift fork/ Fork shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Output drive	ar-to-bushing arance	at C4 M3, C4 M5, C1	29.950 - 29.975 (1.1791 - 1.1801) 27.967 - 27.980 (1.1011 - 1.1016) 0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	29.94 (1.179) 27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ Shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Clea	arance	M3, C4 M5, C1	27.967 – 27.980 (1.1011 – 1.1016) 0.005 – 0.055 (0.0002 – 0.0022) 0.025 – 0.075 (0.0010 – 0.0030)	27.95 (1.100) 0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ Shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Clea	arance	M5, C1	0.005 - 0.055 (0.0002 - 0.0022) 0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	0.075 (0.0030)
Shift fork/ Fork Shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out			0.025 - 0.075 (0.0010 - 0.0030)	
Shift fork/ Fork shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	or buching to			
Shift fork/ Fork shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	or buching to		0.020 - 0.070 (0.0008 - 0.0028)	0.090 (0.0035)
Shift fork/ Fork shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	Gear bushing-to-	M3	0.020-0.062 (0.0008-0.0024)	0.082 (0.0032)
shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	ft clearance	C2	0.005-0.056 (0.0002-0.0022)	0.076 (0.0030)
shaft/ drum Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out		C4	0.020-0.054 (0.0008-0.0021)	0.074 (0.0029)
Fork Sha Drui Drui Output drive Out	Shift fork/ Fork claw thickness	L.	5.93-6.00 (0.233-0.236)	5.83 (0.230)
Sha Drui Drui Output drive Outp	STREET, STATE STATE OF STATE O		6.43 - 6.50 (0.253 - 0.256)	6.33 (0.249)
Drui Drui Output drive Out	Fork I. D.		14.000 - 14.021 (0.5512 - 0.5520)	14.04 (0.553)
Output drive Out	Shaft O. D.		13.966 - 13.984 (0.5498 - 0.5506)	13.956 (0.5494
Output drive Out	Drum O. D. at left end		13.966 - 13.984 (0.5498 - 0.5506)	13.956 (0.5494
	m journal (L. cranko	case)	14.000 - 14.018 (0.5512 - 0.5519)	14.028 (0.5523)
train	put gear I. D.	et fisikliken u	25.000-25.021 (0.9843-0.9851)	25.031 (0.9855)
uani Oul	put gear bushing	L.,*1C.,*1R.	24.959 - 24.980 (0.9826 - 0.9835)	24.949 (0.9822)
75.00	*2C.,*2R.	22.020-22.041 (0.8669-0.8678)	22.051 (0.8681)	
Output drive gear shaft			21.979-22.000 (0.8653-0.8661)	21.969 (0.8649)
	Gear-to-bushing clearance		0.020-0.062 (0.0008-0.0024)	0.082 (0.0032)
	ar bushing-to-shaft o		0.020 - 0.062 (0.0008 - 0.0024)	0.082 (0.0032)
	put gear damper sprin		69.3 (2.73)	68.1 (2.68)
Out	put drive gear back	lash	0.08-0.23 (0.003-0.009)	0.40 (0.016)
	Backlash difference between measurements		520,2350 P to	0.10 (0.004)

 $^{^{*1}\!\!:}$ After '00 VT1100C, $^{*2}\!\!:$ VT1100T and '97 - '00 VT1100C

TORQUE VALUES

R. crankcase bolt (6 mm)	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	
(8 mm)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
(10 mm)	39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)	
Output drive gear shaft bolt (R. crankcase)	49 N·m (5.0 kgf·m , 36 lbf·ft)	Apply locking agent to the threads.
L. crankcase bolt (6 mm)	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	
(8 mm)	26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)	
Connecting rod bearing cap nut	59 N·m (6.0 kgf·m , 43 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.
Output gear case mounting bolt	31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m , 23 lbf·ft)	
Output drive gear bearing holder bolt	31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m , 23 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.
Output driven gear bearing holder bolt	31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m , 23 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads and seating surface.
Output drive/driven gear bearing lock nut		
(inner)	74 N·m (7.5 kgf·m , 54 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads. Stake.
(outer)	98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m , 72 lbf·ft)	Apply oil to the threads. Stake.
R. crankcase bearing setting plate screw	8.8 N·m (0.9 kgf·m, 6.5 lbf·ft)	Apply locking agent to the threads.
bolt	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)	Apply locking agent to the threads.

TOOLS

Driver	07749-0010000
Attachment, 32 $ imes$ 35 mm	07746-0010100
Attachment, 42 \times 47 mm	07746-0010300
Attachment, 52 $ imes$ 55 mm	07746-0010400
Attachment, 62 $ imes$ 68 mm	07746-0010500
Attachment, 30 mm I. D.	07746-0030300
Pilot, 17 mm	07746-0040400
Pilot, 20 mm	07746-0040500
Pilot, 28 mm	07746-0041100
Pilot, 30 mm	07746-0040700
Driver, 40 mm I. D.	07746-0030100
Shaft holder	07923-6890101
Damper spring compressor	07964 – ME90000 (not available in U. S. A.) or
Assembly bolt	07965 — 1660200
Assembly collar	07965 - 166030A or 07965 - 1660300
Compressor seat	07967 — 9690200
Threaded adaptor	07965 – KA30000
Snap ring pliers	07914-5670101 (not available in U. S. A.) or 07914-5670100
Lock nut wrench, 30 × 64 mm	07916 – MB00001 or 07916 – MB00000
Dis/assembly tool	07965 - 3710101
Bearing remover, 17 mm	07936-3710300
Remover handle	07936-3710100
Remover weight	07741-0010201 or 07936-371020A or 07936-3710200
Bearing remover set, 20 mm	07936 – 3710001 not available in U. S. A.
-bearing remover, 20 mm	07936 - 3710600
-remover handle	07936 - 3710100
-remover weight	07741-0010201 or 07936-371020A or 07936-3710200

TROUBLESHOOTING

Excessive noise

- Worn crankshaft main journal bearings
- Worn connecting rod bearings
- Worn connecting rod small end
- Worn, seized or chipped transmission gear
- Worn or damaged transmission bearing

Hard to shift

- Bent shift fork
- Bent shift fork shaft
- Damaged shift drum guide groove
- Damaged shift fork guide pin

Transmission jumps out of gear

- Worn gear dogs or slots
- Worn shift drum guide groove
- Worn shift fork guide pin
- Worn shift fork groove in gear

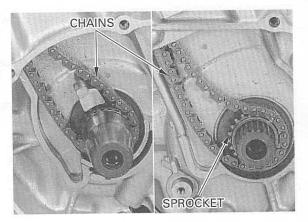
Excessive output gear noise

- Worn or damaged output drive and driven gears
- Worn or damaged gear case bearings
- Excessive backlash between output drive and driven gears
- Incorrect adjustment shim

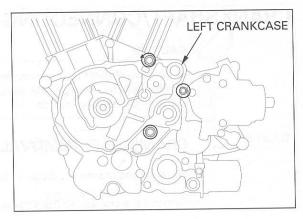
CRANKCASE SEPARATION

Refer to Service Information (page 11-1) for removal of necessary parts before disassembling the crankcase.

Remove the cam chains and the rear cam chain drive sprocket.



Remove the 6 mm bolt and two 8 mm bolts with the washer.

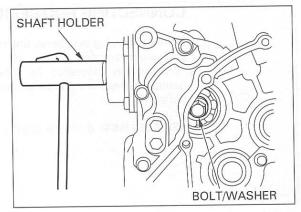


Hold the output driven gear shaft using the shaft holder, loosen the output drive gear shaft bolt and remove it with the washer.

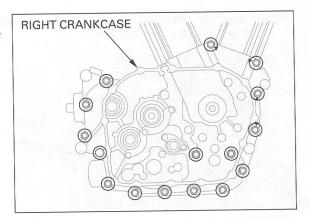
TOOL:

Shaft holder

 $07923\!-\!6890101$



Loosen the five 6 mm bolts and ten 8 mm bolts and 10 mm bolt and remove them with the four washers.



CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION

Place the crankcase assembly with the right side

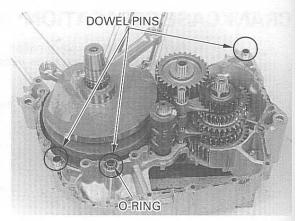
Use the pry slots at the front and rear of the necessary.

Carefully separate the left crankcase from the right crankcase.

crankcase if Remove the dowel pins and O-ring.

NOTE:

Refer to following pages for service of the each part. For the crankcase assembly, see page 11-36.



CRANKSHAFT/CONNECTING ROD

CAUTION:

During crankshaft and connecting rod service, be careful not to damage the main journal or connecting rod bearing inserts.

CRANKSHAFT REMOVAL

Separate the crankcase (page 11-5).

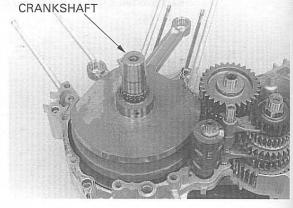
Remove the crankshaft from the right crankcase.

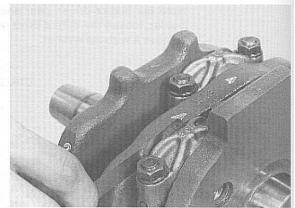
CONNECTING ROD REMOVAL

Before removing the connecting rods, check the big end side clearance.

Measure the clearance by inserting the feeler gauge between the crankshaft and connecting rod big end.

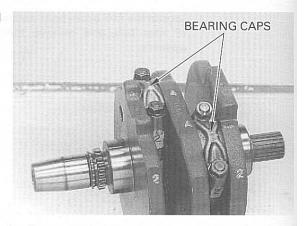
SERVICE LIMIT: 0.28 mm (0.011 in)





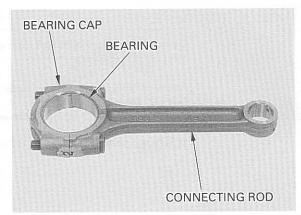
bearing cap is hard to remove.

Tap the side of the Remove the connecting rod bearing cap nuts and cap lightly if the bearing caps.



Mark the rods, bearings and caps as you remove them to indicate the correct cylinder and position on the crankpins for reassembly.

For the connecting rod small end inspection, see page 9-6.

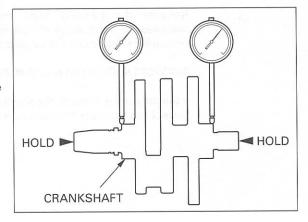


CRANKSHAFT INSPECTION

CRANKSHAFT RUNOUT

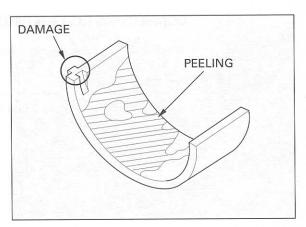
Place the crankshaft on a stand or V-blocks. Set a dial indicator on the main journals. Rotate the crankshaft two revolutions and read the runout.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)



CONNECTING ROD BEARING INSPECTION

Inspect the bearing inserts for unusual wear, damage or peeling and replace as necessary.

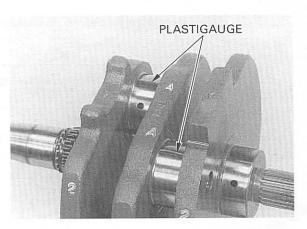


OIL CLEARANCE INSPECTION

Clean off any oil from the bearing inserts and crankpins.

Put a strip of plastigauge lengthwise on each crankpin avoiding the oil hole.

Carefully install the connecting rods and bearing caps on the correct crankpins.



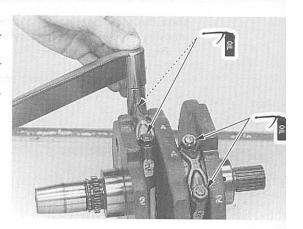
NOTE:

Do not rotate the crankshaft during inspection.

Apply engine oil to the threads and seating surfaces of the bearing cap nuts.

Install the nuts and tighten them evenly.

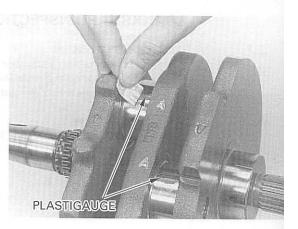
TORQUE: 59 N·m (6.0 kgf·m , 43 lbf·ft)



Remove the bearing caps and measure the compressed plastigauge at its widest point on each crankpin to determine the oil clearance.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.070 mm (0.0028 in)

If the clearance exceeds the service limit, select the correct replacement bearings as follows.

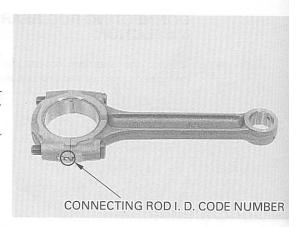


CONNECTING ROD BEARING SELECTION

Record the connecting rod I. D. code number.

NOTE:

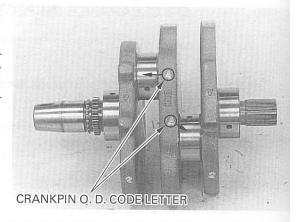
Number 1 or 2 on the connecting rod is the code for the connecting rod I. D. $\,$



Record the crankpin O. D. code letter.

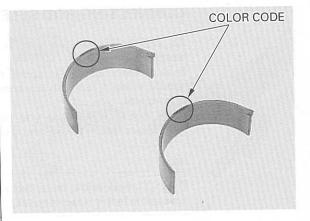
NOTE:

Letters A or B on each crank weight is the code for the crankpin O. D. $\,$



Cross reference the connecting rod and crankpin codes to determine the replacement bearing color code.

\	Connecting rod	1 ==	2	
Crankpin O.D. code		51.000 — 51.008 mm (2.0079 — 2.0082 in)	51.008 — 51.016 mm (2.0082 — 2.0085 in)	
Α	47.982 – 47.990 mm (1.8891 – 1.8894 in)	Pink	Yellow	
В	47.974-47.982 mm (1.8887-1.8891 in)	Yellow	Green	



Coonecting rod bearing thickness:

Green

1.495 - 1.499 mm (0.0589 - 0.0590 in) ↑ Thick

Yellow:

1.491-1.495 mm (0.0587-0.0589 in)

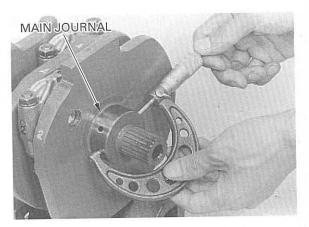
Pink:

 $1.487 - 1.491 \text{ mm } (0.0585 - 0.0587 \text{ in}) \downarrow \text{Thin}$

MAIN BEARING INSPECTION

Clean off any oil from the bearings and the crankshaft journals.

Measure and record the crankshaft main journal O. D.



Measure and record the main bearing I. D. in the crankcase.

NOTE:

Be carefull not to damage the inside of the bearing while inspection.

Calculate the clearance between the main journal and main bearing.

SERVICE LIMIT: 0.060 mm (0.0024 in)

If the oil clearance exceeds the service limit, replace the crankcase.



CONNECTING ROD SELECTION

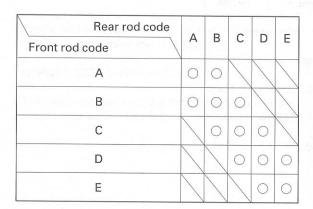
An alphabetical weight code is stamped on the connecting rod.

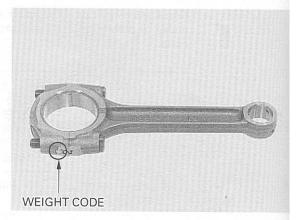
If a connecting rod requires replacement, you should select a rod with the same weight code as the original.

But if that is unavailable, you may use one of the others specified in the following chart.

NOTE:

The "O" mark in the table indicates that matching is possible in the crossed codes.



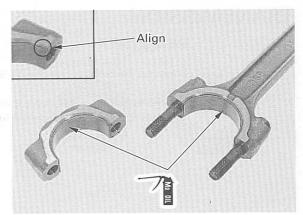


CONNECTING ROD INSTALLATION

Wipe any oil off from the connecting rod, cap and bearing inserts.

Install the bearing inserts on the connecting rods and caps by aligning the tab with the groove.

Apply molybdenum oil solution to the thrust surface of the bearings.

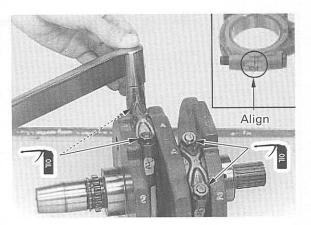


Install the rods and caps on the crankshaft by aligning the I. D. code on the rod and cap. Be sure each part is installed in its original position, as noted during removal.

Apply engine oil to the bearing cap nut threads and tighten them in two or more steps alternately.

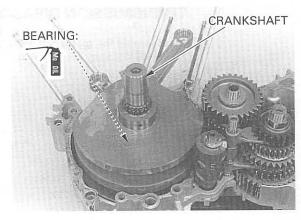
TORQUE: 59 N·m (6.0 kgf·m , 43 lbf·ft)

After tightening the nuts, check that the connecting rods move freely without binding.



Apply molybdenum oil solution to the main bearing inserts and install the crankshaft into the right crankcase.

Assemble the crankcase (page 11-36).

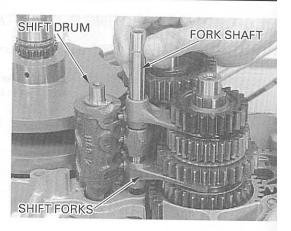


TRANSMISSION

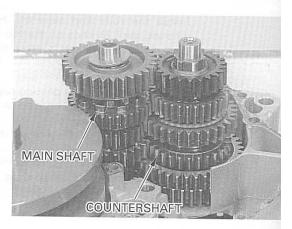
REMOVAL

Separate the crankcase (page 11-5).

Pull the fork shaft and remove it from the shift forks. Remove the shift drum and shift forks.

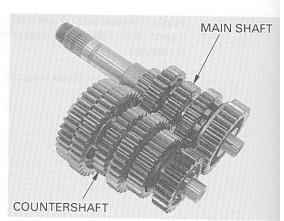


Remove the mainshaft and countershaft together.



TRANSMISSION DISASSEMBLY

Disassemble the mainshaft and countershaft.



INSPECTION

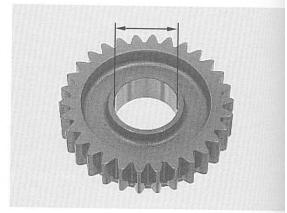
GEARS

Check the gear dogs, dog holes and teeth for damage or excessive wear.

Measure the I. D. of each gear.

SERVICE LIMITS:

M3, M5, M4 gears: 31.035 mm (1.2218 in) C1, C2 gears: 33.035 mm (1.3006 in)



BUSHINGS

Check the bushings for wear or damage. Measure O. D. of each bushing.

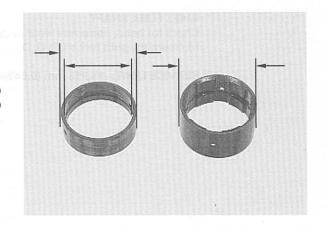
SERVICE LIMITS:

M3, M5, M4 gear bushing: 30.94 mm (1.218 in) C1, C2 gear bushing: 32.94 mm (1.297 in)

Measure I. D. of each bushing.

SERVICE LIMITS:

M3, C4 gear bushing: 28.04 mm (1.104 in) C2 gear bushing: 30.03 mm (1.182 in)



MAINSHAFT/COUNTERSHAFT

Check the spline grooves and sliding surfaces for abnormal wear or damage.

Measure the O. D. of the mainshaft and countershaft at the gear and bushing sliding areas.

SERVICE LIMITS:

Main shaft (at M3 gear bushing):

27.94 mm (1.100 in)

Counter shaft (at C2 gear bushing):

29.94 mm (1.179 in)

(at C4 gear bushing):

27.95 mm (1.100 in)

Calculate the gear-to-bushing and bushing-to-shaft clearance.

SERVICE LIMITS:

Gear-to-bushing (M3, C4): 0.075 mm (0.0030 in)

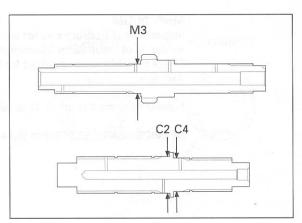
(M5, C1): 0.095 mm (0.0037 in)

(C2): 0.090 mm (0.0035 in)

Bushing-to-shaft (M3): 0.082 mm (0.0032 in)

(C2): 0.076 mm (0.0030 in)

(C4): 0.074 mm (0.0029 in)



SHIFT FORK

Check for deformation or abnormal wear. Measure the shift fork claw thickness.

SERVICE LIMITS:

Left fork: 5.83 mm (0.230 in) Center and Right forks:

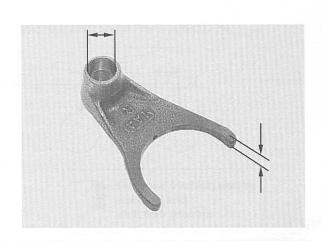
VT1100T and '97-'00 VT1100C:

6.33 mm (0.249 in)

After '00 VT1100C: 5.83 mm (0.230 in)

Measure the shift fork I. D.

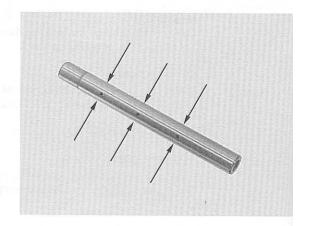
SERVICE LIMIT: 14.04 mm (0.553 in)



SHIFT FORK SHAFT

Check for bend, abnormal wear or damage. Measure the shift fork shaft O. D.

SERVICE LIMIT: 13.956 mm (0.5494 in)



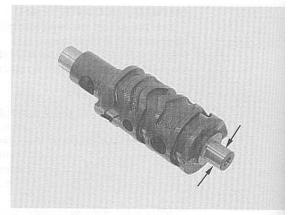
SHIFT DRUM

Inspect the shift drum end for scoring, scratches, or evidence of insufficient lubrication.

Check the shift drum grooves for abnormal wear or damage.

Measure the shift drum O. D. at left end.

SERVICE LIMIT: 13.956 mm (0.5494 in)



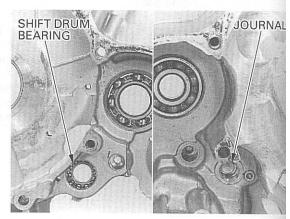
SHIFT DRUM BEARING AND JOURNAL

Check the shift drum bearing on the right crankcase for excessive play or damage.

Check the shift drum journal in the left crankcase for excessive wear or damage.

Measure the shift drum journal I. D.

SERVICE LIMIT: 14.028 mm (0.5523 in)



TRANSMISSION ASSEMBLY

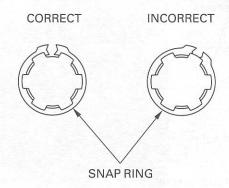
Clean all parts in solvent.

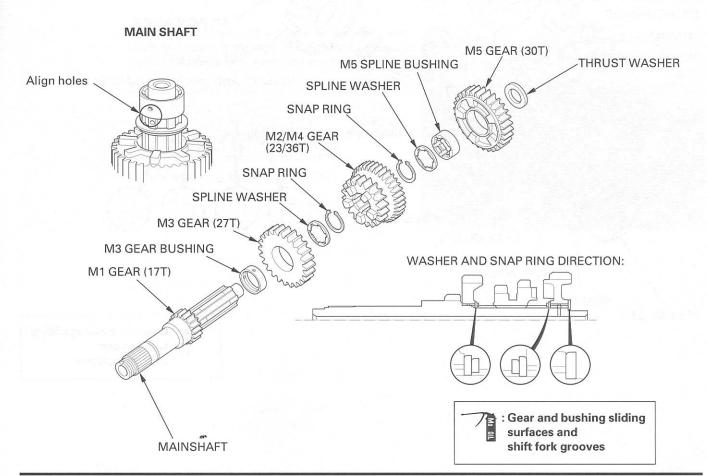
Apply molybdenum oil solution to the gear and bushing sliding surface and shift fork grooves to ensure initial lubrication.

Assemble all parts into their original positions.

NOTE:

- Check the gears for freedom of movement or rotation on the shaft.
- Install the washers and snap rings with the chamfered edges facing the thrust road side. Do not reuse worn snap ring which could easily spin in the groove.
- Check that the snap rings are seated in the grooves and align their end gaps with the grooves of the spline.
- Align the oil holes in the M5 gear bushing and mainshaft, and the C1 gear bushing and countershaft.

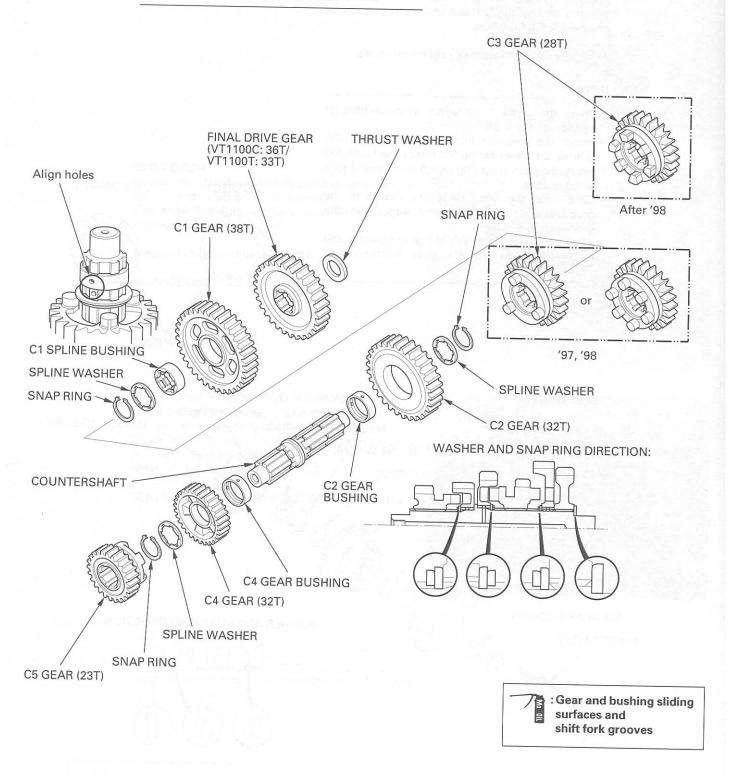




COUNTERSHAFT

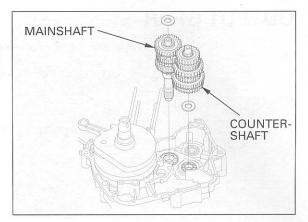
NOTE:

The C2 and C3 gears on After '98 model are different from those on '97 and '98 models.



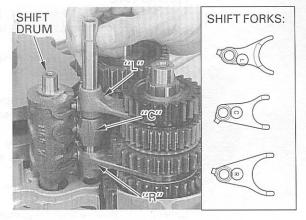
INSTALLATION

Install the mainshaft and countershaft together into the right crankcase. Be sure to install the two end washers as shown.



Install the shift forks into the shifter gear grooves with the markings facing down (right crankcase side).

Install the shift drum by aligning the shift fork guide pins with the shift drum guide grooves.

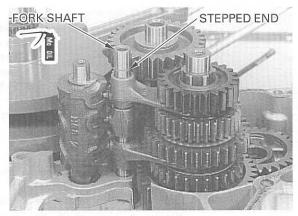


Apply molybdenum oil solution to the shift fork shaft and insert it through the shift forks into the right crankcase with the stepped end facing up.

After installing, check for smooth transmission operation.

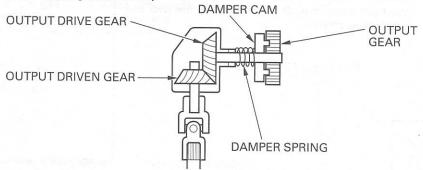
Install the output gear, bushing and thrust washer if removed (page 11-18).

Assemble the crankcase (page 11-36).



OUTPUT GEAR

Description of the output gear assembly:



REMOVAL

Separate the crankcase (page 11-5).

Remove the output gear, bushing and thrust washer from the right crankcase.

Set the damper spring compressor onto the damper cam and output drive gear shaft.

Compress the damper spring by turning the compressor bolt clockwise until the snap ring can be removed.

Remove the snap ring from the drive gear shaft groove.

Loosen and remove the compressor.



Damper spring compressor

07964-ME90000

Snap ring pliers

not available in U. S. A. 07914 – 5670101 not available in U. S. A. or

not available in U. S. A. o 07914 – 5670100

Remove the snap ring, damper cam and spring from the drive gear shaft.

(U.S. A. only)

Place the threaded adaptor in the end of the output drive gear shaft and tighten.

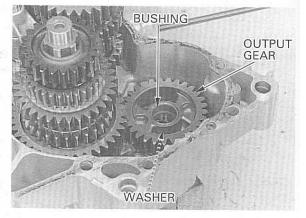
Place the compressor seat over the threaded adaptor with the stepped side facing upward. Install the assembly bolt through the assembly collar and attach it to the threaded adaptor.

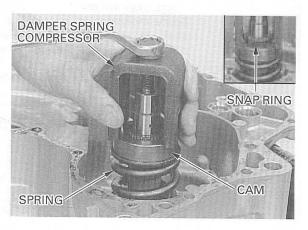
Center the compressor seat with the damper cam then begin to tighten the 24 mm nut of the collar until the snap ring is visible so it can be removed.

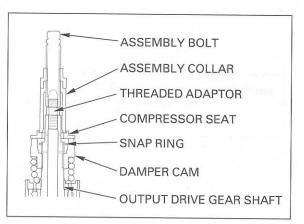
TOOLS:

Assembly bolt 07965 — 1660200
Assembly collar 07965 — 166030A or 07965 — 1660300
Compressor seat 07967 — 9690200
Threaded adaptor 07965 — KA30000
Snap ring pliers 07914 — 5670101
not available in U. S. A. or

07914-5670100

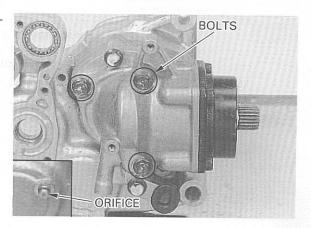






Remove the three bolts and the output gear assembly.

Remove the oil orifice and O-rings.



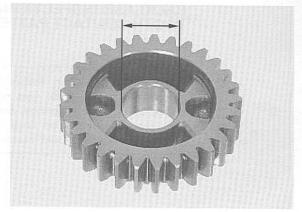
INSPECTION

OUTPUT GEAR

Check the gear teeth for damage or excessive wear, and the gear dog holes for damage.

Measure the output gear I. D.

SERVICE LIMIT: 25.031 mm (0.9855 in)

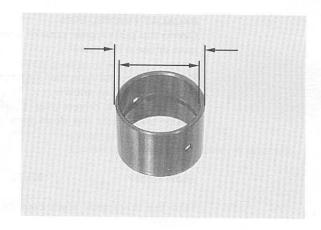


BUSHING

Check the bushing for wear or damage. Measure the bushing I. D. and O. D.

SERVICE LIMIT: O. D.: 24.949 mm (0.9822 in)

I. D.: 22.051 mm (0.8681 in)



OUTPUT DRIVE GEAR SHAFT

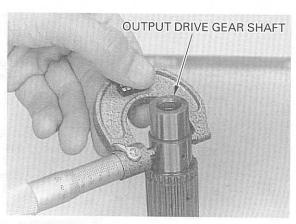
Measure the O. D. of the output drive gear shaft at the sliding area.

SERVICE LIMIT: 21.969 mm (0.8649 in)

Calculate the gear-to-bushing and bushing-to-shaft clearance.

SERVICE LIMIT:

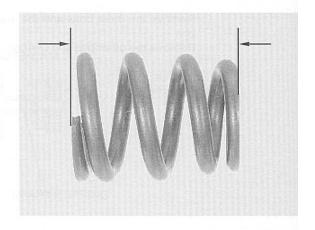
Gear-to-bushing: 0.082 mm (0.0032 in) **Bushing-to-shaft:** 0.082 mm (0.0032 in)



DAMPER SPRING

Measure the damper spring free length.

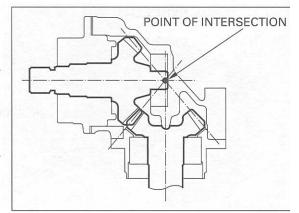
SERVICE LIMIT: 68.1 mm (2.68 in)



BACKLASH INSPECTION/GEAR TOOTH CONTACT PATTERN CHECK

NOTE:

Perform the backlash inspection and contact pattern check whenever you replace the output driven/drive gears, bearings, bearing holder and gear case. The extension lines from the gear engagement surfaces should intersect at one point.



BACKLASH INSPECTION

Clamp the output gear case in a vise that has soft jaws or use a soft towel.

Set the horizontal type dial indicator on the output drive gear shaft as shown.

Hold the output driven gear shaft with the shaft holder and rotate the drive gear shaft until gear slack is taken up.

TOOL:

Shaft holder

07923-6890101

Turn the drive gear shaft back and forth to read backlash.

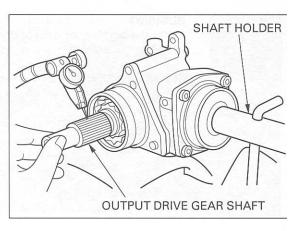
STANDARD: 0.08 – 0.23 mm (0.003 – 0.009 in) **SERVICE LIMIT:** 0.40 mm (0.016 in)

Remove the dial indicator. Turn the drive gear shaft 120° and measure backlash. Repeat this procedure once more.

Compare the deference of the three measurements.

Backlash difference between measurements SERVICE LIMIT: 0.10 mm (0.004 in)

If the difference in measurements exceeds the limit, it indicates that the bearing is not installed squarely. Inspect the bearings and reinstall if necessary.



If the backlash is excessive, replace the output drive gear adjustment shim with a thinner one. If the backlash is too small, replace the output drive gear adjustment shim with a thicker one.

Backlash is changed by about 0.06-0.07 mm (0.002-0.003 in) when shim thickness is changed by 0.10 mm (0.004 in).

Output drive gear adjustment shims:

A: 0.40 mm (0.016 in)

B: 0.45 mm (0.018 in)

C: 0.50 mm (0.020 in) - Standard

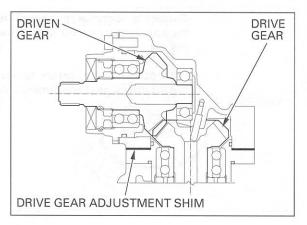
D: 0.55 mm (0.022 in)

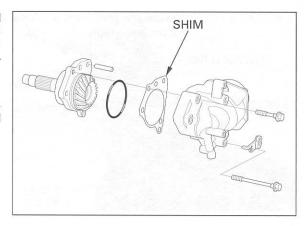
E: 0.60 mm (0.024 in)

To replace the shim, remove the drive gear and bearing holder as an assembly from the gear case.

After replacing the shim, install the drive gear assembly (page 11-25).

After the backlash adjustments has been made, check the gear tooth contact pattern described below.





GEAR TOOTH CONTACT PATTERN CHECK

Description of the tooth:

COAST SIDE (contacts when engine brake is applied)

DRIVE SIDE (contacts when engine power is applied)

HEEL (outside of gear)

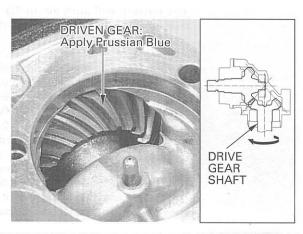
Remove the drive gear assembly from the gear case (see above).

Apply Prussian Blue to the output driven gear teeth.

Reinstall the drive gear with the shim (page 11-25).

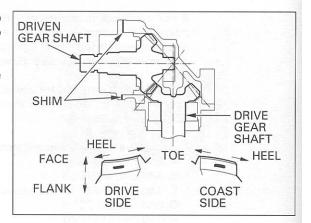
Rotate the drive gear shaft several times in the normal direction of rotation.

Remove the drive gear assembly and check the gear tooth contact pattern as described following page.

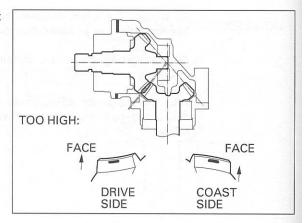


Contact is normal if Prussian Blue is transferred to the approximate center of each tooth and slightly to the toe.

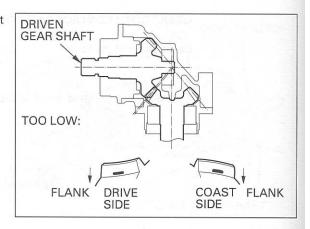
If the pattern is not correct, remove and replace the output driven gear adjustment shim.



Replace the shim with a thinner one if the contact pattern is too high.



Replace the shim with a thicker one if the contact pattern is too low.

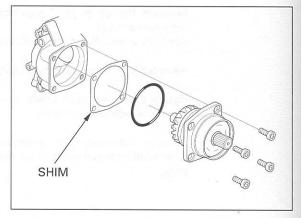


The pattern will shift about 1.5-2.0 mm (0.06-0.08 in) when the shim thickness is changed by 0.10 mm (0.04 in).

Output driven gear adjustment shims:

A: 0.20 mm (0.008 in) F: 0.45 mm (0.018 in)
B: 0.25 mm (0.010 in) G: 0.50 mm (0.020 in)
C: 0.30 mm (0.012 in) H: 0.55 mm (0.022 in)
D: 0.35 mm (0.014 in) I: 0.60 mm (0.024 in)
E: 0.40 mm (0.016 in) — Standard

To replace the shim, remove the driven gear and bearing holder as an assembly from the gear case. After replacing the shim, install the driven gear assembly and tighten the bolts (page 11-31).



OUTPUT DRIVE GEAR DISASSEMBLY

CAUTION:

Be careful not to distort or damage the gear case.

Place the output gear case in a vise with soft jaws, being careful not to distort it.

Install the shaft holder on the driven gear shaft, wedging if against the vise to lock the shaft.

TOOL:

Shaft holder

07923-6890101

Unstake the bearing inner lock nut with a drill or grinder. Be careful that material particles do not enter the bearing and the threads on the shaft are not damaged.

Remove the bearing inner lock nut and discard it.

TOOLS:

Shaft holder

07923-6890101

Lock nut wrench, 30 imes 64 mm 07916 - MB00001 or

07916-MB00000

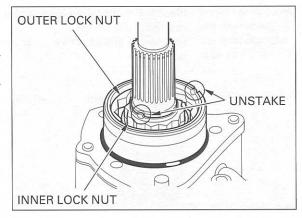
Remove the shaft holder.

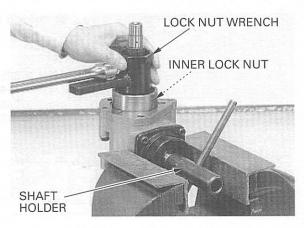
Unstake the bearing outer lock nut with a punch.

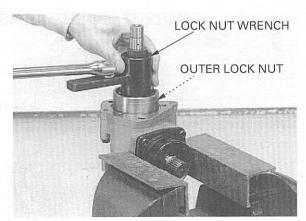
Remove the bearing outer lock nut and discard it.

TOOL:

Lock nut wrench, 30 \times 64 mm 07916 - MB00001 or 07916 - MB00000

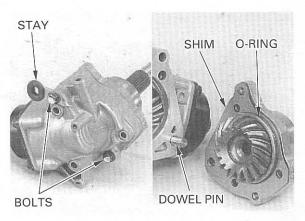






Remove the two bolts with the stay and the drive gear bearing holder from the gear case.

Remove the adjustment shim and O-ring from the gear holder and remove the dowel pin from the gear case.



CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION

guide from the dis/assembly tool before using it. holder.

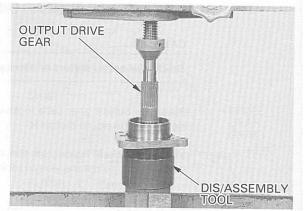
Remove the center Place the output drive gear and a dis/assembly tool in a hydraulic press.

Press the output drive gear out of the bearing

TOOL:

Dis/assembly tool

07965 - 3710101



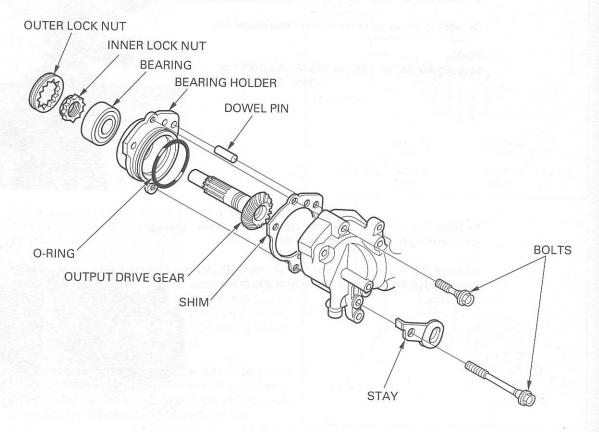
Remove the drive gear bearing using a hydraulic press.

TOOLS:

Dis/assembly tool 07965-3710101 Driver 07749 - 0010000Attachment, 52 × 55 mm 07746-0010400 Pilot, 30 mm 07746-0040700

DRIVER **BEARING ATTACHMENT** AND PILOT DIS/ASSEMBLY

OUTPUT DRIVE GEAR ASSEMBLY



Press a new bearing into the bearing holder.

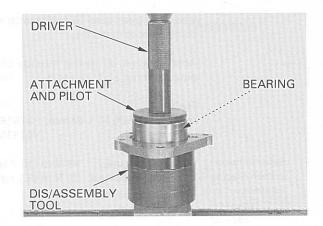
TOOLS:

 Dis/assembly tool
 07965 – 3710101

 Driver
 07749 – 0010000

 Attachment, 62 × 68 mm
 07746 – 0010500

 Pilot, 30 mm
 07746 – 0040700



If the output drive gear requires replacement, the drive and driven gears must be replaced as a set.

If the output drive Support the bearing inner race and press the gear requires output drive gear with a pilot.

NOTE:

replaced as a set. Place the pilot's threaded end into the drive shaft.

TOOLS:

 Driver, 40 mm I. D.
 07746-0030100

 Attachment, 30 mm I. D.
 07746-0030300

 Pilot, 20 mm
 07746-0040500

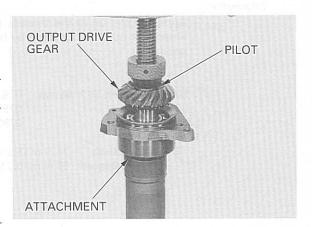
NOTE:

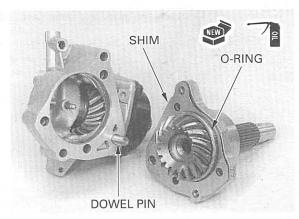
If the bearing, gear, holder and/or case is replaced, a new adjustment shim must be selected (page 11-20, Backlash Inspection).

Install the dowel pin into the gear case.

Coat a new gear holder O-ring with engine oil and install it into the gear holder groove.

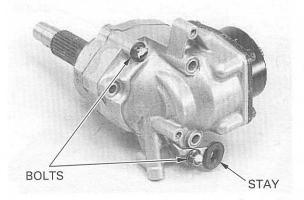
Install the adjustment shim over the bearing holder.





Set the bearing holder into the gear case. Apply engine oil to the gear holder bolt threads and seating surfaces and install them with the left crankcase rear cover stay in position as shown. Tighten the gear holder bolts.

TORQUE: 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft)



CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION

Place the gear case in a vise with soft jaws, being careful not to distort it.

Apply engine oil to the threads of a new bearing outer lock nut and tighten it.

TOOL:

Lock nut wrench, 30 imes 64 mm $\,$ 07916 - MB00001 or

07916-MB00000

Refer to torque wrench reading information, on page 11-1 "Service Information".

TORQUE: Actual: 98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m , 72 lbf·ft)

Indicated: 89 N·m (9.1 kgf·m, 66 lbf·ft)

Apply engine oil to the threads of a new bearing inner lock nut and tighten it by holding the driven gear shaft.

TOOLS:

Lock nut wrench, 30 \times 64 mm 07916 - MB00001 or

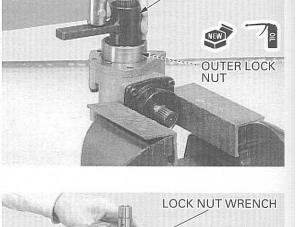
07916-MB00000

Shaft holder

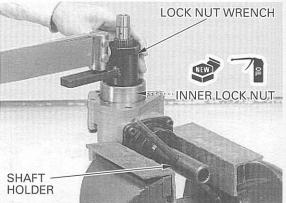
07923-6890101

TORQUE: Actual: 74 N·m (7.5 kgf·m , 54 lbf·ft)

Indicated: 68 N·m (6.9 kgf·m, 50 lbf·ft)

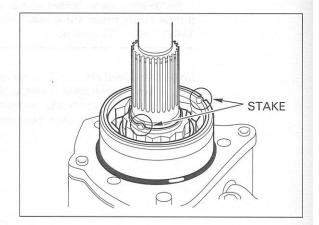


LOCK NUT WRENCH



Stake the inner and outer race lock nuts.

Remove the shaft holder.



OUTPUT DRIVEN GEAR DISASSEMBLY

CAUTION:

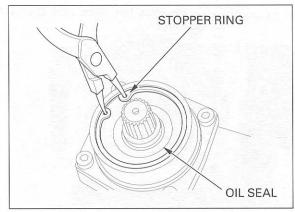
Be careful not to damage the bearing holder and gear case mating surface.

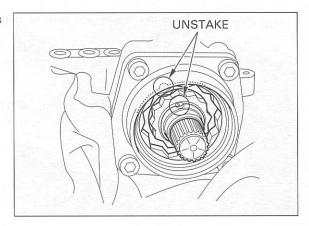
Place the output gear case in a vise with soft jaws, being careful not to damage it.

Remove the stopper ring out of the gear holder

Remove the driven gear oil seal.

Unstake the bearing inner and outer race lock nuts by prying or drilling.





Hold the driven gear shaft and remove the bearing inner race lock nut and discard it.

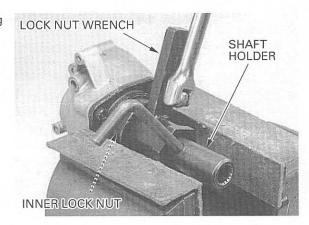
TOOLS:

Shaft holder

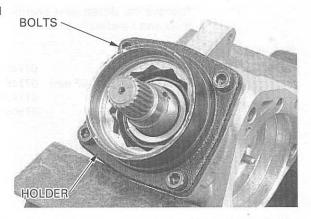
07923-6890101

Lock nut wrench, 30 \times 64 mm 07916 - MB00001 or

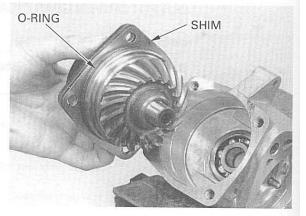
07916-MB00000



Remove the driven gear bearing holder bolts and the holder from the gear case.



Remove the shim and O-ring from the bearing holder.



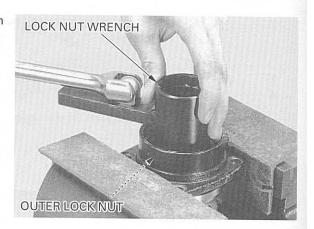
Place the driven gear bearing holder in a vise with soft jaws.

Remove the bearing outer lock nut and discard it.

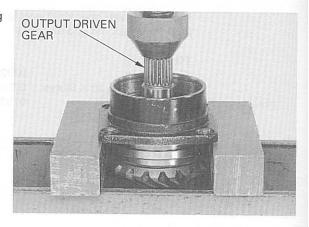
TOOL:

Lock nut wrench, 30 \times 64 mm 07916 - MB00001 or

07916-MB00000



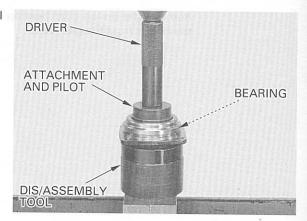
Press the output driven gear out of the bearing holder.



Remove the driven gear bearing using the special tools and a hydraulic press.

TOOLS:

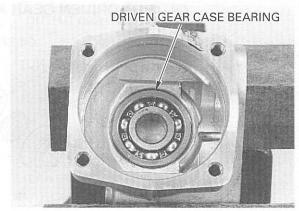
07749 - 0010000Attachment, 52 \times 55 mm 07746-0010400 Pilot, 30 mm 07746 - 0040700Dis/assembly tool 07965-3710101



CAUTION:

Always wear insulated gloves when handling a heated gear case.

Heat the output gear case around the driven gear case bearing 80 $^{\circ}$ C (176 $^{\circ}$ F).



Remove the driven gear case bearing using the special tools.

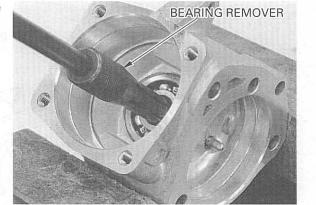
TOOLS:

 Bearing remover, 17 mm
 07736-3710300

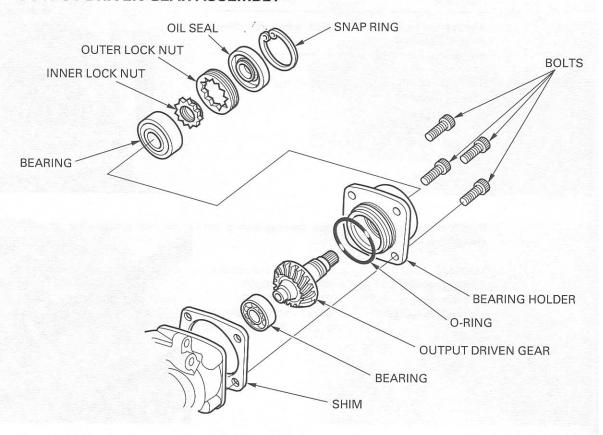
 Remover handle
 07936-3710100

 Remover weight
 07741-0010201 or

 07936-3710300



OUTPUT DRIVEN GEAR ASSEMBLY



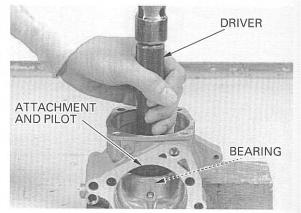
Drive a new bearing into the gear case using the special tools as shown.

TOOLS:

 Driver
 07749-0010000

 Attachment, 42 × 47 mm
 07746-0010300

 Pilot, 17 mm
 07746-0040400



Press a new bearing into bearing holder using the special tools and make sure it rotates freely after installation.

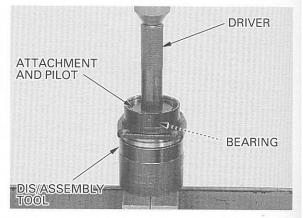
TOOLS:

 Driver
 07749−0010000

 Attachment, 52 × 55 mm
 07746−0010400

 Pilot, 30 mm
 07746−0040700

 Dis/assembly tool
 07965−3710101



If the output driven gear replacement, the driven and drive TOOLS:

Support the bearing inner race and press the output driven gear into the bearing holder using requires the special tools.

gear must be Driver, 40 mm I. D. replaced as a set. Attachment, 30 mm l. D.

07746 - 003010007746-0030300 **OUTPUT DRIVEN GEAR DRIVER** ATTACHMENT

Place the bearing holder in a vise with soft jaws.

Apply engine oil to the threads of a new bearing outer lock nut and tighten it to the specified torque using the special tool.

TOOL:

Lock nut wrench

07916-MB00001 or

07916-MB00000

Refer to torque wrench reading information, on page 11-1 "Service Information".

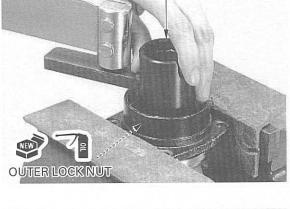
TORQUE: Actual: 98 N·m (10.0 kgf·m, 72 lbf·ft)

Indicated: 89 N·m (9.1 kgf·m, 66 lbf·ft)

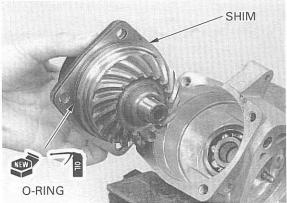
Coat a new gear holder O-ring with engine oil and install it into gear holder groove. Install the adjustment shim over the bearing holder.

NOTE:

When the bearing, gear, holder and/or case have been replaced, use the 0.40 mm (0.016 in) shim for initial reference.



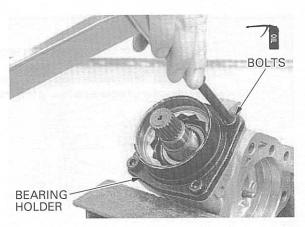
LOCK NUT WRENCH



Align the bolt holes in the gear holder and shim and install them into the gear case.

Apply engine oil to the threads and seating surface of the bearing holder bolts and tighten them.

TORQUE: 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft)



CRANKSHAFT/TRANSMISSION

Apply engine oil to the threads of a new inner lock nut and tighten it using the special tools.

TOOLS:

Lock nut wrench

07916-MB00001 or

07916-MB00000

Shaft holder

07923-6890101

Refer to torque wrench reading information, on page 11-1 "Service Information". TORQUE: Actual: 74 N·m (7.

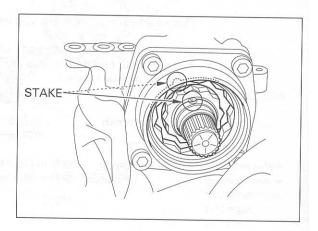
74 N·m (7.5 kgf·m , 54 lbf·ft)

Indicated: 68 N·m (6.9 kgf·m, 50 lbf·ft)

SHAFT HOLDER

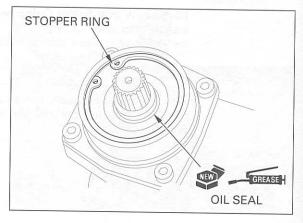
INNER LOCK NUT

Stake the inner and outer lock nuts.



Pack grease into the seal lip cavity of a new driven gear oil seal and install it until the ring groove is visible so the stopper ring can be installed.

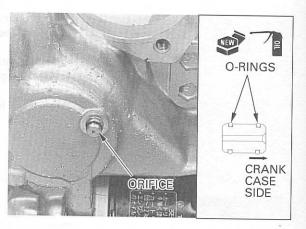
Install the stopper ring into the bearing holder groove securely.



INSTALLATION

Coat new orifice O-rings with engine oil and install them into the orifice grooves.

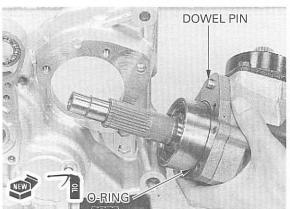
Install the orifice into the crankcase with the chamfered hole side facing the crankcase.



Coat a new O-ring with engine oil and install it into the groove in the bearing holder.

Be sure to install the dowel pin in the bearing holder and install the output gear assembly onto the left crankcase.

Temporarily tighten the gear case mounting bolts.



Install the damper spring over the drive gear shaft with the closely wound coil facing the left crankcase.

Install the damper cam onto the drive gear shaft and place the snap ring onto the damper cam.

Set the damper spring compressor onto the damper cam and drive gear shaft.

Compress the damper spring by turning the compressor bolt clockwise until the snap ring groove is visible.

Install the snap ring into groove in the shaft securely.

Loosen and remove the compressor.



Damper spring compressor 07964 – ME90000

not available in U.S.A.

Snap ring pliers 07914 – 5670101

not available in U.S.A.

or

07914 - 5670100

(U.S.A. only)

Place the threaded adaptor in the end of the output drive shaft and tighten.

Place the compressor seat over the threaded adaptor with the stepped side facing upward.

Install the assembly bolt through the assembly collar and attach it to the threaded adaptor.

Center the compressor seat with the damper cam then begin to tighten the 24 mm nut of the collar until the snap ring groove is visible so the snap ring can be installed into the groove.

TOOLS:

Assembly bolt 07965 — 1660200
Assembly collar 07965 — 166030A or 07965 — 1660300

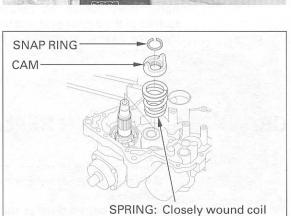
 Compressor seat
 07967 - 9690200

 Threaded adaptor
 07965 - KA30000

 Snap ring pliers
 07914 - 5670101

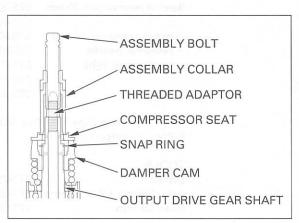
not available in U.S.A.

or 07914-5670100



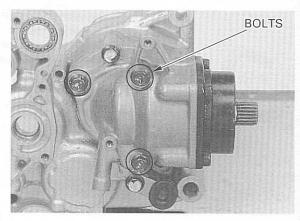
facing crankcase.





Tighten the gear case mounting bolts.

TORQUE: 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft)



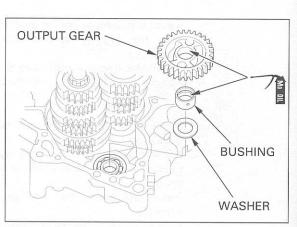
Apply molybdenum oil solution to the sliding surface of the output gear and bushing. Place the washer, bushing and the output gear into the right crankcase with the dog holes facing up.

Assemble the crankcase (page 11-36).

CRANKCASE BEARING REPLACEMENT

CAUTION:

- · Always wear insulated gloves when handling a heated crankcase.
- Be careful not to damage the crankcase mating surfaces.



NOTE:

Before removing the bearings, heat the crankcase around the bearings to 80 °C (176 °F).

LEFT CRANKCASE BEARINGS

Remove the output gear case assembly (page 11-18).

Remove the mainshaft and countershaft bearings with the following special tools.

TOOLS:

Bearing remover set, 20 mm

07936-3710001

- bearing remover, 20 mm

not available in U.S.A.

-remover handle

07936-3710600 07936-3710100

-remover weight

07741-0010201 or

07936-371020A or 07936-3710200

Drive new bearings into the left crankcase using following special tools:

TOOLS:

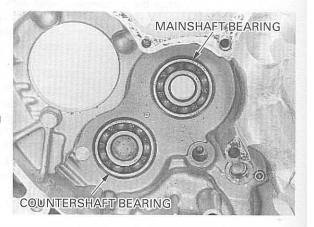
Driver

07749 - 0010000

Pilot, 20 mm

Attachment, 52 × 55 mm 07746-0010400

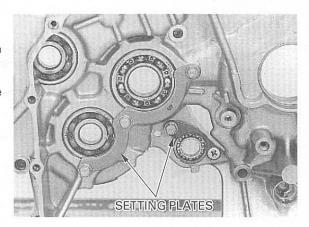
07746-0040500



RIGHT CRANKCASE BEARINGS

Remove the crankshaft (page 11-6), tránsmission (page 11-12) and output drive gear (page 11-18).

Remove the bearing setting plates from the crankcase.



Drive the bearings out of the right crankcase.

Drive new bearings into the right crankcase with the following special tools:

TOOLS:

Mainshaft bearing:

 Driver
 07749−0010000

 Attachment, 62 × 68 mm
 07746−0010500

 Pilot, 28 mm
 07746−0041100

Countershaft and output drive gear shaft bearings:

 Driver
 07749−0010000

 Attachment, 52 × 55 mm
 07746−0010400

 Pilot, 20 mm
 07746−0040500

Shift drum bearing:

 Driver
 07749−0010000

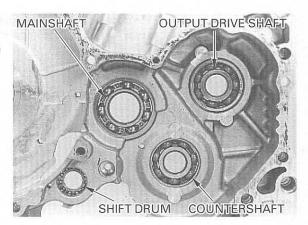
 Attachment, 32 × 35 mm
 07746−0010100

 Pilot, 17 mm
 07746−0040400

After installing the bearings, apply locking agent to the threads of the setting plate screw and bolts, and install the setting plates by tightening the bolts and screw.

TORQUE:

 $\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{Setting plate screw:} & 8.8 \ N \cdot m \ (0.9 \ kgf \cdot m \ , \ 6.5 \ lbf \cdot ft) \\ \textbf{Setting plate bolt:} & 12 \ N \cdot m \ (1.2 \ kgf \cdot m \ , \ 9 \ lbf \cdot ft) \\ \end{array}$

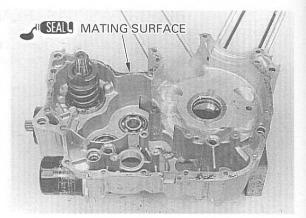


CRANKCASE ASSEMBLY

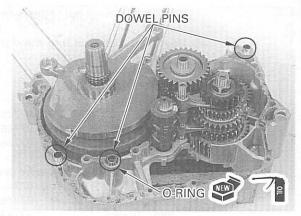
Clean the left and right crankcase mating surfaces thoroughly, being careful not to damage them.

Make sure the all parts are installed in the left and right crankcases.

Apply liquid sealant to the crankcase mating surfaces.

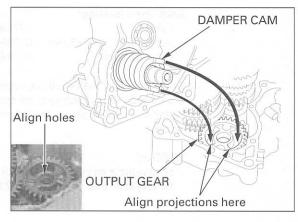


Install the dowel pins into the right crankcase. Coat a new O-ring with engine oil and install it to the dowel pin.



Align the holes of the output gear bushing, thrust washer (between the bearing and gear) and bearing.

Align the damper cam projections and output gear concaves and install the left crankcase over the right crankcase while inserting the output drive gear shaft into the output gear, washer and right crankcase.

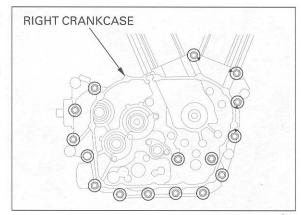


Install the right crankcase bolts with the four washers (washer position is indicated by the " \blacktriangle " marks).

Tighten the bolts in a crisscross pattern in 2-3 steps.

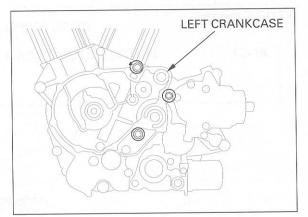
TORQUE: 6 mm: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)

8 mm: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft) 10 mm: 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)



Install the left crankcase cover bolts with the washer and tighten the bolts in 2-3 steps.

TORQUE: 6 mm: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft) 8 mm: 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m , 20 lbf·ft)



Apply locking agent to the threads of the output drive gear shaft bolt.

Install and tighten the bolt by holding the output driven gear shaft using the shaft holder.

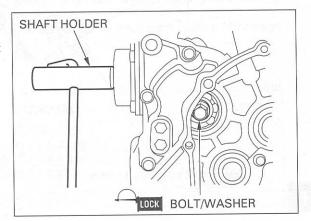
TOOL:

Shaft holder

07923 - 6890101

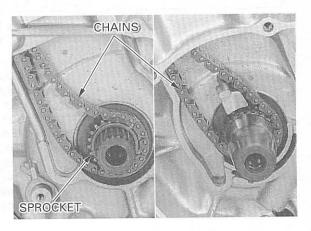
TORQUE: 49 N·m (5.0 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft)

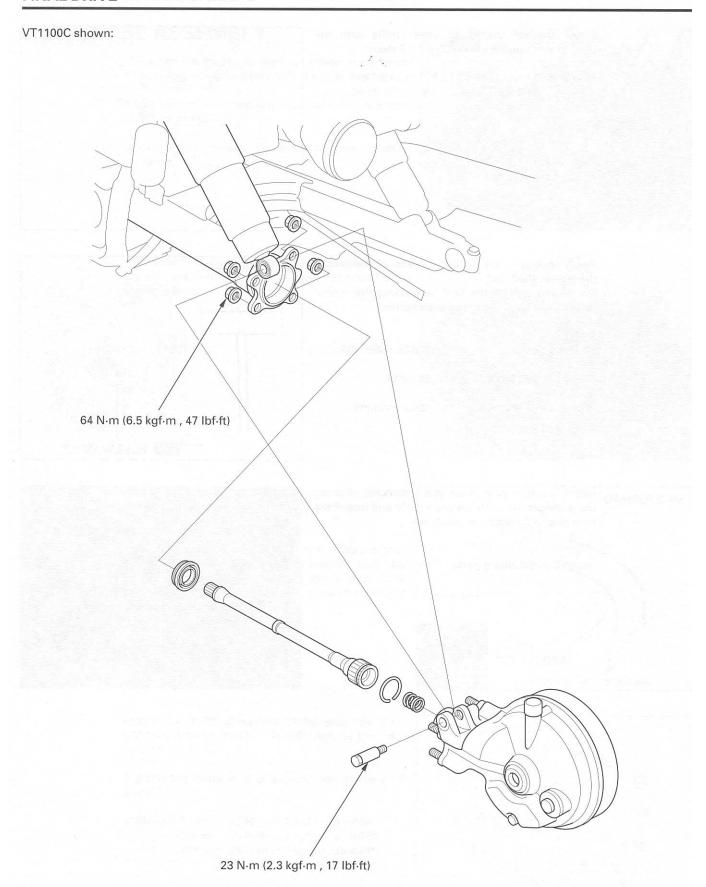
Recheck the all crankcase bolt torque values.



Install the rear cam chain drive sprocket aligning the wide groove with the wide teeth and install the cam chains through the crankcase.

Install the remaining parts.





12

12. FINAL DRIVE

SERVICE INFORMATION	12-1	FINAL DRIVE GEAR	12-5
TROUBLESHOOTING	12-2	FINAL DRIVE INSTALLATION	12-18
FINAL DRIVE REMOVAL	12-3		

SERVICE INFORMATION

GENERAL

- The final drive gear assembly and final drive shaft must be removed together.
- Replace the ring and pinion gears as a set.
- Perform the gear contact pattern and backlash inspection whenever you replace the bearings, gears or gear case. The extension lines from the gear engagement surfaces should intersect at one point.
- Protect the gear case with a shop towel or soft jaws while holding it in vise. Do not clamp it too tight as it could damage the gear case.

SPECIFICATIONS

Unit: mm (in)

ITEM Recommended final drive oil		STANDARD	SERVICE LIMIT	
		Hypoid gear oil, SAE #80		
Final drive oil capacity	at disassembly	150 cm ³ (5.1 US oz, 5.3 Imp oz)		
	at draining	130 cm ³ (4.4 US oz, 4.6 lmp oz)		
Final drive gear backlash		0.05-0.15 (0.002-0.006)	0.30 (0.012)	
Backlash difference between measurements			0.10 (0.004)	
Ring gear-to-stop pin clearance		0.30-0.60 (0.012-0.024)		
Final drive gear assembly pr		0.2-0.4 N.m		
		(2-4 kgf·cm, 1.7-3.5 lbf·in)	Land Details to the	

TORQUE VALUES

Final drive oil filler cap	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)
Final drive oil drain bolt	12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m , 9 lbf·ft)
Final gear case assembly mounting nut	64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m , 47 lbf·ft)
Shock absorber lower mounting bolt (left)	23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m , 17 lbf·ft)
Dust guard plate bolt	9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m , 7 lbf·ft)
Gear case cover bolt (10 mm)	47 N·m (4.8 kgf·m , 35 lbf·ft)
(8 mm)	25 N·m (2.6 kgf·m , 19 lbf·ft)
Pinion joint nut	108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)
Pinion retainer lock tab bolt	9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m , 7 lbf·ft)
Pinion retainer	108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)
Gear case cover bolt (10 mm) (8 mm) Pinion joint nut Pinion retainer lock tab bolt	47 N·m (4.8 kgf·m , 35 lbf·ft) 25 N·m (2.6 kgf·m , 19 lbf·ft) 108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m , 80 lbf·ft) 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m , 7 lbf·ft)

Apply locking agent to the threads.

Apply locking agent to the threads.

TOOLS

Driver	07749 - 0010000	7	
Attachment, 42 \times 47 mm	07746-0010300	12.2	
Attachment, 52 $ imes$ 55 mm	07746-0010400		
Attachment, 72 \times 78 mm	07746-0010600		
Attachment	07965-MA10100		
Driver 40 mm I. D.	07746-0030100		
Attachment, 25 mm I. D.	07746-0030200		
Bearing puller & driver attachment	07934-MB00000 o	r 07965 - MB0010	A or 07965 – MB00100 (U. S. A. only)
Bearing driver attachment	07GAD-SD40101		
Pinion joint holder	07926-ME90000	_	
Joint holder attachment	07HMB-MM80100	or or	
Pinion holder plate	07924-ME40010		
Collar set "C"	07924-ME40020		
Retainer wrench	07910-ME80000		
Pinion puller set	07HMC-MM80100	or not av	ailable in U. S. A.
Pinion puller set	07935-MB00000	n eveninus	SE IBROTTO OFFICE STORES AND AND PROPERTY OF
Pinion puller attachment	07HMC-MM80200	or —	
Puller base "A"	07HMC-MM8011A	(U.S.A. only)	
Puller shaft 22 $ imes$ 1.5 $ imes$ 240 mm	07931-ME9010B (I		
Attachment	07945-3330300		
Bearing remover	07948-4630100 or		
Adjustable bearing puller,	07736-A01000B or	07736-A01000A	use with commercially available 3/8 $ imes$ 16
25 – 40 mm	(U.S.A. only)		slide hammer
Bearing race insert attachment	07931-4630300		Sanat Attock of Children

TROUBLESHOOTING

Excessive noise

- Worn or scored ring gear shaft and driven flange
- Scored driven flange and wheel hub
- Worn or scored drive pinion and splines
- Worn pinion and ring gears
- Excessive backlash between pinion and ring gear
- Oil level too low

Oil leak

- Clogged breather
- Oil level too high
- Seals damaged

FINAL DRIVE REMOVAL

REMOVAL

Drain the final drive oil (page 3-15).

Remove the rear wheel (page 14-5 or 14-12).

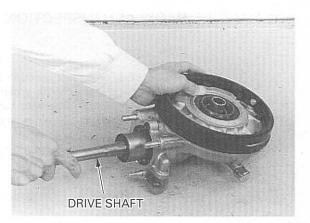
Support the swingarm and remove the shock absorber lower mounting bolt.

Remove the gear case mounting nuts then remove the final gear case.



DRIVE SHAFT REMOVAL/ DISASSEMBLY

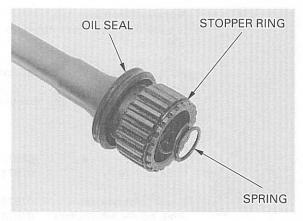
Separate the drive shaft from the gear case by gently turning the drive shaft and pulling.



Remove the spring, oil seal and stopper ring from the drive shaft.

Check the splines of the drive shaft for damage or wear.

If the splines are damaged, check the universal joint splines also.

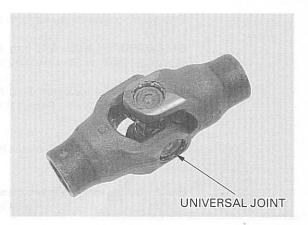


UNIVERSAL JOINT REMOVAL

Remove the swingarm (page 14-27) and remove the universal joint from the swingarm.

Check that the universal joint moves smoothly without binding or noise.

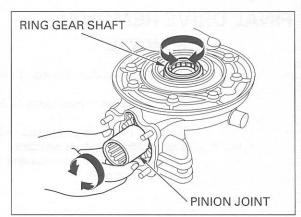
Check the splines for wear or damage.



FINAL DRIVE INSPECTION

Turn the pinion joint and check that the ring gear turns smoothly and quietly without binding.

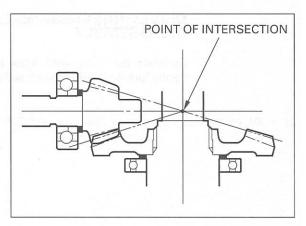
If the gears do not turn smoothly or quietly, the bearings and/or gears may be damaged or faulty. They must be checked after disassembly; replace them if necessary.



BACKLASH INSPECTION

NOTE:

Perform the backlash inspection and tooth contact pattern check (page 12-10) whenever you replace the gear set, bearings or gear case. The extension lines from the gear engagement surfaces should intersect at one point.



Remove the oil filler cap.

Set the final gear assembly into a jig or vise with soft jaws.

Set a horizontal type dial indicator on the ring gear, through the oil filler hole.

Hold the pinion gear spline with the pinion holder plate and collars.

TOOLS:

Pinion holder plate 07924 – ME40010 Collar set "C" 07924 – ME40020

(

Pinion joint holder 07926 – ME90000 Joint holder attachment 07HMB – MM80100

Turn the ring gear back and forth to read backlash.

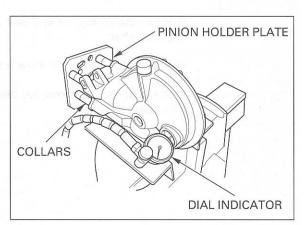
STANDARD: 0.05 – 0.15 mm (0.002 – 0.006 in)

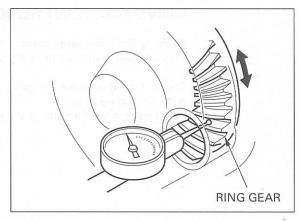
SERVICE LIMIT: 0.30 mm (0.012 in)

Remove the dial indicator. Turn the ring gear 120° and measure backlash. Repeat this procedure once more.

Compare the difference between the three measurements.

Backlash difference between measurements: SERVICE LIMIT: 0.10 mm (0.004 in)





If the difference in measurements exceeds the limit, it indicates that the bearing is not installed squarely. Inspect the bearings and install if necessary.

If backlash is excessive, replace the ring gear shim with a thicker one.

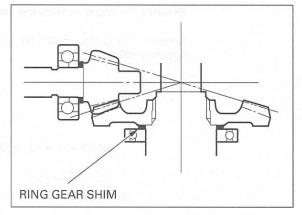
If the backlash is too small, replace the ring gear shim with a thinner one.

Ring gear shim:

A: 1.82 mm (0.072 in) G: 2.18 mm (0.086 in)
B: 1.88 mm (0.074 in) H: 2.24 mm (0.088 in)
C: 1.94 mm (0.076 in) I: 2.30 mm (0.091 in)

D: 2.00 mm (0.079 in) - Standard

E: 2.06 mm (0.081 in) F: 2.12 mm (0.083 in)

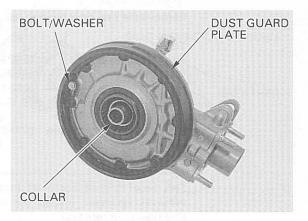


FINAL DRIVE GEAR

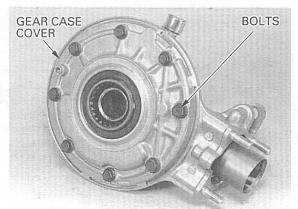
RING GEAR REMOVAL/SHIM REPLACEMENT

Remove the distance collar.

Remove the dust guard plate bolt with the washer and remove the dust guard plate by turning it clockwise.



Remove the eight case cover bolts and the gear case cover.

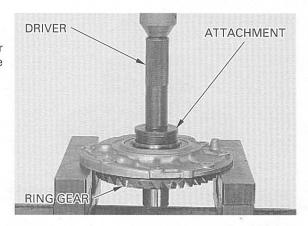


If the ring gear stays in the cover.

Support the cover horizontally with the ring gear facing down and press the gear out using the special tools and hydraulic press.

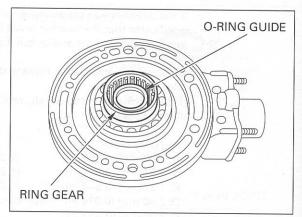
TOOLS:

Driver 07749 - 0010000 **Attachment, 52** × **55** mm 07746 - 0010400



Remove the ring gear from the gear case.

Remove the O-ring guide by tapping it from the opposite side.



Remove the ring gear bearing using the special tool.

TOOL:

Bearing puller & driver attachment

07934 – MB00000 or 07934 – MB0010A or

07934-MB00100

(U. S. A. only) or

Attachment, 52 × 55 mm 07746-0010400

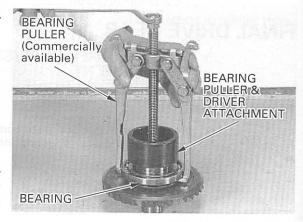


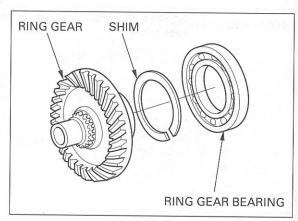
This bearing may not need to be replaced after removal. However, inspect the bearing for excessive play after removal.

Replace the ring gear shim.

NOTE:

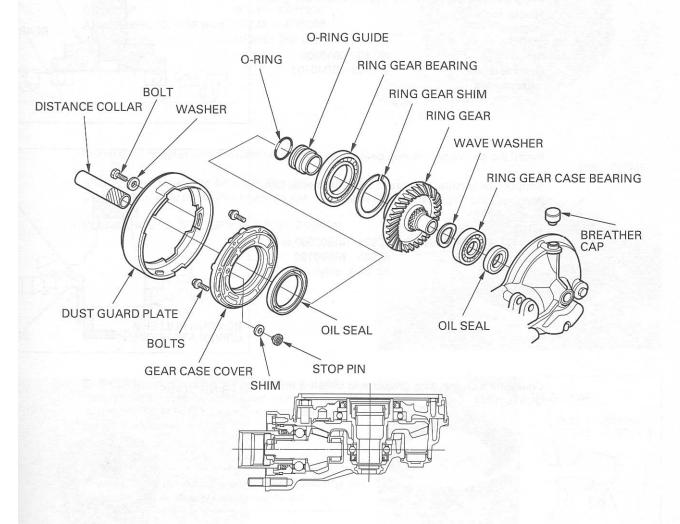
If the gear set, pinion bearing, ring gear bearing and/or gear case are replaced, install a 2.00 mm (0.079 in) thick shim (standard).





RING GEAR INSTALLATION

For the case bearing replacement and breather hole cleaning, see page 12-16.



If the ring gear assembly was loose against the cover (if it didn't stay in the cover), do the following:

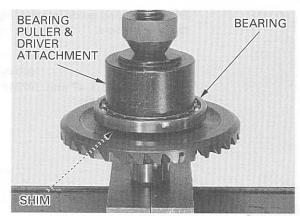
Place the ring gear shim onto the ring gear (page 12-6).

Press the bearing onto the shaft.

TOOL:

Bearing puller & driver attachment

07934 — MB00000 or 07965 — MB0010A or 07965 — MB00100 (U. S. A. only)



If the ring gear remained in the cover, do the following:

Remove the case cover oil seal (see following page).

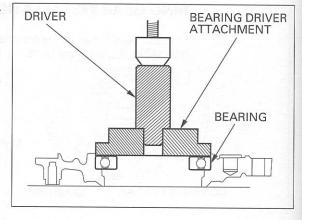
Press the ring gear bearing into the cover using the special tools.

TOOLS:

Driver Bearing driver

07749-0010000 07GAD-SD40101

attachment



Install the shim onto the ring gear (page 12-6).

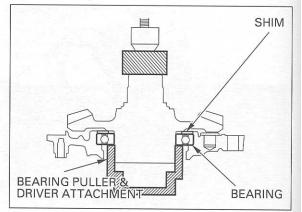
Support the bearing inner race with the special tool, and press the ring gear into the bearing.

TOOL:

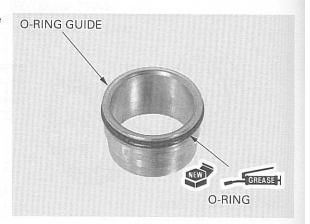
Bearing puller & driver attachment

07934 – MB00000 or 07965 – MB00100

(U.S.A. only)



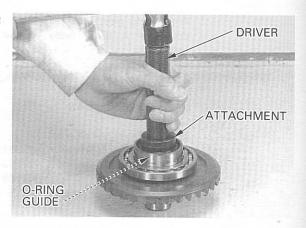
Coat a new O-ring with grease and install it on the O-ring guide.



Drive the O-ring guide into the ring gear shaft using the special tools.

TOOLS:

Driver 07749-0010000 **Attachment, 42** × **47** mm 07746-0010300



Remove and discard the case cover oil seal.

Install a new oil seal and apply grease to the seal lips.

TOOLS:

 Driver
 07749 − 0010000

 Attachment, 72 × 78 mm
 07746 − 0010600

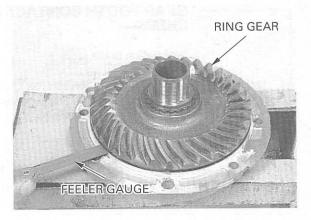
 Attachment
 07965 − MA10100



Install the ring gear into the gear case cover.

Measure the clearance between the ring gear and the ring gear stop pin with a feeler gauge.

CLEARANCE: 0.30-0.60 mm (0.012-0.024 in)



Remove the ring gear if the clearance exceeds the service limit. Heat the gear case cover to approximately 80 $^{\circ}$ C (176 $^{\circ}$ F) and remove the stop pin by tapping the cover.

AWARNING

Always wear insulated gloves when handling the gear case cover after it has been heated.

Heat the case cover evenly and slowly to prevent warpage.

Do not heat small areas individually.

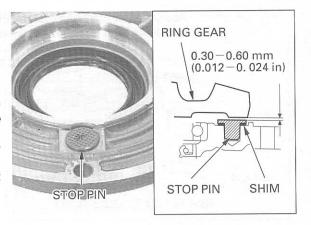
CAUTION:

Case cover warpage can occur if the cover is not heated properly.

Install a stop pin shim to obtain the correct clearance.

SHIM THICKNESS: A: 0.10 mm (0.004 in) B: 0.15 mm (0.006 in)

Install the shim and drive the stop pin into the case cover.

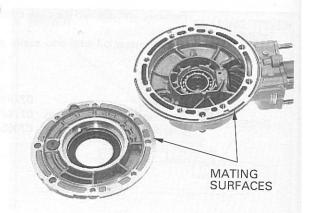


Clean all sealing material off the mating surfaces of the gear case and cover.

NOTE:

- Keep dust and dirt out of the gear case.
- Be careful not to damage the mating surfaces.

Check the gear tooth contact pattern after the ring gear shim has been replaced (see below).



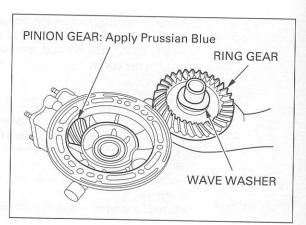
GEAR TOOTH CONTACT PATTERN CHECK

Description of the tooth:

TOE (inside of gear) COAST SIDE (contacts when engine brake is applied.) DRIVE SIDE HEEL (contacts when engine (outside of gear)

Apply a thin coat of Prussian Blue to the pinion gear teeth for a tooth contact pattern check.

Place the wave washer and ring gear into the gear case.



power is applied)

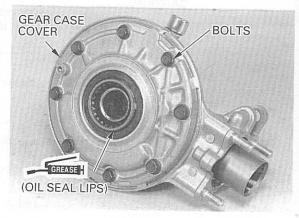
Pack grease into the seal lip cavity of the case cover oil seal and install the gear case cover.

Tighten the cover bolts in 2-3 steps until the cover evenly touches the gear case, then tighten the 8 mm bolts to the specified torque in a crisscross pattern in two or more steps.

Next tighten the 10 mm bolts to the specified torque.

TORQUE: 8 mm: 25 N·m (2.6 kgf·m , 19 lbf·ft)

10 mm: 47 N·m (4.8 kgf·m, 35 lbf·ft)



Remove the oil filler cap from the final gear case.

Rotate the ring gear several times in the normal direction of rotation.

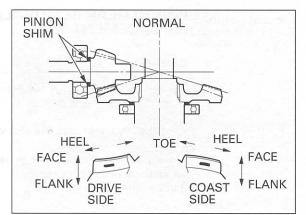
Check the gear tooth contact pattern through the oil filler hole.

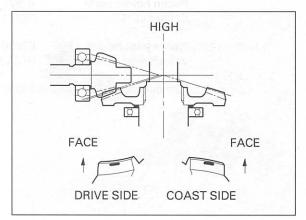
The pattern is indicated by the Prussian Blue applied to the pinion.

Contact is normal if the Prussian Blue is transferred to the approximate center of each tooth and slightly towards the face.

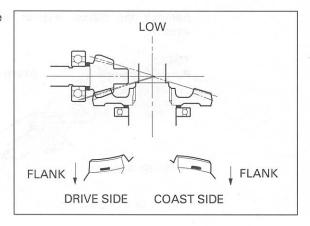
If the pattern are not correct, remove and change the pinion shim.

Replace the pinion shim with a thicker one if the contact pattern is too high.





Replace the pinion shim with a thinner one if the contact pattern is too low.



The patterns will shift about 1.5-2.0 mm (0.06-0.08 in) when the thickness of the shim is changed by 0.1 mm (0.004 in).

Pinion spacer:

A: 1.82 mm (0.072 in)

B: 1.88 mm (0.074 in)

C: 1.94 mm (0.076 in)

D: 2.00 mm (0.079 in) - Standard

E: 2.06 mm (0.081 in)

F: 2.12 mm (0.083 in)

G: 2.18 mm (0.086 in)

For the gear case assembly, see page 12-17.

PINION GEAR REMOVAL/SHIM REPLACEMENT

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the gear case.

Place the final gear case in a vise with soft jaws.

Assemble the pinion holder plate and collars and install them onto gear case. Remove the pinion joint nut.

TOOLS:

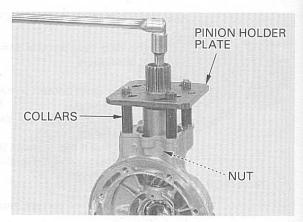
Pinion holder plate Collar set "C"

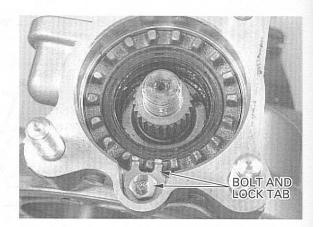
07924-ME40010 07924 - ME40020

Pinion joint holder Joint holder attachment

07926-ME90000 07HMB-MM80100

Remove the bolt and retainer lock tab.



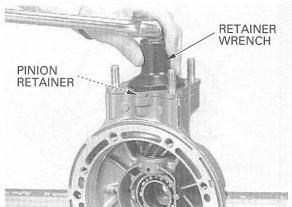


Remove the pinion retainer with the retainer wrench.

TOOL:

Retainer wrench

07910-ME80000



Assemble the pinion puller set as shown. Pull out the pinion assembly off with the pinion puller.

TOOLS:

Pinion puller set Pinion puller set 07HMC-MM80100 or 07935-MB00000

Pinion puller attachment 07HMC-MM80200

not available in U.S.A. or

Puller base "A"

07HMC-MM8011A

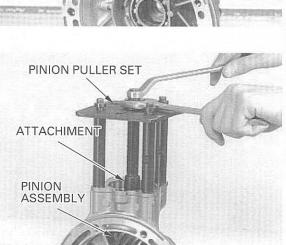
(U.S.A. only)

Puller shaft 22 imes 1.5 imes

07931-ME9010B

240 mm

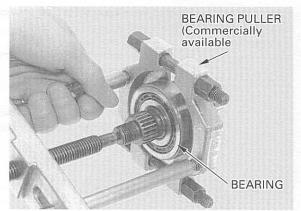
(U.S.A. only)



Pull the bearing outer and inner races from the shaft with the bearing puller.

NOTE:

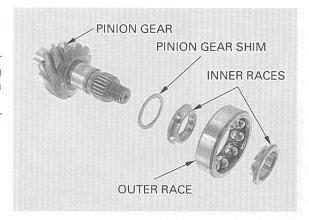
This bearing may not need to be replaced after removal. However, inspect the bearing for excessive play after removal.



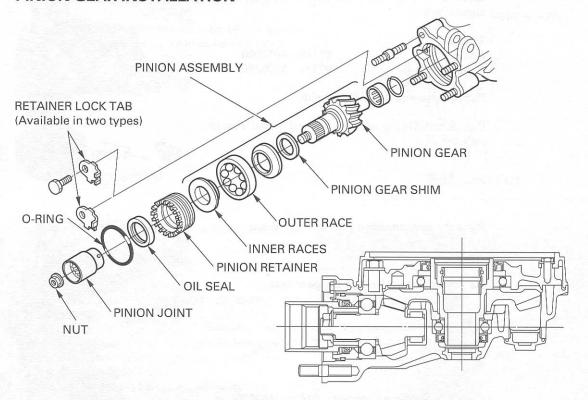
Remove the pinion shim.

NOTE:

If the gear set, pinion bearing, ring gear bearing and/or gear case are replaced, install a 2.00 mm (0.79 in) thick shim (standard) for initial reference.



PINION GEAR INSTALLATION

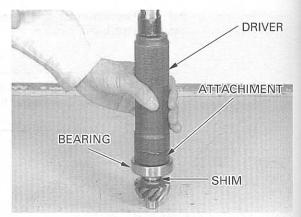


Install the pinion shim (see previous page) on the pinion gear.

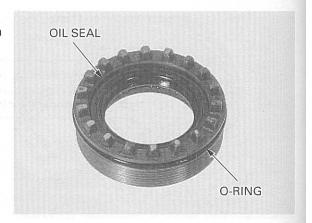
Drive the pinion gear bearing onto the pinion gear using the special tool.

TOOLS:

Driver, 40 mm I. D. 07746 - 0030100Attachment, 25 mm I. D. 07746 - 0030200



Remove the O-ring and oil seal from the pinion



Drive a new oil seal into the retainer using the special tools.

TOOLS:

Driver

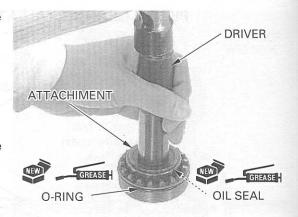
07749 - 0010000

Attachment

07945-3330300

Pack grease into the seal lip cavity.

Coat a new O-ring with grease and install it on the retainer.



Place the gear case in a vise with soft jaws.

CAUTION:

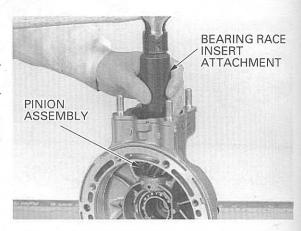
Be careful not to damage the gear case.

Drive the pinion assembly into the gear case until enough threads are visible to accept the pinion retainer.

TOOL:

Bearing race insert attachment 07931-4630300 or Driver, 40 mm I. D.

07746 - 0030100



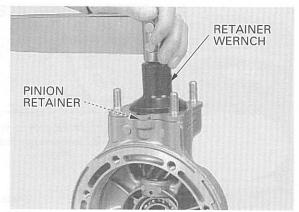
Screw the pinion retainer in, pressing the pinion bearing in place then tighten retainer to the specified torque.

TOOL:

Retainer wrench

07910-ME80000

TORQUE: 108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m , 80 lbf·ft)



Install a lock tab, depending on the position of the pinion retainer grooves in relation to the lock tabs.

NOTE:

The lock tab plate is available in the two types shown.

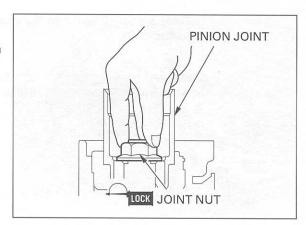
Install and tighten the lock tab bolt.

TORQUE: 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7 lbf·ft)

TABS LOCK TAB

Install the pinion joint to the pinion gear shaft.

Apply locking agent to the threads of the pinion joint nut and screw in it by hand as far as it goes.



Hold the pinion joint using the pinion holder plate and collars.

Tighten the pinion joint nut.

TOOLS:

Pinion holder plate Collar set "C"

07924-ME40010

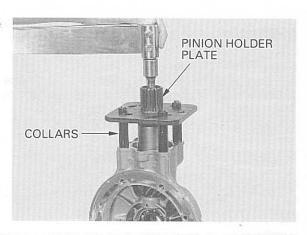
07924-ME40020

Pinion joint holder

Joint holder attachment

07926-ME90000 07HMB-MM80100

TORQUE: 108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)



CASE BEARING REPLACEMENT

Remove the ring gear and pinion gear. Heat the gear case 80 °C (176 °F) evenly using a heat gun.

AWARNING

Always wear insulated gloves when handling the gear case after it has been heated.

TOOL:

Bearing remover

25-40 mm

07948-4630100

not available in U.S.A.

or

Adjustable bearing puller, 07736-A01000B

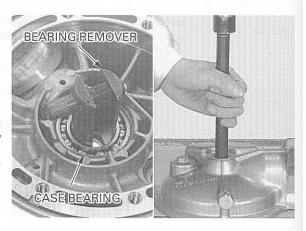
07736-A01000A

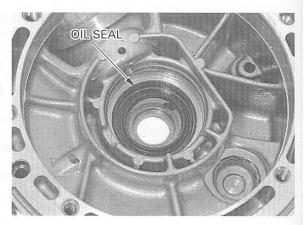
(U.S.A. only)

Slide hammer, $3/8 \times 16$

Commercially available

Remove the oil seal and discard it.



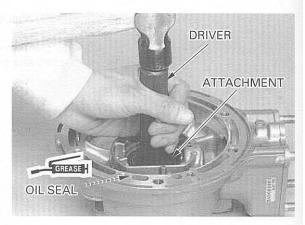


Drive a new oil seal into the gear case using the special tools.

TOOLS:

Driver Attachment 07749 - 0010000

07945 - 3330300

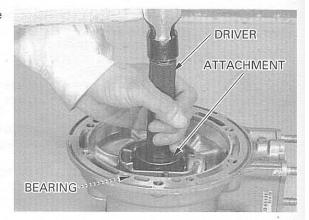


Drive a new ring gear bearing into the gear case using the special tools.

TOOLS:

Driver Attachment, 52 × 55 mm 07746 - 0010400

07749 - 0010000

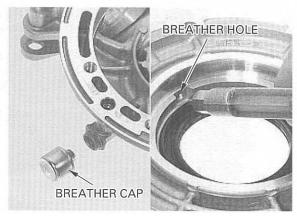


BREATHER HOLE CLEANING

CAUTION:

Be careful not to deform or damage the breather cap.

Remove the breather cap and blow compressed air through the breather hole.



GEAR CASE ASSEMBLY

Clean all sealing material off the mating surfaces of the gear case cover.

NOTE:

- Keep dust and dirt out of the gear case.
- Be careful not to damage the mating surfaces.

Apply liquid sealant to the mating surface of the gear case and cover. Do not apply sealant around the dowel holes.

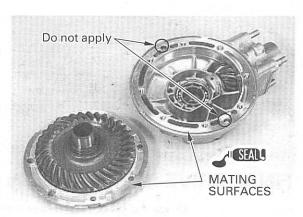
Install the ring gear and gear case cover with the wave washer.

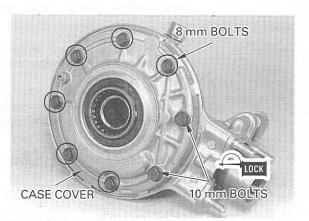
Tighten the cover bolts in 2—3 steps until the cover evenly touches the gear case, then tighten the 8 mm bolts to the specified torque in a crisscross pattern in two or more steps.

Next, apply locking agent to the 10 mm bolt threads and tighten them to the specified torque.

TORQUE: 8 mm: 25 N·m (2.6 kgf·m , 19 lbf·ft)

10 mm: 47 N·m (4.8 kgf·m, 35 lbf·ft)



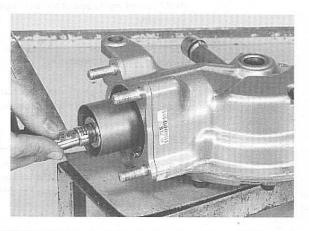


Make sure that the gear assembly rotates smoothly without binding.

Measure the final gear assembly preload.

PRELOAD: 0.2−0.4 N·m (2−4 kgf·cm, 1.7−3.5 lbf·in)

If the preload reading does not fall within the limit, disassemble the final gear and check the bearings for proper installation.

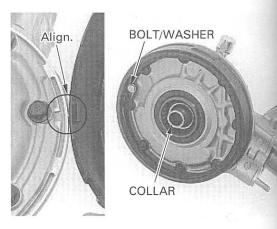


Install the dust guard plate by aligning the plate tabs with the case cover grooves and turn it counterclockwise to lock.

Tighten the guard plate bolt with the washer.

TORQUE: 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7 lbf·ft)

Install the distance collar with the polished side facing the gear case.



FINAL DRIVE INSTALLATION

Check that the final gear case stud bolts are tight. If any are loose, remove them, clean their threads with contact cleaner, then install them using locking agent.

After installing, be sure to measure the distance from top of each stud to the final gear case surface as shown.

If the universal joint was removed, install the universal joint and swingarm (page 14-30).

DRIVE SHAFT ASSEMBLY/INSTALLATION

Install a new stopper ring.

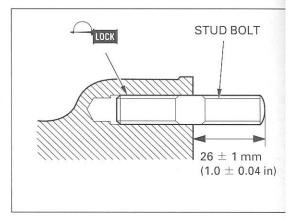
Install the spring and new oil seal and pack 0.5 g (0.02 oz) of molybdenum disulfide grease into seal lip cavity.

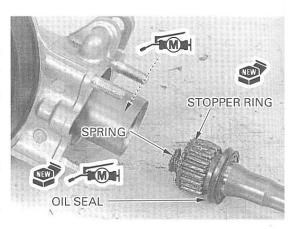
Pack 2 g (0.08 oz) of molybdenum disulfide grease into the pinion joint spline.

Install the drive shaft into the pinion joint until the stopper ring seats in the pinion joint spline groove.

NOTE:

- Make sure that the stopper ring is seated properly by pulling on the drive shaft lightly.
- Be careful not to damage the drive shaft oil seal.





Pack 1 g (0.04 oz) of molybdenum disulfide grease into the drive shaft spline.

Insert the final drive assembly into the swingarm and align the splines with the universal joint by holding the swingarm.

Tighten these nuts and bolt when installing the rear wheel.

Tighten these nuts Install the gear case mounting nuts and shock and bolt when absorber lower bolt.

Install the rear wheel (page 14-10 or 14-19).

Fill the gear case with recommended final drive oil (page 3-14).

OIL CAPACITY: 150 cm³ (5.1 US oz, 5.3 Imp oz) at disassembly

